

조선말 배우는 책
Let's learn Korean

외국문도서출판사
Foreign Languages Books Publishing House
1989

PREFACE

International cooperation is developing rapidly between nations today in all fields including politics, the economy, culture and technology. This situation demands that we have some knowledge of the languages concerned.

In particular, foreigners visiting our country want to speak the Korean language and then associate with us in our work and life.

“Let’s learn Korean” has been written to meet such a demand.

In this book all Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters, both literal and normal translations are given and grammatical explanations are presented in a schematic way. Therefore, all readers can read and understand all Korean words, phrases and sentences in this book without any help from other people and learn Korean in an easy way. And not only foreigners staying for a long time in our country, but also those visiting our country for a short time can use it.

“Let’s learn Korean“ has been written in the following order.

Pronunciation

Conversation

Grammar

Korean-English Vocabulary

English-Korean Vocabulary

Because this is the first time such a book has been produced, several mistakes may be found in it.

We hope that suggestions for revising this book will be sent to the following address :

Foreign Languages Books Publishing House,
Pyongyang, DPRK

February 1989

The Author

CONTENTS

PRONUNCIATION

• The Korean Alphabet Table	10
• Alphabet	12
• Vowels	13
• Consonants	16
• Syllables	22
• The Change of Sounds	24
• The Intonation of Sentence	31

CONVERSATION

• Greetings	32
• Do You Speak Korean?	35
• Entry and Exit	36
• Customs	37
• Travelling by Air	38
• On the Way to the City from the Airport	39
• Travelling by Train	41
• At the Hotel	44
• In a Restaurant	47
• At the Post-Office	51
• Money Exchange	53
• At the Hairdresser's	54
• At the Doctor's	55
• Human Body	57
• Asking the Way	58
• Notices and Signs	60
• Taxis and Buses	61
• City Sightseeing	62
• Theatre	65

· Photographing	66
· Shopping	67
· Numerals	70
· Money	74
· Time	74
· Weather	76
· Four Seasons	77
· Months	77
· Days of the Week	78

GRAMMAR

Lesson 1:

· Noun	78
· Declension of the Noun in the Singular	79
· Declension of A Noun in the Plural	89
· Word Order	93

Lesson 2:

· Personal Pronoun	95
· Declension of the Personal Pronoun	98
· Word Order	108

Lesson 3:

· Demonstrative Pronoun	109
· Declension of the Demonstrative Pronoun	111
· Word Order	115

Lesson 4:

· Verb	117
· Forms of the Verb	117
· Final Form of the Verb	120
· Final Ending of the Verb	120
· Adjective	124
· Forms of the Adjective	124
· Final Form of the Adjective	127
· Final Ending of the Adjective	128

· Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	130
· Division of the Verbal Forms of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	132
· Final Form of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	133
· Final Ending of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	134
Lesson 5:	
· Declarative Final Endings of the Verb	137
· Declarative Final Endings of the Adjective	141
· Declarative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	143
· Word Order	145
Lesson 6:	
· Interrogative Pronoun	147
· Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun	151
· Interrogative Final Endings of the Verb	151
· Interrogative Final Endings of the Adjective	153
· Interrogative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	156
· Word Order	158
Lesson 7:	
· Numerals	162
· Counting Word	166
· Incomplete Noun	168
· Suggestive Final Endings of the Verb	170
· Imperative Final Endings of the Verb	172
· Word Order	173
Lesson 8:	
· Adverb	175
· Connecting Form of the Verb, Adjective or Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	178
· Word Order	194

Lesson 9:	
· Pre-Noun	200
· Interjection	202
· Attributive Form of the Verb	202
· Attributive Form of the Adjective	206
· Attributive Form of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral	208
· Form of the Adverbial Modifier of the Verb or Adjective	211
· Word Order	213
Lesson 10:	
· Tenses	216
· Respect and Courtesy	223
· Word Order	228
Lesson 11:	
· Voice	230
· Exchanging Endings	237
Lesson 12:	
· Auxiliary Endings	242
· Endings Which Are Used as Case Endings	248
Lesson 13:	
· Stem and Ending	251
· Attaching of Endings	254
· Pairs of Endings	254
· Link-Vowel	256
· Vocal Harmony	258
· Exchange of Sounds	260
Lesson 14:	
· Parts of the Sentence	266
· Predicate	269
· Subject	276
· Object	279
· Quotation	283

· Adverbial Modifier	286
· Attribute	289
· Form of Address	292
· Parenthesis	293
· Exclamatory Word	295
· Conjunctive	296
· Appended Modifier	298
· Expanded Part of Sentence	299
Lesson 15:	
· Agreement of Parts of Sentence	303
· Order of Parts of Sentence	309
Lesson 16:	
· Kinds of Sentences	320
· Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences	339
· Simple Sentence	339
· Compound Sentence and Complex Sentence	340
· Order of the Principal Clause and the Subordinate Clause	342
· Direct Speech	342
· Order of the Original Speaker's Words in Direct Speech	343
· Indirect Speech	345
· Changing of Direct Speech into Indirect Speech ..	345
Tables of Endings	350
Subject Index	362
KOREAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	373
ENGLISH-KOREAN VOCABULARY	411

Guide for the User

1. All Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters.

for example :

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>○ 주체사상
[chuchesasang]
Juche Idea</p> <p>○ 안녕하십니까?
[annyonghasimnigga]
Hello!
Good morning.
Good evening.</p> | <p>○ 조선의 진달래
[chosonui chindallae]
Korean azalea</p> <p>○ 고맙습니다.
[komapsumnida]
Thank you.</p> |
|---|--|

2. In transcript the separation is denoted by a point (·).

for example :

저는 평양으로 갑니다. [chonun pyongyang·uro kamnida] I Pyongyang to go	I go to Pyongyang.
---	--------------------

3. Both literal and free translations are given for all Korean sentences.

for example :

저는 영국사람입니다. [chonun yong·guksaramimnida] I an Englishman am	I am an Englishman. (<i>free translation</i>) (<i>literal translation</i>)
---	--

4. The asterisk in the example is related to that in the explanation.

for example :

나의*	어머니
[nau]	omoni]
my	mother

explanation :

* 나 + 의 (나 - *personal pronoun* 의 - *genitive ending*
of the *personal pronoun*)

5. Grammatical explanations are given as follows :

안녕히	가십시오.*		Good-bye (<i>free</i> <i>translation</i>)
[annyong·i	kasipsio]		
well	go! (<i>literal translation</i>)		

explanation :

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 십시오 (십시오 - *most deferential imperative form*
of the *final ending of the verb*)

6. The number on the left of the page is found in the subject index.

PRONUNCIATION

THE KOREAN ALPHABET TABLE

1 가갸표 [kagyapyo] The Korean alphabet table

vowels ↙ conso- nants	ㅏ	ㅑ	ㅓ	ㅕ	ㅗ	ㅛ	ㅜ	ㅠ	ㅡ	ㅣ
	[a]	[ya]	[o]	[yo]	[o]	[yo]	[u]	[yu]	[u]	[i]
ㄱ [k]	가 [ka]	갸 [kya]	거 [ko]	겨 [kyo]	고 [ko]	교 [kyo]	구 [ku]	규 [kyu]	그 [ku]	기 [ki]
ㄴ [n]	나 [na]	냐 [nya]	너 [no]	녀 [nyo]	노 [no]	뇨 [nyo]	누 [nu]	뉴 [nyu]	느 [nu]	니 [ni]
ㄷ [t]	다 [ta]	댜 [tya]	더 [to]	뎌 [tyo]	도 [to]	뎜 [tyo]	두 [tu]	듀 [tyu]	드 [tu]	디 [ti]
ㄹ [r]	라 [ra]	랴 [rya]	러 [ro]	려 [ryo]	로 [ro]	료 [ryo]	루 [ru]	류 [ryu]	르 [ru]	리 [ri]
ㅁ [m]	마 [ma]	먜 [mya]	머 [mo]	뎌 [myo]	모 [mo]	묘 [myo]	무 [mu]	뮤 [myu]	므 [mu]	미 [mi]
ㅂ [p]	바 [pa]	뵤 [pya]	버 [po]	뵎 [pyo]	보 [po]	뵜 [pyo]	부 [pu]	뷰 [pyu]	브 [pu]	비 [pi]
ㅅ [s]	사 [sa]	샤 [sya]	서 [so]	셔 [syo]	소 [so]	쇼 [syo]	수 [su]	슈 [syu]	스 [su]	시 [si]
ㅇ* [ng]	아 [a]	야 [ya]	어 [o]	여 [yo]	오 [o]	요 [yo]	우 [u]	유 [yu]	으 [u]	이 [i]

ㅈ [ch]	자 차 저 처 조 쇼 주 슈 즈 지 [cha] [chya] [cho] [chyō] [cho] [chyō] [chu] [chyu] [chu] [chi]
ㅊ [ch]	차 차 처 처 초 쇼 추 슈 츠 치 [cha] [chya] [cho] [chyō] [cho] [chyō] [chu] [chyu] [chu] [chi]
ㅋ [k]	카 카 커 켜 코 교 쿠 큐 크 키 [ka] [kya] [ko] [kyō] [ko] [kyō] [ku] [kyu] [ku] [ki]
ㄷ [t]	타 타 터 터 토 쇼 투 슈 트 티 [ta] [tya] [to] [tyō] [to] [tyō] [tu] [tyu] [tu] [ti]
ㅍ [p]	파 파 퍼 썸 포 표 푸 퓨 프 피 [pa] [pya] [po] [pyō] [po] [pyō] [pu] [pyu] [pu] [pi]
ㅎ [h]	하 하 허 혀 호 효 후 휴 흐 히 [ha] [hya] [ho] [hyō] [ho] [hyō] [hu] [hyu] [hu] [hi]
ㄱ [gg]	가 가 거 겨 곁 교 구 큐 크 기 [gga] [ggya] [ggo] [ggyō] [ggo] [ggyō] [ggu] [ggyu] [ggu] [ggi]
ㄷ [dd]	다 다 터 더 또 쇼 두 슈 트 티 [dda] [ddyā] [ddo] [ddyō] [ddo] [ddyō] [ddu] [ddyu] [ddu] [ddi]
ㅂ [bb]	바 바 버 뵤 보 표 부 퓨 브 피 [bba] [bbya] [bbo] [bbyō] [bbo] [bbyō] [bbu] [bbyu] [bbu] [bbi]
ㅅ [ss]	사 사 서 셔 소 쇼 수 슈 쑈 씨 [ssa] [ssya] [sso] [ssyō] [sso] [ssyō] [ssu] [ssyu] [ssu] [ssi]
ㅆ [jj]	자 자 저 처 조 쇼 주 슈 쑈 지 [jja] [jya] [jjo] [jyō] [jjo] [jyō] [jju] [jju] [jju] [jji]

* ㅅ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.

ALPHABET

2 The Korean alphabet has 40 letters.

letter	name	transcription	letter	name	transcription
ㄱ	kiuk	k, g	ㅏ	a	a
ㄴ	niun	n	ㅑ	ya	ya
ㄷ	tiut	t, d	ㅓ	o	o
ㄹ	riul	r(l)	ㅕ	yo	yo
ㅁ	mium	m	ㅗ	o	o
ㅂ	piup	p, b	ㅛ	yo	yo
ㅅ	siut	s, t	ㅜ	u	u
ㅇ	iung	ng	ㅠ	yu	yu
ㅈ	chiut	ch, j, t	ㅡ	u	u
ㅊ	chiut	ch, t	ㅣ	i	i
ㅋ	kiuk	k	ㅞ	ae	ae
ㅌ	tiut	t	ㅟ	yae	yae
ㅍ	piup	p	ㅠ	e	e
ㅎ	hiuh	h	ㅢ	ye	ye
ㅊ	toengiuk	gg, k	ㅤ	oe	oe
ㅋ	toendiut	dd	ㅦ	wi	wi
ㆁ	toenbiup	bb	ㅧ	ui	ui
ㆁ	toensiut	ss, t	ㅨ	wa	wa
ㆁ	toenjiut	jj	ㅩ	wo	wo
			ㅪ	wae	wae
			ㅫ	we	we

VOWELS

3 The Korean language has 21 vowels :

ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ, ㆁ,
ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅍ, ㅍ

The vowels are divided into simple vowels and diphthongs.

4 1. The simple vowels

The simple vowels are those for which the shape of the oral cavity does not change in pronunciation.

There are 10 simple vowels :

ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ

5 2. The diphthongs

The diphthongs are those vowels for which the shape of the oral cavity changes in pronunciation and two vowels become one.

There are 11 diphthongs :

ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅝ, ㅞ, ㅟ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅢ, ㅣ

6 The vowels are pronounced as follows :

1. ㅏ is pronounced [a] as in car and transcribed as <a>.

for example :

아 [a] ah

2. ㅑ is pronounced [ə] as in ago and transcribed as <o>.

for example :

어머니 [omoni] mother

3. ㅓ is pronounced [o] as in on and transcribed as <o>.

for example :

오 [o] oh

4. ㅏ is pronounced [u] as in **good** and transcribed as ⟨u⟩.
for example :
우리[uri] we
5. ㅡ is almost a groaning sound in the chest and is pronounced between [u] in **good** and [i] in **window** and transcribed as ⟨u⟩.
for example :
구[ku] he
6. ㅣ is pronounced [i] as in **it** and transcribed as ⟨i⟩.
for example :
아이[ai] child
7. ㅓ is pronounced [æ] as in **man** and transcribed as ⟨ae⟩.
for example :
애[ae] child
8. ㅕ is pronounced [e] as in **bed** and transcribed as ⟨e⟩.
for example :
네[ne] you; your; yes
9. ㅛ is pronounced [oe] as in **Goethe** and transcribed as ⟨oe⟩.
for example :
쇠[soe] iron
10. ㅜ is pronounced [wi] as in **window** and transcribed as ⟨wɪ⟩.
for example :
위[wi] stomach
11. ㅟ is pronounced [ja] as in **yard** and transcribed as ⟨ya⟩.
for example :
약[yak] medicine
12. ㅠ is pronounced [jə] as in **you** [jə] and transcribed as ⟨yo⟩.
for example :
여기[yogi] here

13. ㅛ is pronounced [jo] as in *york* and transcribed as <y o>.
for example :
교실 [kyosil] classroom
14. ㅠ is pronounced [ju] as in *you* and transcribed as <yu>.
for example :
유리 [yuri] glass
15. ㅝ is pronounced [je] as in *yes* and transcribed as <yae>.
for example :
애 [yae] hullo (*call to a child or between children*)
16. ㅞ is pronounced [je] as in *yellow* and transcribed as <ye>.
for example :
예 [ye] yes (*answer to an elder or a superior*)
17. ㅟ is pronounced quickly but as a diphthong and transcribed as <ui>.
for example :
의사 [uisa] doctor
18. ㅠ is pronounced [wa] as in *guaiacum* and transcribed as <wa>.
for example :
와 [wa] and
19. ㅡ is pronounced [wə] as in *word* and transcribed as <wo>.
for example :
원 [won] circle; won (*unit of Korean currency*)
20. ㅢ is pronounced [wæ] as in *wax* and transcribed as <wae>.
for example :
왜 [wae] why
21. ㅣ is pronounced almost like [we] in *wet* and transcribed as <we>.
for example :
웬 [wen] what

Individual vowels are pronounced separately.
for example :

아세아 [asea] Asia

7 The vowels are written as follows :

ㅣ ㅡ ㅣㅣ ㅏㅣ ㅑ ㅓ

ㅕ ㅖ ㅗ ㅛ ㅜ

ㅝ ㅞ

CONSONANTS

8 The Korean language has 19 consonants :

ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㄷ, ㄴ, ㄹ, ㄷ, ㄱ, ㅌ, ㄷ, ㅌ, ㄷ, ㄴ, ㄹ, ㅎ,
ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㄷ, ㄴ

9 The consonants are pronounced as follows :

1. ㄱ is pronounced a little harder than [g].

1) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

ㄱ[ku] he

2) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.

for example :

조국 [choguk] fatherland

3) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] before another consonant.
for example :

극장 [kukjang] theatre

4) ㄱ is transcribed as [g] before a vowel.
for example :

고기 [kogi] meat

2. ㅋ is pronounced [k] as in the French conte.

1) ㅋ is transcribed as [gg] at the beginning of a word.
for example :

꽃다발 [ggotdabal] bouquet

2) ㅋ is transcribed as [gg] before a vowel.
for example :

도끼 [toggi] axe

3) ㅋ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.

for example :

밖 [pak] outside

4) ㅋ is transcribed as [k] before another consonant.

for example :

묶다 [mukda] bind

3. ㅋ is pronounced [k] as in cold. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㄱ [k].

ㅋ is transcribed as [k].

for example :

코 [ko] nose

4. ㅍ is pronounced a little harder than [b].

1) ㅍ is transcribed as [p] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

비 [pi] rain

2) ㅍ is transcribed as [p] at the end of a word.

for example :

밥 [pap] boiled rice

3) ㅍ is transcribed as [p] before another consonant.

for example :

곱다[kopda] beautiful

4) ㅂ is transcribed as [b] before a vowel.

for example :

집으로[chiburo] to home

5. ㅃ is pronounced [p] as in the French pincette.

ㅃ is transcribed as <bb>.

for example :

빵[bbang] bread

6. ㅍ is pronounced [p] as in park. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced ㅂ [b].

ㅍ is transcribed as [p].

for example :

○ 펜[pen] pen

○ 우표[upyo] postage stamp

○ 잎[ip] leaf

○ 높다[nopda] high

7. ㄷ is pronounced a little harder than [d].

1) ㄷ is transcribed as [t] at the beginning of a word.
for example :

다리[tari] leg; bridge

2) ㄷ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

디읃 [tiut] (*the consonant ㄷ*)

3) ㄷ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

묻다 [mutda] ask

4) ㄷ is transcribed as [d] before a vowel.

for example :

도마도[tomado] tomato

8. ㄸ is pronounced [t] as in the Spanish tobacco.

ㄸ is transcribed as <dd>.

for example :

땅[**ddang**] earth

9. **ㅌ** is pronounced [t] as in tank. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced **ㅌ** [t].

ㅌ is transcribed as <t>.

for example :

○ 트렁크 [turongku] trunk

○ 봉투 [bongtu] envelope

○ 밭 [bat] field

○ 같다 [katda] equal

10. **ㅈ** is pronounced [z] as in zero.

- 1) **ㅈ** is transcribed as [ch] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

조선 [choson] Korea

- 2) **ㅈ** is transcribed as [j] before a vowel.

for example :

아버지 [aboji] father

- 3) **ㅈ** is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

낮 [nat] day

- 4) **ㅈ** is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

늦다 [nutda] late

11. **ㅉ** is pronounced [ts] as in tzar and transcribed as <jj>

for example :

동쪽 [tongjjok] east

12. **ㅊ** is pronounced [tʃ] as in child. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced **ㅊ** [ch].

- 1) **ㅊ** is transcribed as [ch] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

춤 [chum] dance

- 2) **ㅊ** is transcribed as [ch] before a vowel.

for example :

자동차 [chadongcha] auto

3) ㅌ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

꽃 [ggot] flower

4) ㅌ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

꽃방 [ggotbang] florist's shop

13. ㅅ is pronounced [s] as in song.

1) ㅅ is transcribed as [s] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

수도 [sudo] capital

2) ㅅ is transcribed as [s] before a vowel.

for example :

도시 [tosi] city

3) ㅅ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

옷 [ot] clothes

4) ㅅ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

웃다 [utda] laugh

14. ㅆ is pronounced [s] as in the French sans.

1) ㅆ is transcribed as [ss] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

쌀 [ssal] rice

2) ㅆ is transcribed as [ss] before a vowel.

for example :

날씨 [nalssi] weather

3) ㅆ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

for example :

겠 [ket] (*the ending of the future tense*)

4) ㅆ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

for example :

있다 [itda] there is

15. ㄴ is pronounced [n] as in pen.

ㄴ is transcribed as [n].

for example :

○ 나 [na] I

○ 조선 [choson] Korea

16. ㅁ is pronounced [m] as in man.

ㅁ is transcribed as [m].

for example :

○ 어머니 [omoni] mother

○ 사람 [saram] man

17. ㄹ

<r> and <l> are denoted in Korean by the same letter ㄹ.

The following rules are applied to this double pronunciation :

1) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] at the beginning of a word.

for example :

라디오 [rajio] radio

2) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] before a vowel.

for example :

우리 [uri] we

3) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] at the end of a word.

for example :

물 [mul] water

4) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] before another consonant.

for example :

팔다 [palda] sell

5) When ㄴ and ㄹ come together, then ㄴㄹ is always transcribed as double [l].

for example :

천리 [cholli] thousand ri (ri is a Korean unit of distance.)

18. ㅎ is pronounced [h] as in hat and transcribed as <h>.

for example :

하나 [hana] one

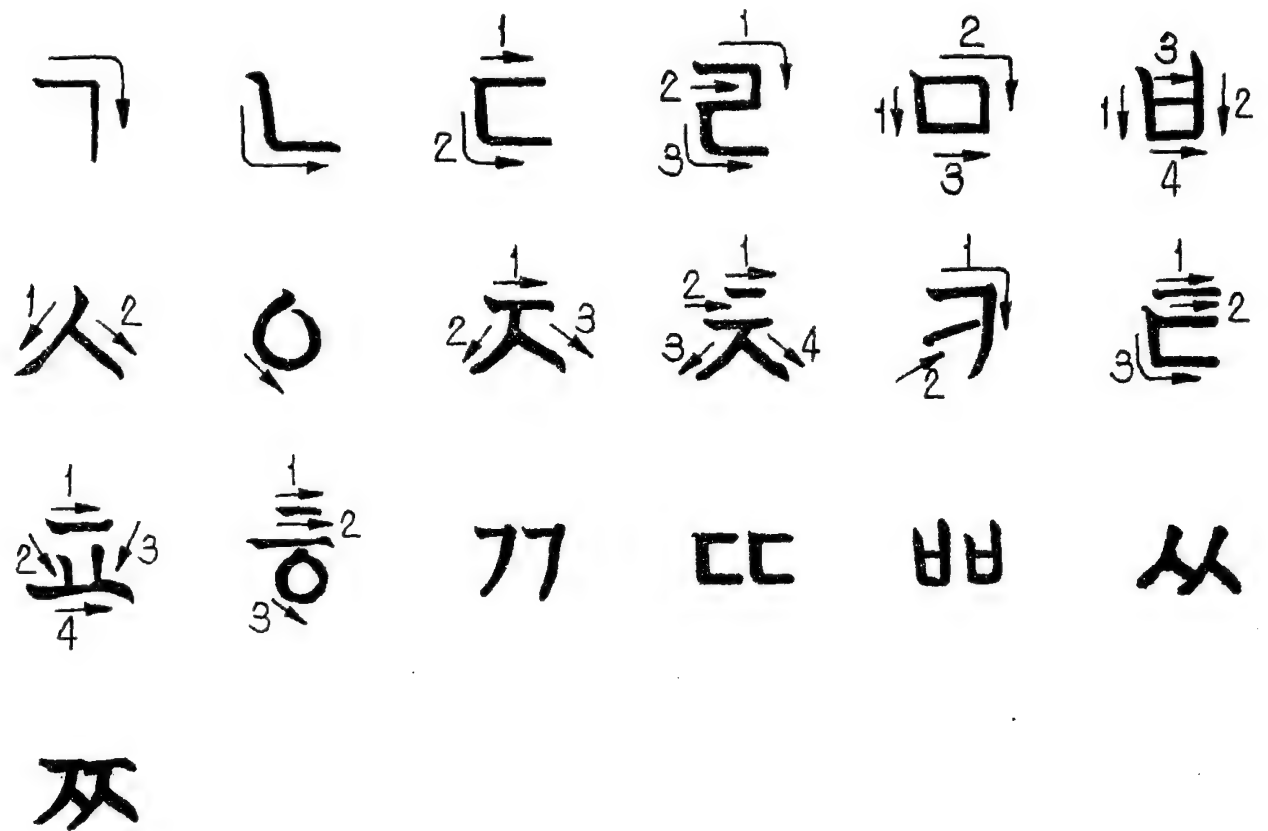
19. ㅇ is pronounced [ŋ] as in song. But at the beginning of a syllable ㅇ is not pronounced.

ㅇ is transcribed as <ng>.

for example :

강 [kang] river

10 The consonants are written as follows :



SYLLABLES

11 A word consists of one or more syllables. A syllable consists of one or more consonants and one vowel.

The syllables are divided into 5 forms :

1. The one-vowel syllable

for example :

아이 [ai] child

explanation :

The syllable 아 consists of the consonant ㅇ and the vowel 아.

The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.

Therefore, the syllable 아 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

The syllable 어 consists of the consonant ㅇ and the vowel 어.

The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.

Therefore, the syllable 어 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

2. The one-consonant-and-one-vowel syllable

for example :

나무 [namu] tree; wood

explanation :

The syllable 나 consists of the consonant 나 and the vowel 아.

The syllable 무 consists of the consonant 무 and the vowel 어.

3. The one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable

for example :

일 [il] work

explanation :

The syllable 일 consists of the consonant ㅇ, the vowel 아 and the consonant 일. The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable. Therefore, the syllable 일 is considered a one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable.

4. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and one consonant

for example :

물 [mul] water

explanation :

The syllable 물 consists of the consonant 무, the vowel 어 and the consonant 일.

5. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and a double consonant

for example :

값 [kap] price

explanation :

The syllable 값 consists of the consonant ㄱ, the vowel ㅏ and the double consonant ㅍ.

THE CHANGE OF SOUNDS

12 Sounds change in six different ways.

1. The assimilation of sound

The assimilation of sound means that a sound in a word is pronounced, under the influence of its foregoing or following sound, same as or alike to its foregoing or following sound.

There are 3 assimilations of sound :

1) The assimilation of sonants ㄴ [n], ㅁ [m], ㄹ [r]

(1) The sounds ㄱ [k], ㄱ [gg] and ㅋ [k] are pronounced ㅇ [ng] before a sonant.

for example :

○ 독립 [tokrip] independence

[동립] [tongrip] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄹ [r]*)

○ 닦는다 [taknunda] polish

[당는다] [tangnunda] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n]*)

○ 부엌문 [puokmun] kitchen door

[부엌문] [puongmun] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ [m]*)

(2) The sound ㅍ [p] and ㅑ [p] are pronounced ㅁ [m] before a sonant.

for example :

○ 법령 [popryong] law

[법령] [pomryong] (*as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄹ [r]*)

- 앞문 [apmun] front door
[암문] [ammun] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ [m])

(3) The sounds ㄷ [t], ㅌ [t], ㅈ [ch], ㅊ [ch], ㅅ [s] and ㅆ [ss] are pronounced ㄴ [n] before a sonant.

for example :

- 말누이 [matnui] the eldest sister
[만누이] [mannui] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])
- 밭머리 [patmori] edge of a field
[반머리] [panmori] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ [m])
- 젖먹이 [chotmogi] suckling
[전먹이] [chonmogi] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ [m])
- 꽃망울 [ggotmang.ul] flower bud
[곤망울] [ggonmang.ul] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㅁ [m])
- 잣나무 [chatnamu] pine-nut tree
[찬나무] [channamu] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])
- 있느냐 [itnunya] is there?
[인느냐] [innunya] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])

2) The assimilation of the sound ㄹ [l]

(1) The sound ㄴ [n] is pronounced ㄹ [l] before the sound ㄹ [l].

for example :

달련 [tanlyon] training

[달련] [tallyon] (as a result of the assimilation of the sound ㄹ [l])

(2) The sound ㄴ [n] is pronounced ㄹ [l] after the sound ㄹ [l].

for example :

설날 [solnal] New Year's Day

[설랄] [sollal] (as a result of the assimilation of the sound ㄹ [l])

3) The assimilation of the palatal

(1) The sound ㄷ [t] is pronounced ㅈ [j] before the palatal ㅣ [i].

for example :

해돋이 [haetoti] sunrise

[해도지] [haetoji] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal ㅣ [i])

(2) The sound ㄷ [t] is pronounced ㅊ [ch] before the palatal ㅣ [i].

for example :

한결같이 [hangyolgati] unanimously

[한결가치] [hangyolgachi] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal ㅣ [i])

2. The shut consonants

When a consonant lies at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound, it is pronounced as shut.

1) The sounds ㅋ [k] and ㆁ [gg] are pronounced as a shut ㆁ [k] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.

for example :

○ 부엌 [puok] kitchen

[부억] [puok] (at the end of the word)

○ 깎다 [ggaggda] pare; shear; shave

[깎따] [ggakda] (before the voiceless sound ㄷ) (refer to 12-3.)

2) The sounds ㅌ [t], ㅈ [j], ㅊ [ch], ㅅ [s] and ㅆ [ss] are pronounced as a shut ㄷ [t] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.

for example :

○ 밭 [pat] field

[밭] [pat] (at the end of the word)

- 낮 [naj] day
[날][nat] (at the end of the word)
- 돛대 [tochdae] mast
[돋때][totdae] (before the voiceless sound ㅈ) (refer to 12-3.)
- 옷 [os] clothes
[으][ot] (at the end of the word)
- 있다 [issda] be
[일따][itda] (before the voiceless sound ㅈ) (refer to 12-3.)

3) The sound ㅍ [p] is pronounced as a shut ㅍ [p] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.

for example :

- 잎 [ip] leaf
[입][ip] (at the end of the word)
- 덮다 [topda] cover
[덱따][topda] (before the voiceless sound ㅈ) (refer to 12-3.)

3. The strengthening of a sound

The strengthening of a sound means that a soft sound becomes a strong sound under the influence of the consonant which comes before it.

But the strong sounds are transcribed as follows :

gg → g dd → d bb → b
ss → s jj → j

for example :

빛갈 [빚갈] [bitggal] → [bitgal] colour
집단 [집딤] [chipddan] → [chipdan] group
늦봄 [늣뵙] [nutbbom] → [nutbom] late spring
봄바람 [뵙빠람] [pombbaram] → [pombaram] spring breeze
있소 [일쏘] [itsso] → [itso] there is
극장 [극짱] [kukjjang] → [kukjang] theatre

- 1) A soft sound becomes a strong sound after a consonant which is not sonant.

for example :

집단 [chipdan] collective

[집뎡] [chipddan] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ㄷ [d] after the voiceless sound ㅍ [p])

But [집뎡] [chipddan] is transcribed as [chipdan].

2) After a sonant a soft sound becomes as follows :

(1) a strong sound

for example :

봄바람 [pombaram] spring breeze

[봄빠람] [pombbaram] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ㅍ [b] after the sonant ㅁ [m])

But [봄빠람] [pombbaram] is transcribed as [pombaram].

(2) not a strong sound

for example :

충성 [chungsong] loyalty

explanation :

The soft sound ㅅ [s] does not become a strong sound after sonant ㅇ [ng].

4. The insertion of a sound

The insertion of a sound means that a sound is inserted when a word is pronounced.

There are 2 methods of insertion :

1) The consonant ㄴ [n] is inserted.

for example :

부엌일 [puokil] kitchen work

[부엌닐] [puoknil] (as a result of the insertion of the consonant ㄴ [n])

[부영닐] [puongnil] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant ㄴ [n])

2) The consonant ㄷ [t] is inserted.

for example :

기발 [kibal] flag

[깃발] [kitbal] (as a result of the insertion of the consonant ㄷ [t])

[긴빨] [kitbal] (as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound ㅂ [b] after the voiceless sound ㅌ [t])

5. The omission of a sound

The omission of a sound means that a certain sound is omitted when sounds are linked.

There are 2 methods of omission :

- 1) The sound ㅎ [h] of a stem is not pronounced before an ending or a suffix which begins with a vowel, for example :

○ 많았다 [manhatda] were much
[마나다] [manatda] (as a result of the omission of the sound ㅎ [h] before the past tense ending 았 [at] (refer to 166) which begins with the vowel ㅏ [a])
[마나다] [manatda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㅌ [d])

○ 많이 [manhi] much
[마니] [mani] (as a result of the omission of the sound ㅎ [h] before the suffix 이 [i] which begins with the vowel ㅣ [i])

- 2) The penultimate or the last consonant in a syllable is omitted.

- (1) The penultimate consonant ㄹ [l] in a syllable is omitted when the penultimate and last consonants ㄹ [lk], ㄹ [lm], ㄹ [lp] or ㄹ [lp] in a syllable come before another consonant or at the end of a word.

for example :

○ 닭 [talk] hen

[닥] [tak] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄹ [l])

○ 삶다 [salmda] cook

[삼다] [samda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄹ [l])

[삼다] [samda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㅌ [d])

- 밟다 [palpda] tread
 [밟다] [papda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄹ [l])
 [밟따] [papda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])
- 읊다 [ulpda] recite
 [읍다] [upda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄹ [l])
 [읍따] [upda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

(2) The last consonant in a syllable is omitted when it is a lingual.

for example :

없다 [optda] there is no

As the last consonant ㅌ [t] is a lingual, it is omitted.

[엎다] [opda] (as a result of the omission of the last consonant ㅌ [t])

[엎따] [opda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d])

6. The contraction of sounds

The contraction of sounds means that some sounds standing side by side contract into one sound.

There are 2 methods of contraction :

1) Sounds contract into a strong sound.

A soft sound and the sound ㅎ [h] following it contract into a strong sound.

for example :

역할 [yokhal] role

[여칼] [yokal] (as a result of the contraction of the sounds ㄱ [k] and ㅎ [h])

2) Two vowels contract into a new vowel.

for example :

아이 [ai] child

애 [ae] child (as a result of the contraction of the vowels ㅏ [a] and ㅣ [i])

THE INTONATION OF SENTENCE

13 The kinds of sentences are indicated by whether the tone is rising or falling at the end of a sentence.

1. The falling tone is used at the end of a declarative sentence.

for example :

그가 온다.
[kuga onda]

he is coming

He is coming.

2. The rising tone is used at the end of an interrogative sentence.

for example :

그가 오는가?
[kuga onun-ga]

he comes?

Is he coming?

But the interrogative word should be stressed when it appears in an interrogative sentence.

for example :

그가 언제 오는가?
[kuga onje onun-ga]

he when comes?

When is he coming?

3. The tone should be even to the end of a suggestive sentence.

for example :

가자! [kaja] Let us go!

4. The falling tone is used at the end of an imperative sentence.

for example :

가라! [kara] Go!

5. The tone should be even to the end of an exclamatory sentence.

for example:

오, 조국[→]이여!
[o chogugiyō]
oh! fatherland

Oh! Fatherland!

CONVERSATION

인사 [insa]

Greetings

안녕하십니까?
[annyonghasimnigga]
well?

Hello!

Good morning.

Good evening.

어떻게 지내십니까?
[oddoke chinaesimnigga]
how live?

How are you?

나는 아주 건강합니다.
[nanunaju kon-ganghamnida]
I very healthy

Very well, and you?

당신도 건강하십니까?
[tangsin-do kon-ganghamnigga]
you also healthy?

고맙습니다. 아주 건강합니다.
[komapsumnidaaju kon-ganghamnida]
thank you very healthy

Thank you, I am very well.

처음 뵙습니다.
[choumpoepsumnida]
first time see

How do you do?

어서 들어오십시오.
[oso turoosipsio]
please come in

Come in, please!

어서 앉으십시오.
[oso anjusipsio]
please sit down

Take your seat, please.

매우 고맙습니다.
[maeu komapsumnida]
very much thank you

Thank you very much.

잠깐만 기다려주십시오.
[chamganman kidaryojusipsio]
a minute wait please

Wait a minute please.

당신은 누구십니까?
[dangsinun nugusimnigga]
you who are

Who are you?

당신의 이름은 무엇입니까?
[tangsinui irumun muosimnigga]
your name what is?

May I have your name,
please?

저는 ... 이라고 부릅니다.
[chonun ... irago purnnida]
I ... call

My name is

당신은 어디서 오셨습니까?
[tangsinun odeso osyotsumnigga]
you where from came?

Where are you from?

저는 영국에서 왔습니다.
[chonun yong · gugeso watsumnida]
I England from came

I am from England.

나는 영국사람입니다.
[nanun yong · guksaramimnida]
I an Englishman am

I am an Englishman.

당신은 영어를 아십니까?
[tangsinun yong · orul asimnigga]
you English know?

Do you speak English?

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다.
[nanun yong · orul chal motamnida]
I English good not speak

I have a poor command
of English.

예.
[ye]
yes

Yes.

아니요.
[aniyo]
no

No.

좋습니다.
[chosumnida]
good

All right.

나쁩니다.
[nabbumnida]
bad

기꺼이.
[kiggoi]
with pleasure

미안합니다.
[mianhamnida]
excuse me

선생.
[sonsaeng]
teacher

어서.
[oso]
please

대단히 고맙습니다.
[taedani komapsumnida]
very thank

천만에.
[chonmane]
you are welcome

다시 만납시다.
[tasi mannapsida]
again meet

안녕히 가십시오.
[annyong·i kasipsio]
well go!

안녕히 계십시오.
[annyong.i kyesipsio]
well be!

안녕히 주무십시오.
[annyong·i chumusipsio]
well sleep!

Bad.

With pleasure.

Excuse me.

Mr.

Please!

Thank you very much.

You are welcome.

See you again!

Good-bye.

Good-bye.

Good night.

당신은 조선말을 아십니까? Do you speak Korean?
 [tangsinun chosonmarul asimnigga]

당신은 조선말을
 [tangsinun chosonmarul
 you Korean
 아십니까?
 asimnigga]
 know?

Do you speak Korean?

당신은 영어를 아십니까?
 [tangsinun yong.orul asimnigga]
 you English know?

Do you speak English?

나는 조선말을 압니다.
 [nanun chosonmarul amnida]
 I Korean know

I speak Korean.

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다.
 [nanun yong.orul chal motamnida]
 I English good not speak

I have a poor command of English.

저의 말을 아시겠습니까?
 [choui marul asigetsumnigga]
 my word understand?

Do you understand me?

나는 당신의 말을 다
 [nanun tangsinui marul ta
 I your word all

I understand everything quite well.

알아듣습니다.
 aradutsumnida]
 understand

다 알아듣지 못합니다.
 [ta aradutji motamnida]
 all understand not can

I can't understand everything.

미안하지만 다시 한번
 [mianhajiman tasi hanbon
 please again once

I beg your pardon!

말해주십시오.
 malhaeusipsio]
 speak

Speak more slowly, please!

좀더 천천히 말해주십시오.
 [chomdo chonchoni malhaeusipsio]
 a little more slowly speak

입국 및 출국[ipguk mit chulguk]

Entry and Exit

입국수속
[ipguksusok]
entry formalities

entry formalities

나는 관광객입니다.
[nanun kwan·gwang·gaegimnida]
I a tourist am

I am a tourist.

손짐은 어디서 찾을 수
[sonjimun odiso chajulsu]
the luggage where can

Where can I collect back
my luggage?

있습니까?
[itsumnigga]
get?

이것이 나의 짐표입니다.
[igosi naui chimpyoimnida]
this my luggage tag is

Here is my luggage tag.

나는 평양으로 직행합니다.
[nanun pyongyang·uro chikaenghamnida]
I Pyongyang to directly go

I'm going to Pyongyang
directly.

입국[ipguk] entry

출국[chulguk] exit

착륙[changryuk] landing

입국표[ipgukpyo] disembarkation

출국표[chulgukpyo] embarkation

려권[ryoggwon] passport

사증[sajjung] visa

려권검열[ryoggwon·gomyol]
inspection of passports

성[song] family name

이름[irum] name

난날[nannal] date of birth

난곳[nangot] birth-place

성별[songbyol] sex

남자[namja] male

여자[nyoja] female

나이[nai] age

직업[chigop] occupation

주소[chuso] address

민족별[minjokbyol] nationality

국적[kukjok] nationality, citizenship

세 관 [segwan]

Customs

나에게는 신고수속해야 할
[na · egenun sin · gosusokaeya hal
with me to declare

I have nothing to declare.

물건은 없습니다.
mulgonun opsumnida]
article isn't

These are all my personal belongings.

이것은 모두 나의 개인용품입니다.
[igosun modu nauri kaeinyongpumimnida]
this all my article for
personal is

This is a gift for a friend.

이것은 동무에게 줄 선물입니다.
[igosun tongmuege chul sonmurimnida]
this a friend to to give a gift is

This is a souvenir I'm taking to England.

이것은 영국으로 가지고가는
[igosun yong · guguro kajigoganun
this England to taking

기념품입니다.
kinyompumimnida]
a souvenir is

I have no jewelry.

나에게는 귀중품은 없습니다.
[na · egenun · kwijungpumun opsumnida]
me jewelry isn't

I have 2 bottles of Insam (ginseng) wine.

인삼술 2병 있습니다.
[insamsul tubyong itsumnida]
Insam (ginseng) wine 2 bottles are

I have 300 pounds.

나에게는 300파운드 있습니다.
[na · egenun sambaek paundu itsumnida]
me 300 pound is

이 사진기는 나의
[i sajin · ginun nauri
this camera my

This camera is for my personal use.

개인용품입니다.
kaeinyongpumimnida]
for personal use article is

비행기여행 [pihaeng · giryo haeng]

Travelling by Air

당신은 오전 10시에
[tangsinun ojon yolsie
you morning 10 o'clock at

You must be at the airport
at 10 o'clock in the
morning.

비행장에 가야 합니다.
[pihaengjang·e nagaya hamnida]
the airport to go must

From which airport do we
leave?

어느 비행장에서
[onu bihaengjang · eso
which airport from

비행기를 탑니까?
[pihaeng · girul tamnigga]
the airplane get on ?

Take my baggage to the
counter.

나의 짐을 계산대까지
[nauI chimul kyesandaeggaji
my baggage the counter till

가져다주십시오.
[kajyodachusipsio]
take

Where is the booking-
office?

표파는곳이 어디입니까?
[pyopanun · gosi odiimnigga]
the booking-office which place is?

Two tickets to London,
please!

런던까지 가는 표
[londonggaji kanun pyo
London till going ticket

두장을 주십시오.
[tujang · ul chusipsio]
two sheets give

When do we land at
London?

런던에 언제 도착합니까?
[londone onje tochakamnigga]
London at when land?

2호출구는 어디입니까?
[ihochulgunun odiimnigga]
2 number gate which place is?

Where is Gate 2?

나에게 짐이 세 (3) 짝 있습니다.
[na·ege chimi sejjakitsumnida]
me baggage three pieces are

I have three pieces of
baggage.

초과되는 [chogwadoenun] excess
짐은 짐은 [chimunimun] baggage charge

얼마입니까? [olmaimnigga] how much is?

비행장 [pihaengjang] airport
비행기 [pihaeng-gi] aeroplane
기다림칸 [kidarimkan] waiting room
「office

물음칸 [murumkan] information

비행기시간표 [pihaeng-gisiganpyo] airline timetable

항로번호 [hangrobonho] flight number
자리번호 [charibonho] seat number

비행기표 [pihaeng-gipyo] airline ticket

표값 [pyogap] fare

1등급 [ildung-gup] first class

손짐 [sonjim] luggage

개인용품 [kaeinyongpum] personal effects

트렁크 [turongku] trunk

짐표 [chimpyo] luggage tag

자리표 [charipyo] boarding card

비행장관세 [pihaengjang-gwanse] airport tax

비행장에서 시내로

[pihaengjang-eso sinaero]

관광안내소가 [kwan-gwang-annaesoga] the tourist information office

어디에 있습니까? [odie itsumnigga] where is?

What is the excess baggage charge?

책임비행사 [chaegimbihaengsa] captain

접대원 [chopdaewon] steward

여자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] stewardess

담배피우지 말것! [tambaepiuujimalgot] NO SMOKING!

여자화장실 [nyojahwajangsil] LADIES

남자화장실 [namjahwajangsil] GENTLEMEN

사용중 [sayongjung] OCCUPIED

비어있음 [piyoissum] VACANT

출발 [chulbal] departure

도착 [tochak] arrival

리륙 [riryuk] take-off

착륙 [changryuk] landing

여객의 승차 [ryogaeguisungcha] embarkation

시간차이 [siganchai] time difference

통과사증 [tong-gwasajjung] transit visa

On the Way to the City from the Airport

Where is the tourist information office?

좋은 려관을 소개해줄수
[choun ryogwanul sogaehaejulsu
a good hotel recommend

Can you recommend a
good hotel?

없겠습니까?
[opgetsumnigga]
cannot?

미안하지만 짐나르는 사람을
[mianhajiman chimnarunun saramul
please a porter

Please get me a porter!

불러주십시오.
[pullojusipsio]
call!

이 짐을 택시까지
[i chimul taeksiggaji
this luggage taxi to

Take this luggage to the
taxi, please!

가져다주십시오.
[kajyodajusipsio]
take!

나를 창광산려관까지
[narul chang·gwangsanryogwan·ggaji
me the Changgwangsan Hotel to

Take me to the Chang-
gwangsan Hotel!

데려다주십시오.
[deryodajusipsio]
take!

운전수 [unjonsu] driver

려권번호 [ryogwonbonho] passport
number

사증번호 [sajjungbonho] visa number

떠난곳 [ddonangot] place of departure

려행목적 [ryohaengmokjok] purpose
of journey

체류예정기간 [cheryuyejong·gigan]

the scheduled period of stay

목적지 [mokjokji] destination

대사관 [taesagwan] embassy

령사관 [ryongsagwan] consulate

기차여행 [kicharyohaeng]

평양에 가십니까?
[pyongyang·e kasimnigga]
Pyongyang to go

예, 평양에 갑니다.
[ye pyongyang·e kamnida]
yes Pyongyang to go

언제 떠나십니까?
[onje ddonasimnigga]
when start?

래일 아침에 떠납니다.
[raeil achime ddonamnida]
tomorrow morning start

정거장까지 얼마나
[chong·gojang·ggaji olmana]
station to how much

걸립니까?
[kollimnigga]
take?

15분에 갑니다.
[sibobune kamnida]
15minutes in go

자, 정거장에 왔습니다.
[cha chon·gojang·e watsumnida]
now the station to have come

차표를 사십시오.
[chapyorul sasipsio]
ticket buy!

1 등차표를 한장
[ildungchapyorul hanjang]
first-class ticket one sheet

사겠습니다.
[sagetsumnida]
will buy

Travelling by Train

Are you going to Pyong-
yang?

Yes, I am going to
Pyongyang.

When will you start?

I shall start tomorrow
morning.

How long does it take
to the station?

We shall be there in a
quarter of an hour.

Here we are at the sta-
tion.

Get your ticket!

Let me have a first-class
ticket.

평양까지 가는 1 등차표
[pyongyang·ggaji kanun ildungchapyo
Pyongyang to going first-class ticket

한장을 주십시오!
hanjang·ul chusipsio]
one sheet give!

평양까지 가는데
[pyongyang·ggaji kanunde
Pyongyang to to go

시간이 얼마나 걸립니까?
sigani olmana kollimnigga]
the time how much necessary is?

이것은 급행열차입니까?
[igosun kupaengryolchaimnigga]
it an express is?

이 열차에 침대칸이
[i ryolcha·e chimdaekani
this train in a sleeping compartment

있습니까?
itsumnigga]
is?

이 열차에 열차식당이
[i ryolcha·e ryolchasikdang·i
this train in a dining car

있습니까?
itsumnigga]
is?

여기서 담배를 피울수
[yogiso tambaerul piulsu
here cigarette smoke

있습니까?
itsumnigga]
may?

어느 플랫폼에서 기차가
[onu pullaetuhomeso kichaga
which platform from the train

떠납니까?
ddonamnigga]
leave?

Give me a first-class one
way ticket to Pyongyang!

How long does it take to
get to Pyongyang?

Is it an express?

Does this train have a
sleeping compartment?

Does this train carry
a dining car?

May I smoke here?

From which platform
does the train leave?

어서 타십시오.
[oso tasipsio]
please get in

기차가 곧 떠납니다.
[kichaga kot ddonamnida]
the train instantly start

자, 떠났습니다.
[cha ddonatsumnida]
now started

여기는 어느 정거장입니까?
[yoginun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]
this place which station is?

여기는 함흥역입니다.
[yoginun hamhung·yogimnida]
this place Hamhung Station is

여기서 얼마동안 멎습니까?
[yogiso olmatong·an motsumnigga]
here how long stops?

다음은 어느 정거장입니까?
[taumun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]
the next which station is?

1 시간이면 평양에
[hansiganimyon pyongyang·e]
an hour's time in Pyongyang at

도착합니다.
[tochakamnida]
arrive

평양에 도착하게 되면
[pyongyang·e tochakage toemyon]
Pyongyang at when reach
알려주십시오.
[allyojusipsio]
let me know

자, 평양에 왔습니다.
[cha pyongyang·e watsumnida]
now Pyongyang to have come

어서 내리십시오!
[oso naerisipsio]
please get off!

Get in, please!

The train's about to start.

Now we're off.

What station is this?

This is Hamhung Station.

How long does the train stop here?

What is the next station?

We'll be in Pyongyang in an hour.

Please let me know when we reach Pyongyang.

Here we are in Pyongyang.

Get off, please!

정거장 [chong·gojang] station
 시간표 [siganpyo] timetable
 표파는곳 [pyopanun·got] ticket of-
 fice, booking office
 차표 [chapyo] ticket
 왕복차표 [wangbokchapyo] return
 ticket
 손짐맡기는곳 [sonjimmatginun·got]
 cloakroom
 짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun saram]
 porter

나가는곳 [naganun·got] exit
 들어가는곳 [turoganun·got] entrance
 플랫폼 [pullaetuhom] platform
 철길 [cholgil] railway
 려객차 [ryogaekcha] passenger train
 낮차 [natcha] day train
 밤차 [pamcha] night train
 전기차 [chon·gicha] electric train
 차장 [chajang] conductor.
 침대칸 [chimdaekan] compartment

려관에서 [ryogwaneso]

At the Hotel

어느 려관으로 가십니까?
 [onu ryogwanuro kasimnigga]
 what hotel to go?
 평양려관으로 갑니다.
 [pyongyangryogwanuro kamnida]
 Pyongyang Hotel to go
 자, 평양 려관에 왔습니다.
 [cha pyongyangryogwane watsumnida]
 now Pyongyang Hotel to have come
 빈 방이 있습니까?
 [pin pang·i itsumnigga]
 vacant room is there?
 저의 이름은 ... 입니다.*
 [choui irumun ... imnida]
 my name ... is
 려권이 여기 있습니다.
 [ryoggwoni yogi itsumnida]
 passport here is
 우리는 4 명입니다.
 [urinun nemyong·imnida]
 we four persons are

What hotel are you
 going to?
 I am going to the
 Pyongyang Hotel.
 Here we are (at the
 Pyongyang Hotel).
 Have you any vacant
 rooms?
 My name is...
 Here is my passport.
 We are four in all.

여기에 써넣어 주십시오.
[yogie ssonoo chusipsio]
here fill in please!

나의 방은 몇호실입니까?
[nau pang·un myotosirimnigga]
my room what number is?

이 방값은 얼마입니까?
[i pang·gapsun olmairnigga]
this room price how much is?

이 방이 마음에 듭니다.
[i pang·i maume tumnida]
this room heart to suits

나는 외출합니다.
[nanun oechulhamnida]
I go out

1시에 돌아오겠습니다.
[hansie toraogetsumnida]
one at will be back

오늘 저녁에는 늦게
[onul chonyogenun nutge]
today the evening in late

돌아오겠습니다.
[toraogetsumnida]
will come back

나는 지금 돌아옵니다.
[nanun chigum toraomnida]
I now come back

누가 나를 찾아왔습니까?
[nuga narul chajawatsumnigga]
anyone me has asked for?

나에게 편지가 왔습니까?
[na·ege pyonjiga watsumnigga]
me for letter came?

호실관리원을 찾아주십시오.
[hosilgwaliwonul chajajusipsio]
a chambermaid seek!

들어오십시오.
[turoosipsio]
come in!

Please, fill this in!

What is my room number?

What is the price of this room?

I like this room.

I am going out.

I will be back at one.

This evening I will come back late.

I am back now.

Has anyone called for me?

Is there any mail for me?

Please send a chambermaid.

Come in.

언제 저녁식사를 할수 있습니까?
[onje chonyoksiksarul halsu itsumnigga]
when dinner can do?

여기에 영어를 아는 분이
[yogie yong·orul anun puni]
here English knowing person

있습니까?
itsumnigga]
is?

...을 가져다주십시오.
[...ul kajyodajusipsio]
... bring!

래일 아침 6시에
[raeil achim yosotsie]
tomorrow morning 6 o'clock at

나를 깨워주십시오.
[narul ggaewojusipsio]
me wake up!

아침식사를 방으로
[achimsiksarul pang·uro]
the breakfast the room to

가져다주십시오.
[kajyodajusipsio]
bring!

이것을 항공우편으로
[igosul hang·gong·upycnuro]
this air mail by

보내주십시오.
[ponaejusipsio]
send!

이것을 다려주십시오.
[igosul taryojusipsio]
this iron!

이것을 세탁소에 맡겨주십시오.
[igosul setakso·e matgyojusipsio]
this the laundry to entrust!

언제면 되겠습니까?
[onjemyon toegetsumnigga]
when will be ready?

When can I have dinner?

Is there anyone here
who can speak English?

Please bring me

Please wake me at 6
o'clock tomorrow mor-
ning.

Please bring my breakfast
to my room!

Please send it by air
mail.

Iron these things, please.

I want to send it to the
laundry.

When will I get it back?

나는 오늘 저녁에
 [nanun onul chonyoge
 I today the evening in
 떠납니다.
 ddonamnida]
 leave

This evening I am going
 to leave.

돈을 청산하려고 합니다.
 [tonul chongsanharyogo hamnida]
 money to settle want

I want to settle my bill.

계산서를 만들어주십시오.
 [kyesansorul mandurochusipsio]
 the bill get ready!

Get my bill ready, please.

나는 얼마 물어야 합니까?
 [nanun olma muroya hamnigga]
 I how much must pay?

How much must I pay?

려관[ryogwan] hotel

1 층 [ilchung] ground floor

접수[chopsu] reception

2 층 [ichung] first floor

호실[hosil] room

승강기 [sung·gang·gi] lift

호실관리원[hosilgwalliwon] chamber-
 maid

1 인용 방 [irinyong bang] single
 room

지배인[chibaein] manager

2 인용 방 [iinyong bang] double
 room

등록장[tungrokjang] hotel register

계산서[kyesanso] bill

식당[sikdang] restaurant

위생실[wisaengsil] toilet

간이식당[kanisikdang] snack bar

목욕칸[mogyok·kan] bathroom

휴게실[hyugyesil] lounge

식당에서 [sikdang·eso]

In a Restaurant

식당에 갑시다.
 [sikdang·e kapsida]
 the restaurant to go!

Let's go to the restaurant!

무엇을 드릴까요?
 [muosul turilgayo]
 what may offer?

What can I do for you?

음식표를 좀 보여주십시오.
[umsikpyorul chom poyojusipsio]
the menu a little show please!

나는 정식을 주문합니다.
[nanun chongsigul chumunhamnida]
I the table d'hôte order

곧 됩니까?
[kot toemnigga]
soon is ready?

차를 드시겠습니까
[charul tusigetsumnigga]
tea will drink

아니면 커피를 드시겠습니까?
[animyon kopirul tusigetsumnigga]
or coffee will drink?

커피를 들겠습니다.
[kopirul tulgetsumnida]
coffee will drink

여기에 밥과 군빵이
[yogie pagwa kunbbang:i]
here boiled rice and toast

있습니다.
[itsumnida]
are

어느것을 드시겠습니까?
[onugosul tusigetsumnigga]
which will eat

밥을 먹겠습니다.
[pabul mokgetsumnida]
boiled rice will eat

커피의 맛이 어떻습니까?
[kopiui masi oddosumnigga]
coffee of the taste how is?

사탕가루를 더 드십시오!
[satang·garurul to tusipsio]
sugar more take please!

소젖을 좋아하십니까?
[sojojul choahasimnigga]
milk like?

Menu please!

I'll have the table d'hôte.

Can I have it right away?

Do you want tea or coffee?

I want coffee.

Here are boiled rice and toast.

Which will you have?

I'll have boiled rice.

How do you like the coffee?

Have some more sugar, please!

Do you like milk?

생달알을 드시겠습니까?
[saengdalgarul tusigetsumnigga]
fresh egg will take?

Will you have some fresh eggs?

빠다를 좀.
[bbadarul chom]
butter a little

A little butter, please.

햄을 좀.
[haemul chom]
ham a little

A little ham, please.

소금을 좀 주십시오.
[sogumul chom chusipsio]
salt a little give please!

May I have some salt, please!

후추가루를 좀 주십시오.
[huchuggararul chom chusipsio]
pepper a little give please!

May I have some pepper, please?

빵을 좀 더 주십시오.
[bbang-ul chomdo chusipsio]
bread some more give please!

Some more bread, please!

나는 이것을 주문하지
[nanun igosul chumunhaji]
I this ordered

This is not what I ordered.

않았습니다.
[anatsumnida]
not

포도술을 드시겠습니까 아니면
[podosurul tusigetsumnigga animyon]
wine will drink or

Will you drink wine or beer?

맥주를 드시겠습니까?
[maekjurul tusigetsumnigga]
beer will drink?

I will drink beer.

맥주를 마시겠습니다.
[maekjurul masigetsumnida]
beer will drink

친선을 위하여 마십시오.
[chinsonul wihayo masipsida]
friendship for let's drink!

Let's drink to our friendship!

우리의 상봉을 위하여!
[uriui sangbong-ul wihayo]
our meeting for!

To our meeting!

당신의 건강을 위하여!
 [tangsinui kon·gang·ul wihayo]
 your health for!

당신의 행복을 위하여!
 [tangsinui haengbogul wihayo]
 your happiness for!

닭고기를 좀 더 드시겠습니까?
 [takgogirul chomdo tusigetsumnigga]
 chicken some more will take?

아니요, 고맙습니다. 충분합니다.
 [aniyo komapsumnida chungbunhamnida]
 no thank you enough

고맙습니다. 더 먹고 싶지
 [komapsumnida to mokgosipji]
 thank you more will eat

않습니다.
 [ansumnida]
 not

대접 해주어서 고맙습니다.
 [taejopaejuoso komapsumnida]
 for service thank

식후다과로 무엇을 드릴까요?
 [sikudagwaro muosul turilgayo]
 dessert for what may offer

이 좋은 조선사과를 드십시오.
 [i choun chosonsagwarul tusipsio]
 this fine Korean apple take!

접대원 동무! 얼마입니까?
 [chopdaewondongmu olmaimnigga]
 waiter comrade! how much is?

식당 [sikdang] restaurant
 접대원 [chopdaewon] waiter
 여자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] waitress
 조선음식 [chosonumsik] Korean food
 구라과음식 [kurapaumsik] European food

To your health!

To your happiness!

Will you have more chicken?

No, thank you. I have enough.

No more, thank you.

Thank you. It was delicious.

What would you like for dessert?

Help yourself to this fine Korean apple!

Waiter, let me have the bill.

아침식사 [achimsiksa] breakfast
 점심식사 [chomsimsiksa] lunch
 저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] dinner
 식사안내표 [siksaannaepyo] menu
 국 [kuk] soup
 밥 [pap] boiled rice

빵 [bbang] bread
 버터 [bbada] butter
 치즈 [chiju] cheese
 찬음식 [chanumsik] cold meal
 설탕가루 [satang·garu] sugar
 남새 [namsae] vegetable
 생채 [saengchae] salad
 삶은 달걀 [salmun dalgal] boiled egg
 반숙한 달걀 [pansukan dalgal]
 soft boiled egg
 고기 [kogi] meat
 닭고기 [takgogi] chicken
 소고기 [sogogi] beef
 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] pork
 양고기 [yang·gogi] mutton
 지진 물고기 [chijin mulgogi] boiled
 굴 [kul] oyster [fish
 과일 [kwail] fruit
 사과 [sagwa] apple
 배 [pae] pear
 복숭아 [poksung·a] peach
 포도 [podo] grapes
 귤 [kyul] orange
 딸기 [ddalgi] strawberry
 참외 [chamoe] melon
 바나나 [panana] banana
 토마토 [tomado] tomato
 술 [sul] liquor

인삼술 [insamsul] Insam wine,
 ginseng wine
 포도술 [podosul] grape wine
 맥주 [maekju] beer
 꼬냑 [ggonyaku] cognac
 샴팡 [syampang] champagne
 탄산물 [tansanmul] soda water
 커피 [kopi] coffee
 코코아 [kokoa] cocoa
 초콜레트 [chyokolletu] chocolate
 차 [cha] tea
 레몬수 [remonsu] lemonade
 소젖 [sojot] milk
 사이다 [saida] fizzy drink
 얼음보숭이 [orumbosung·i] ice-
 cream
 과일청량음료 [kwailchongryang·
 umryo] sherbet
 생과자 [saeng·gwaja] cake
 칼 [kal] knife
 포크 [poku] fork
 숟가락 [sutgarak] spoon
 저가락 [choggarak] chopsticks
 상수건 [sangsugon] napkin
 재떨이 [chaetori] ashtray
 담배 [tambae] cigarette
 성냥 [songnyang] match

우편국에서 [upyon·gugesu]

At the Post-Office

국제우편국이 어디
 [kukjeupyon·gugi] odi
 the international post office where
 있습니까? |
 itsumnigga]
 is?

Where is the international
 post office?

우표를 주십시오.
[upyorul chusipsio]
stamp give please!

이 전보를 치고 싶습니다.
[i chonborul chigosipsumnida]
this telegram to send want

전보용지는 어디 있습니까?
[chonboyongjinun odi itsumnigga]
the telegram form where is?

이 전보를 보내주십시오.
[i chonborul ponaejusipsio]
this telegram send please!

이 소포를 보내고 싶습니다.
[i soporul ponaegosipsumnida]
this parcel to send want

이 편지를 항공우편으로
[i pyonjirul hang·gong·upyonuro]
this letter air mail by

보내주십시오.
[ponaejusipsio]
send please!

며칠 후에 영국에
[myochilhue yong·guge]
how many days after England to
도착합니까?
[tochakamnigga]
reach?

나는 런던에 전화를
[nanun londone chonhwarul]
I London to telephone

걸려고합니다.
[kollyogohamnida]
will call

빨리 대주면 좋겠습니다.
[bballi taejumyon choketsumnida]
quickly if connects will be good

아직 말이 끝나지 않았습니다.
[ajik mari ggunnaji anatsumnida]
still word finished not

I want some stamps.

I want to send this telegram.

Where are the telegram forms?

Send this telegram, please.

I want to send this parcel

Please send this letter by air mail.

How long will it take to reach England?

I want to put through a call to London.

I want to make an urgent call.

I want to continue my call.

우편 [upyon] mail
 편지 [pyonji] letter
 항공편지 [hang·gongpyonji] air mail
 letter
 엽서 [yopso] postcard
 우표 [upyŏ] stamp
 봉투 [pongto] envelope
 우편함 [upyonham] mailbox

전보 [chonbo] telegram
 지급전보 [chigupjonbo] urgent
 telegram
 보내는 사람 [ponaenun saram] sender
 받는 사람 [pannun saram] addressee
 전화 [chonhwa] telephone

돈바꾸는곳 [tonbaggunungot]

Money Exchange

어디서 돈을 바꿀수 있습니까?
 [odiso tonul paggulsu itsumnigga]
 where money change can?

Where can I change money?

나는 영국돈을 가지고있습니다.
 [nanun yong·gukdonul kajigoitsumnida]
 I English money have

I have some pounds.

나는 달러를 가지고있습니다.
 [nanun ddallarul kajigoitsumnida]
 I dollar have

I have some dollars.

조선돈으로 바꾸어줄수 있습니까?
 [chosondonuro pagguojulsu itsumnigga]
 Korean money into change could?

Can I change it for
 Korean currency?

예.
 [ye]
 yes

Yes.

얼마나 바꾸겠습니까?
 [olmana paggugetsumnigga]
 how much will exchange?

How much will you change?

50파운드를 바꾸겠습니다.
 [osip·paundurul paggugetsumnida]
 50 pounds will change

I will change 50 pounds.

20달러를 바꿔주십시오.
 [isipddallarul paggwojusipsio]
 20 dollars change please!

Please change 20 dollars.

잔돈으로 바꿔주십시오.
 [chandonuro paggwojusipsio]
 small money into change please!

I want some small change.

돈을 여기로 주십시오.
[tonul yogiro chusipsio]
money here give please

돈을 받으십시오.
[tonul padusipsio]
the money receive please

고맙습니다.
[komapsumnida]
thank you

돈 [ton] money

리발소에서 [ribalsoeso]

어서 앉으십시오.
[oso anjusipsio]
please sit down!

고맙습니다.
[komapsumnida]
thank you

면도를 하겠습니까 아니면
[myondorul hagetsumnigga animyon]
shaving would have or

머리를 깎겠습니까?
[morirul ggakgetsumnigga]
the hair cut would have?

둘 다 부탁드립니다.
[tul ta putakamnida]
two all request please!

파마를 약간 해주십시오.
[pamarul yakgan haejusipsio]
permanent little make please!

머리를 씻겠습니까?
[morirul ssitgetsumnigga]
hair washed would have?

예, 부탁드립니다.
[ye putakamnida]
yes request please

Please let me have the
money.

Please, take the money.

Thank you!

수표 [supyo] signature

At the Hairdresser's

Please take a seat!

Thank you!

Would you care to have
a hair cut or a shave?

Both, please!

I want to have a soft
perm.

Would you care to have
your hair washed?

Yes, if you please.

얼마입니까?
[olmaimnigga]
how much is?

...원 입니다.
[...won imnida]
...won is

의사한테서 [uisahanteso]

병원으로 실어다주십시오.
[pyongwonuro sirodajusipsio]
the hospital to carry please!

의사를 불러주십시오.
[uisarul pullo jusipsio]
a doctor call please!

저는 몸이 몹시 불편합니다.
[chonun momi mopsi pulpyonhamnida]
I the body very not well

어디가 불편합니까?
[odiga pulpyonhamnigga]
which place not well?

언제부터 앓습니까?
[onjebuto alsumnigga]
when since are ill?

어제부터 앓습니다.
[ojebuto alsumnida]
yesterday since am ill

지금 어디가 아릅니까?
[chigum odiga apumnigga]
now which place pain?

머리가 아픉니다.
[moriga apumnida]
the head pain

배가 아픉니다.
[paega apumnida]
the stomach pain

여기가 아픉니다.
[yogiga apumnida]
here pain

How much is it?

...won, please.

At the Doctor's

Please take me to the hospital!

Please send for a doctor!

I don't feel very well.

What's wrong with you?

How long have you been ill?

I have been ill since yesterday.

What are you suffering from?

I've a headache.

I've a stomach-ache.

I have a pain here.

감기에 걸렸습니다.
[kamgie kollyotsumnida]
a cold to have caught

기침합니다.
[kichimhamnida]
cough

이발이 아픉니다.
[ibbari apumnida]
a tooth pain

오한이 납니다.
[ohani namnida]
chills have

설사합니다.
[solsahamnida]
have diarrhoea

어지럽습니다.
[ojiropsumnida]
dizzy

식욕이 있습니까?
[sigyogi itsumnigga]
appetite is there?

식욕이 없습니다.
[sigyogi opsumnida]
appetite there is not

당신의 맥박이 좀
[tangsinui maekbagi chom]
your pulse rather

빠릅니다.
[bbarumnida]
quick

당신은 열이 있습니다.
[tangsinun yori itsumnida]
you fever there is

당신은 감기에 걸렸습니다.
[tangsinun kamgie kollyotsumnida]
you a cold to have caught

I've caught a cold.

I have a cough.

I have a toothache.

I have chills.

I have diarrhoea.

I feel dizzy.

Do you have any appetite?

I have no appetite.

Your pulse is rather fast.

You have a fever.

You've caught a cold.

병원에 입원해야 합니까?
 [pyongwone ibwonhaeya hamnigga]
 hospital to have to go?

Do I have to go to hospital?

며칠 안정해야 합니까?
 [myochil anjonghaeya hamnigga]
 how many days quiet have to keep?

How long do I have to stay in bed?

이 약을 몇번
 [i yagul myotbon]
 this medicine how many times

How often do I have to take the medicine?

먹어야 합니까?
 mogoya hamnigga]
 eat have to

병원 [pyong·won] hospital
 약국 [yaguk] pharmacy
 의사 [uisa] doctor
 간호원 [kanhowon] nurse
 내과 의사 [naeggwauisa] physician
 외과 의사 [oeggwauisa] surgeon
 안과 의사 [anggwauisa] oculist
 구강과 의사 [kugang·gwauisa] dentist
 신경과 의사 [singyong·gwauisa] neurologist
 피부과 의사 [pibuggwauisa] dermatologist
 소아과 의사 [soaggwauisa] paedia-
 산부인과 의사 [sanbuingwauisa] gynaecologist
 병 [pyong] illness

열 [yol] temperature
 맥박 [maekbak] pulse
 혈압 [hyorap] blood pressure
 처방 [chobang] prescription
 약 [yak] medicine
 주사 [chusa] injection
 붕대 [pungdae] bandage
 가제 [kaje] gauze
 탈지면 [taljimyong] absorbent cotton
 반창고 [panchang·go] adhesive tape
 요드팅크 [yodutingku] iodine tincture
 안마 [anma] massage

인체 [inche]

Human Body

1. 몸 [mom] The body

머리 [mori] head
 얼굴 [olgul] face

목 [mok] neck
 어깨 [oggae] shoulder

팔 [pal] arm
가슴 [kasum] chest, breast
배 [pae] belly
등 [tung] back
심장 [simjang] heart

피 [pi] blood
폐 [pe] lungs
위 [wi] stomach
허리 [hori] waist
다리 [tari] leg

2. 머리 [mori] The head

머리카락 [morikal] hair
이마 [ima] forehead
눈썹 [nunsop] eyebrow
눈 [nun] eye
코 [ko] nose
입 [ip] mouth
입술 [ipsul] lips
이발 [ibbal] teeth

혀 [hyo] tongue
턱 [tok] chin
턱수염 [toksuyom] beard
코수염 [kosuyom] moustache
구레나룻 [kurenarut] whiskers
귀 [kwi] ear
뺨 [bbyam] cheeks

3. 팔 [pal] The arm

팔꿈치 [palgumchi] elbow
손 [son] hand
손가락 [songarak] finger
손바닥 [sonbadak] palm
손톱 [sontop] nail

살가죽 [salgajuk] skin
살 [sal] flesh
힘살 [himsal] muscles
뼈 [bbyo] bones

4. 다리 [tari] The leg

넙적다리 [nopjokdari] thigh
무릎 [murup] knee
장딴지 [changddanji] calf

발 [pal] foot
발가락 [palgarak] toe
발바닥 [palbadak] sole (of the foot)

길묻기 [kilmutgi]

Asking the Way

...으로 가는 길을 대주십시오.
[...uro kanun kirul taejusipsio]
...to going way tell please

Please tell me the way
to ...

평양역으로 가는 길이
[pyongyang·yoguro kanun kiri
Pyongyang Station to going way

어느것입니까?
[onugosimnigga]
which is?

이것이 평양역으로 가는
[igosi pyongyang·yoguro kanun
this Pyongyang Station to going
길입니까?
[kirimnigga]
way is?

이 거리는 어디로 갑니까?
[i korinun odiro kamnigga]
this road where to go

어느 방향으로 가야 합니까?
[onu panghyang·uro kaya hamnigga]
which direction to must go?

나는 곧바로 가야 합니까?
[nanun kotbaro kaya hamnigga]
I straight go must?

나는 왼쪽으로 돌아야 합니까?
[nanun oenjoguro toraya hamnigga]
I the left to turn must?

당신은 그대로 가면 됩니다.
[tangsinun kudaero kamyon toemnida]
you as it is when go become

여기서 ...까지는 멀니까?
[yogiso ...ggajinun momnigga]
from here ...till far is?

여기서 평양역까지
[yogiso pyongyang·yokggaji
here from Pyongyang Station to

얼마나 멀니까?
[olmana momnigga]
how far is?

Which is the way to
Pyongyang Station?

Is this the way to
Pyongyang Station?

Where does this road lead
to?

Which way should I go?

Should I go straight on?

Should I turn left?

Please going straight
on.

Is ... far from here?

How far is it from
here to Pyongyang Station?

여기서 대략 1킬로미터입니다. It is about one kilometre
 [yogiso taeryak hankirometoimnida] from here.
 here from about one kilometre is

여기는 어디입니까? Where are we now?
 [yoginun odiimnigga]
 here which place is?

이 거리이름은 무엇입니까? What is this street?
 [i koriirumun muosimnigga]
 this street name what is?

이것은 무슨 집입니까? What is this building?
 [igosun musun chibimnigga]
 this what house is?

동쪽 [tongjjok] east	다리 [tari] bridge
서쪽 [sojjok] west	신호등 [sinhodung] traffic signal
남쪽 [namjjok] south	안내소 [annaeso] Inquiry Office
북쪽 [pukjjok] north	종합대학 [chonghapdaehak] univer-
오른쪽의 (오른쪽) [orunjogui] ([orun-	sity
jjok])right	단과대학 [tankwadaehak] college
왼쪽의 (왼쪽) [oenjjogui] ([oenjjok])	학교 [hakgyo] school
구역 [kuyok] district	도서관 [tosogwan] library
길 [kil] road	광장 [kwangjang] square
거리 [kori] street	경기장 [kyong.gijang] stadium
상점거리 [sangjomgori] shopping	공원 [kongwon] park
street	분수 [punsu] fountain
인도 [indo] pavement	탑 [tap] tower
십자로 [sipjaro] crossroads	시장 [sijang] market
건능길 [konnumgil] pedestrian	강 [kang] river
crossing	운하 [unha] canal

광고 및 간판

[kwang·go mit kanpan]

Notices and Signs

광고 [kwang·go] Announcement, Notice, Advertisement

나가는곳 [naganungot] Exit

들어가는곳 [turoganungot] Entrance
 건너가는곳 [konnoganun·got] Crossing
 쫓 ! [sot] Stop!
 들어오지 마시오 ! [turoojimasio] No admittance!
 담배피우지 말것 ! [tambaepiujimalgot] No smoking!
 버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] Bus Stop
 택시정류소 [taeksijongryuso] Taxi Stand
 점심시간 [chomsimsigan] Dinner Hour
 쉬는날 [swinunnal] Closed

택시 및 버스
 [taeksi mit bbosu]

Taxis and Buses

택시정류소가 어디입니까?
 [taeksijongryusoga odiimnigga]
 the taxi stand which place is?

Where is the taxi stand?

택시를 불러주십시오.
 [taeksirul pullojusipsio]
 a taxi call please!

Call a taxi, please!

나를 ...까지 태워다주십시오.
 [narul ...ggaji taewodajusipsio]
 me ... till carry please!

Please take me to ...!

여기서 나를 좀 기다려주십시오.
 [yogiso narul chom kidaryojusipsio]
 here me a moment wait please!

Please wait a moment for me here.

곧바로 가십시오.
 [kotbaro kasipsio]
 straight go on please!

Go straight on, please!

다음 교차점에서 오른쪽으로
 [taum kyochajomeso orunjoguro]
 the next crossing at the right

Turn to the right at the next crossing!

돌아주십시오.
 [torajusipsio]
 to turn!

좀더 빨리 갑시다.
[chom do bballi kapsida]
a little more fast go please!

여기서 세워주십시오.
[yogiso sewojusipsio]
here stop please!

얼마 물면 됩니까?
[olma mulmyon toemnigga]
how much pay come to?

...으로 가는 버스 정류소가
[...uro kanun bbosujongryusoga]
...to going bus stop

어디입니까?
[odiimnigga]
which place is?

여기서 몇 정류소
[yogiso myot chongryuso]
here from how many stop

가면 됩니까?
[kamyon toemnigga]
when go will be?

택시 [taeksi] taxi
 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] city bus
 시외버스 [sioebbosu] long-distance
 bus, suburb service bus
 무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] trolley
 bus

시내구경 [sinaegugyong]

관광지들을 좀
[kwan · gwangjidurul chom]
tourist resorts some

말해주십시오.
[malhaejusipsio]
tell please

Hurry up, please!

Stop here, please!

What is the fare?

Where is the bus stop
for...?

How many stops is it
from here?

전차 [choncha] streetcar
 지하철도 [chihacholdo] under-
 ground railway, subway
 버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] bus
 stop

City Sightseeing

Please tell me some
tourist resorts.

나는 만경대를 방문
[nanun mangyongdaerul pangmun
I Mangyongdae to visit

하였으면 합니다.
hayossumyon hamnida]
want

나는 주체사상탑
[nanun chuchesasangtab
I the Tower of Juche Idea

(개선문)을 보았으면
(kaesonmun)ul poassumyon
(the Arch of Triumph) to see

합니다.
hamnida]
want

나는 국제친선전람관을
[nanun kukjechinsonjollamguanul
I the International Friendship Exhibition

방문하였으면 합니다.
pangmunhayossumyon hamnida]
to visit want

나는 김일성경기장으로
[nanun Kim Il Sung gyong-gijang-uro
I Kim Il Sung Stadium to

갔으면 합니다.
kassumyon hamnida]
to go want

나는 인민대학습당
[nanun inmindaeahaksupdang
I the Grand People's Study House
(평양산원)을
(pyongyangsanwon)ul
(the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital)

보았으면 합니다.
poassumyon hamnida]
to see want

I want to visit Man-
gyongdae.

I want to see the
Tower of the Juche Idea
(the Arch of Triumph).

I want to visit the
International Friend-
ship Exhibition.

I want to go to
Kim Il Sung Stadium.

I want to see the Grand
People's Study House
(the Pyongyang Mater-
nity Hospital).

나는 서해갑문을 보았으면
[nanun sohaegammunul poassumyon
I West Sea Barrage to see

합니다.
hamnida]
want

나는 백두산(금강산)으로
[nanun paekdusan(kumgangsanyuro
I Mt. Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang) to

갔으면 합니다.
kassumyon hamnida]
to go want

영어로 된 안내서를
[yong·oro toen annaesorul
English in a guidebook

주십시오.
chusipsio]
give please!

영어를 아는 안내원을
[yong·orul anun annaewonul
English knowing guide

불여주십시오.
puchycjusipsio]
give please!

시내 관광버스가 있습니까?
[sinaegwan·gwangbbosuga itsumnigga]
city sightseeing bus is there?

버스가 언제 떠납니까?
[bbosuga onje ddonamnigga]
the bus when start?

버스가 언제 돌아옵니까?
[bbosuga onje toraomnigga]
the bus when get back?

표값은 얼마입니까?
[pyogapsun olmaimnigga]
ticket price how much is?

이것은 무엇입니까?
[igosun muosimnigga]
this what is?

I want to see the West
Sea Barrage.

I want to go to Mt.
Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang).

Can I have an English
guidebook?

I want an English-
speaking guide.

Is there any city sight-
seeing bus?

When does the bus leave?

When does the bus get
back?

What's the fare?

What is this?

저것은 무엇입니까?
[chogosun muosimnigga]
that what is?

What is that?

극장 [kukjang]

Theatre

지금 무엇이 상연되고 있습니까?
[chigum muosi sang·yondoegoitsumnigga]
now what is showing?

What's on now?

지금 평양대극장에서
[chigum pyongyang daegukjang·eso]
now the Pyongyang Grand Theatre in

What's on now at the
Pyongyang Grand
Theatre?

무엇이 상연되고 있습니까?
muosi sang·yondoegoitsumnigga]
what is showing?

가극을 어디서 볼수 있습니까?
[kagugul odiso polsu itsumnigga]
an opera where can see?

Where can I see an opera?

공연이 몇시에
[kong·yoni myotsie]
the performance what time in

What time does the per-
formance begin?

시작됩니까?
sijakdoemnigga]
begins?

What time does the per-
formance end?

공연이 몇시에
[kong·yoni myotsie]
the performance what time in

끝납니까?
ggunnamnigga]
ends?

How long does it last?

몇시간 상연됩니까?
[myotsigan sang·yondoemnigga]
how much time shows?

나는 좋은 자리를
[nanun choun charirul]
I a good seat

I want a good seat.

받았으면 합니다.
padassumyon hamnida]
to get want

저의 자리까지 안내해 주십시오.
[choui chariggaji annaehaejusipsio]
my seat to lead please!

Please show me to
my seat!

휴식은 얼마 동안입니까?
[hyusigun olmadong animnigga]
the interval how long is?

How long is the
interval?

공연이 마음에 듭니까?
[kong yoni maume tumnigga]
the performance the heart to suit?

Did you like the per-
formance?

음악회가 마음에 듭니까?
[umakoega maume tumnigga]
the concert the heart to suit?

Did you like the
concert?

영화가 마음에 듭니까?
[yonghwaga maume tumnigga]
the film the heart to suit?

Did you like the film?

극장 [kukjang] theatre

영화 [yonghwa] film

평양대극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang]

음악 [umak] music

Pyongyang Grand Theatre

민요 [minyo] folk song

교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] circus

고전음악 [kojonumak] classical
music

영화관 [yonghwagwan] cinema

공연순서 [kong yonsunso] programme

경음악 [kyong umak] light music

공연 [kong yon] play

민족무용 [minjongmuyong] folk
dance

음악회 [umakoe] concert

가극 [kaguk] opera

바레무용 [paremuyong] ballet

연극 [yon guk] drama

교예 [kyoye] circus

사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi]

Photographing

여기서 사진을 찍어도 됩니까?
[yogiso sajinul jjigodo toemnigga]
here a photograph take may?

May I take a picture
here?

저와 함께 사진을
[chowa hamgge sajinul]
me with together photograph

Would you mind posing
with me?

찍읍시다.
[jjigupsida]
let's take!

명승지 [myongsungji] famous spots
 사적지 [sajokji] historical places
 기념비 [kinyombi] monument
 박물관 [pangmulgwan] museum
 미술박물관 [misulbangmulgwan] art
 museum, art gallery

전람관 [chollamgwan] exhibition
 동물원 [tongmurwon] zoo
 식물원 [singmurwon] botanical
 garden
 수족관 [sujokgwan] aquarium

물건사기 [mulgonsagi]

저와 함께 상점으로
 [chowa hamgge sangjomuro
 me with together the shop to

가지 않겠습니까?
 [kaji anketsumnigga]
 go will not?

갑시다.
 [kapsida]
 let's go!

무엇을 사겠습니까?
 [muosul sagetsumnigga]
 what buy will?

나는 ...을 사고 싶습니다.
 [nanun ...ul sagosipsumnida]
 I ...to buy want

...을 어디서 살수 있습니까?
 [...ul odeso salsu itsumnigga]
 ... where buy can?

어디서 모자와 신발을 살수
 [odeso mojawa sinbarul salsu
 where hat and shoes buy

있습니까?
 [itsumnigga]
 can?

모자를 사겠습니까?
 [mojarul sagetsumnigga]
 hat buy will?

...을 보여주시시오.
 [...ul poyojusipsio]
 ... show please!

Shopping

Will you go shopping
 with me?

With pleasure.

What can I do for you?

I want to buy...

Where can I buy ...?

Where could I buy a
 hat and a pair of shoes?

Would you like to buy
 a hat?

Please show me...

다른것을 보여주세요.
[tarun·gosul poyojusipsio]
another one show please!

Please show me another one!

나는 이것을 가지겠습니다.
[nanun igosul kajigetsumnida]
I this take will

I will take this.

얼마입니까?
[olmaimnigga]
how much is?

How much is that?

이것은 얼마입니까?
[igosun olmaimnigga]
this how much is?

What's the price of this one?

저것은 얼마입니까?
[chogosun olmaimnigga]
that how much is?

What's the price of that one?

조영사전이
[choyongsajoni]
the Korean-English dictionary

Have you a Korean-English dictionary?

있습니까?
[itsumnigga]
is there?

조선지도가 있습니까?
[chosonjidoga itsumnigga]
Korean map is there?

Have you a map of Korea?

이 책의 영문판이
[i chaegui yongmunpani]
this book of the English edition
있습니까?
[itsumnigga]
is there?

Have you got the English edition of this book?

예, 이것이 영문판입니다.
[ye igosi yongmunpanimnida]
yes this an English edition is

Yes, this is an English edition.

그것을 보여주세요.
[kugosul poyojusipsio]
it show please

Please let me see it!

값은 얼마입니까?
[kapsun olmaimnigga]
the price how much is?

What's the price, please!

한부 사겠습니다.
[hanbu sagetsumnida]
a copy will buy

I'll take a copy.

이 시계를 고쳐 주십시오.
[i sigyerul kochojusipsio]
this watch repair please!

Please repair this watch!

이 필름을 현상해 주십시오.
[i pillimul hyonsanghaejusipsio]
this film develop please!

Develop this film, please!

언제면 됩니까?
[onjemyon toemnigga]
when is ready?

When will it be ready?

백화점 [paekwajom] department store

치약 [chiyak] toothpaste

기념품 [kinyompum] souvenir

치솔 [chissol] toothbrush

그림 [kurim] picture

면도칼 [myondokal] razor

신발 [sinbal] shoes

빗 [pit] comb

신발상점 [sinbalsangjom] shoe shop

세면수건 [semyonsugon] towel

시계 [sigye] watch

손수건 [sonsugon] handkerchief

시계상점 [sigyesangjom] watch shop

양복점 [yangbokjom] tailor shop

책 [chaek] book

넥타이 [nektai] necktie

책방 [chaekbang] book shop

모자 [moja] hat

놀이감 [noriggam] toy

장갑 [changgap] gloves

인형 [inhyong] doll

긴양말 [kinyangmal] stockings

만년필 [mannyonpil] fountain-pen

짧은양말 [jjalbunyangmal] socks

화장품 [hwajangpum] cosmetic

속내의 [songnaeui] underwear

사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom]

camera shop

수 [su] Numerals

1. The cardinal numbers

number	Korean			English
	The pure Korean cardinal numbers		The cardinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters	
	substantival	adjectival	substantival, adjectival	
1	하나 [hana]	한 [han]	일 [il]	one
2	둘 [tul]	두 [tu]	이 [i]	two
3	셋 [set]	세 [se]	삼 [sam]	three
4	넷 [net]	네 [ne]	사 [sa]	four
5	다섯 [tasot]	다섯 [tasot]	오 [o]	five
6	여섯 [yosot]	여섯 [yosot]	륙 [ryuk]	six
7	일곱 [ilgop]	일곱 [ilgop]	칠 [chil]	seven
8	여덟 [yodol]	여덟 [yodol]	팔 [pal]	eight
9	아홉 [ahop]	아홉 [ahop]	구 [ku]	nine
10	열 [yol]	열 [yol]	십 [sip]	ten

11	열하나 [yolhana]	열한 [yolhan]	십일 [sibil]	eleven
12	열둘 [yoldul]	열두 [yoldu]	십이 [sibi]	twelve
13	열셋 [yolset]	열세 [yolse]	십삼 [sipsam]	thirteen
14	열넷 [yolnet]	열네 [yolne]	십사 [sipsa]	fourteen
15	열다섯 [yoldasot]	열다섯 [yoldasot]	십오 [sibo]	fifteen
16	열여섯 [yoryosot]	열여섯 [yoryosot]	십륙 [simryuk]	sixteen
17	열일곱 [yorilgop]	열일곱 [yorilgop]	십칠 [sipchil]	seventeen
18	열여덟 [yoryodol]	열여덟 [yoryodol]	십팔 [sippal]	eighteen
19	열아홉 [yolahop]	열아홉 [yolahop]	십구 [sipgu]	nineteen
20	스물 [sumul]	스무 [sumu]	이십 [isip]	twenty
21	스물하나 [sumulhana]	스물한 [sumulhan]	이십일 [isibil]	twenty one
22	스물둘 [sumuldul]	스물두 [sumuldu]	이십이 [isibi]	twenty two
30	서른 [sorun]	서른 [sorun]	삼십 [samsip]	thirty
40	마흔 [mahun]	마흔 [mahun]	사십 [sasip]	forty
50	쉰 [swin]	쉰 [swin]	오십 [osip]	fifty
60	예순 [yesun]	예순 [yesun]	륙십 [ryuksip]	sixty
70	일흔 [ilhun]	일흔 [ilhun]	칠십 [chilsip]	seventy
80	여든 [yodun]	여든 [yodun]	팔십 [palsip]	eighty

90	아흔 [ahun]	아흔 [ahun]	구십 [kusip]	ninety
100			백 [paek]	hundred
101	백하나 [paek·hana]	백한 [paek·han]	백일 [paegil]	a hundred and one
102	백둘 [paekdul]	백두 [paekdu]	백이 [paegi]	a hundred and two
200			이백 [ibaek]	two hundred
300			삼백 [sambaek]	three hundred
400			사백 [sabaek]	four hundred
500			오백 [obaek]	five hundred
600			육백 [ryukbaek]	six hundred
700			칠백 [chilbaek]	seven hundred
800			팔백 [palbaek]	eight hundred
900			구백 [kubaek]	nine hundred
1000			천 [chon]	a thousand
1001	천하나 [chonhana]	천한 [chonhan]	천일 [chonil]	a thousand and one
10000			만 [man]	ten thousand
100000			십만 [simman]	hundred thousand
1000000			백만 [paengman]	one million
10000000			천만 [chonman]	ten million
100000000			억 [ok]	hundred million

2. The ordinal numbers:

Korean			
The pure Korean ordinal numbers		The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters	English
첫(번)째 [chot(bon)jjae]		제일 [cheil]	first
두번째, [tubonjjae]	둘째 [tuljjae]	제이 [chei]	second
세번째, [sebonjjae]	셋째 [setjjae]	제삼 [chesam]	third
네번째, [nebonjjae]	넷째 [netjjae]	제사 [chesa]	fourth
다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae]		제오 [cheo]	fifth
여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]		제륙 [cheryuk]	sixth
일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae]		제칠 [chechil]	seventh
여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]		제팔 [chepal]	eighth
아홉(번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]		제구 [chegu]	ninth
열(번)째 [yol(bon)jjae]		제십 [chesip]	tenth
열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]		제십일 [chesibil]	eleventh
열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae]		제십이 [chesibi]	twelfth
스무(번)째 [sumn(bon)jjae]		제이십 [cheisip]	twentieth
서른(번)째 [sorun(bon)jjae]		제삼십 [chesamsip]	thirtieth
마흔(번)째 [mahun(bon)jjae]		제사십 [chesasip]	fortieth
쉰(번)째 [swin(bon)jjae]		제오십 [cheosip]	fiftieth
예순(번)째 [yesun(bon)jjae]		제륙십 [cheryuksip]	sixtieth
일흔(번)째 [ilhun(bon)jjae]		제칠십 [chechilsip]	seventieth
여든(번)째 [yodun(bon)jjae]		제팔십 [chepalsip]	eightieth
아흔(번)째 [ahun(bon)jjae]		제구십 [chekusip]	ninetieth
백(번)째 [paek(bon)jjae]		제일백 [cheilbaek]	hundredth

돈 [ton]

Money

1. Coins:

1전 [iljon] 1jon
5전 [ojon] 5jon
10전 [sipjon] 10jon
50전 [osipjon] 50jon
1원 [irwon] 1won

2. Paper money:

1원 [irwon] 1won
5원 [owon] 5won
10원 [sibwon] 10won
50원 [osibwon] 50won
100원 [paegwon] 100won

시간 [sigan]

Time

시계 [sigye] clock
일 [il] day
시간 [sigan] hour
시 [si] o'clock

분 [pun] minute
초 [cho] second
년 [nyon] year
월 [wol] month

1 시입니다.
[hansiimnida]
one o'clock is

It is one o'clock.

2 시입니다.
[tusiimnida]
two o'clock is

It is two o'clock.

3 시입니다.
[sesiimnida]
three o'clock is

It is three o'clock.

4 시입니다.
[nesiimnida]
four o'clock is

It is four o'clock.

5 시입니다.
[tasotsiimnida]
five o'clock is

It is five o'clock.

6 시입니다.
[yosotsiimnida]
six o'clock is

It is six o'clock.

7 시입니다.
[ilgopsiimnida]
seven o'clock is

It is seven o'clock.

8 시입니다.
[yodolsiimnida]
eight o'clock is

It is eight o'clock.

9 시입니다.
[ahopsiimnida]
nine o'clock is

It is nine o'clock.

10시입니다.
[yolsiimnida]
ten o'clock is

It is ten o'clock.

11시입니다.
[yolhansiiimnida]
eleven o'clock is

It is eleven o'clock.

12시입니다.
[yoldusiimnida]
twelve o'clock is

It is twelve o'clock.

몇시입니까?
[myotsiimnigga]
what time is?

What time is it?

1 시가 지났습니다.
[hansiga chinatsumnida]
one o'clock past is

It's past one.

1 시 15분입니다.
[hansi sibobunimnida]
one o'clock fifteen minute is

It's a quarter past one.

2 시 15분
[tusi sibobun]
two o'clock fifteen minutes

It's a quarter to two.

전입니다.
[jonimnida]
before is

It's half past three.

3 시반입니다.
[sesibanimnida]
three o'clock half is

4 시 10분 전입니다.
[nesi sipbun jonimnida]
four o'clock ten minutes before is

It's ten minutes to four.

5시 20분입니다.
 [tasotsi isipbunimnida]
 five o'clock twenty minutes is

It's twenty minutes
 past five.

오늘 [onul] today
 어제 [oje] yesterday
 그저께 [kujogge] the day before
 yesterday
 래일 [raeil] tomorrow
 모래 [more] the day after tomorrow
 지난주 [chinanju] last week
 지난달 [chinandal] last month
 지난해 [chinanhae] last year

래주 [raeju] next week
 래달 [raedal] next month
 래년 [raenyon] next year
 아침 [achim] morning
 낮 [nat] day
 저녁 [chonyok] evening
 오전 [ojon] morning
 오후 [ohu] afternoon
 밤 [pam] night

날씨 [nalssi]

Weather

오늘의 날씨는 어떻습니까?
 [onurui nalssinun oddosumnigga]
 today of the weather how is?

What's the weather like
 today?

좋은 날씨입니다.
 [choun nalssiimnida]
 good weather is

It's fine today.

나쁜 날씨입니다.
 [nabbun nalssiimnida]
 bad weather is

It's bad today.

따뜻합니다.
 [ttaddutamnida]
 warm is

It's warm.

춥습니다.
 [chupsumnida]
 cold

It's cold.

무덥습니다.
 [mudopsumnida]
 sultry

It's sultry.

바람이 불니다.
 [parami pumnida]
 windy

It's windy.

번개가 칩니다.
[pongaega chimnida]
the lightning strikes

우뢰가 옵니다.
[uryoega umnida]
the thunder rolls

비가 올것입니다.
[piga olgosimnida]
the rain will come

비가 옵니다.
[piga omnida]
the rain comes

눈이 옵니다.
[nuni omnida]
the snow comes

There's lightning.

There's thunder.

It will rain.

It's raining.

It's snowing.

4 계절 [negyejol]

봄 [pom] spring
여름 [yorum] summer

Four Seasons

가을 [kaul] autumn, fall
겨울 [kyoul] winter

월 [wol]

오늘은 며칠입니까?
[onurun myochirimnigga]
today how many day is?

오늘은 7월 25일입니다.
[onurun chirwol-isiboirimnida]
today July 25th is

Months

What's the date today?

Today is July 25.

1 월 [irwol] January
2 월 [iwol] February
3 월 [samwol] March
4 월 [sawol] April
5 월 [owol] May
6 월 [ryuwol] June

7 월 [chirwol] July
8 월 [parwol] August
9 월 [kuwol] September
10 월 [siwol] October
11 월 [sibirwol] November
12 월 [sibiwol] December

주일 [chuil]

Days of the Week

오늘은 무슨 요일입니까?
 [onurun musun yoirimnigga]
 today what day of the week is?

What day is it today?

오늘은 월요일입니다.
 [onurun worryoimnida]
 today Monday is

Today is Monday.

월요일 [woryoil] Monday
 화요일 [hwayoil] Tuesday
 수요일 [suyoil] wednesday
 목요일 [mogyoil] Thursday

금요일 [kumyoil] Friday
 토요일 [toyoil] Saturday
 일요일 [iryoil] Sunday

GRAMMAR

LESSON 1

THE NOUN

14 In the Korean language there is no gender.

There is neither definite nor indefinite article.

15 The plural of the noun is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the singular of the noun.

16 The plural ending shows that the objects are two or more.

for example:

singular

사람 [saram] a man
 아이 [ai] a child
 나무 [namu] a tree
 말 [mal] a horse

plural

사람들 [saramdul] men
 아이들 [aidul] children
 나무들 [namudul] trees
 말들 [maldul] horses

THE DECLENSION OF THE NOUN IN THE SINGULAR

17 The nominative for the question *who* or *what* has the nominative ending : **께서, 가, 이**

— **께서**[ggeso] (*when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined*)

for example:

아버님께서[abonimggeso] father

explanation:

아버님	+	께서
<i>noun</i>		<i>nominative ending</i>

— **가**[ga] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel*)
for example:

○ 아이가 [aiga] child

explanation:

아이	+	가
<i>noun</i>		<i>nominative ending</i>

○ 나무가 [namuga] tree

explanation:

나무	+	가
<i>noun</i>		<i>nominative ending</i>

— **이**[i] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant*)

for example:

○ 사람이 [sarami] man

explanation:

사람	+	이
<i>noun</i>		<i>nominative ending</i>

○ 말이 [mari] horse

explanation:

말	+	이
<i>noun</i>		<i>nominative ending</i>

18 The accusative for the question *whom* or *what* has the accusative ending: **를, 을**

— **를** [rul] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel*)

for example:

○ 아이를 [airul] child

explanation:

아이 + 를
noun accusative ending

○ 나무를 [namurul] tree

explanation:

나무 + 를
noun accusative ending

— **을** [ul] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant*)

for example:

○ 사람을 [saramul] man

explanation:

사람 + 을
noun accusative ending

○ 말을 [marul] horse

explanation:

말 + 을
noun accusative ending

19 The genitive for the question *whose* has the genitive ending: **의**

— **의** [ui]

for example:

○ 아이의 [aiui] of a child, child's

explanation:

아이 + 의
noun genitive ending

○ 나무의 [namuui] of a tree

explanation:

나무 + 의
noun genitive ending

○ 사람의 [saramui] of a man, man's

explanation:

사람 + 의
noun genitive*ending

○ 말의 [marui] of a horse

explanation:

말 + 의
noun genitive ending

20 The dative for the question *whom, where to, where or when* has the dative ending: **께, 에게, 에**

— **께** [gge] (*when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined*)

for example:

아버님 **께** [abonimgge] to one's father

explanation:

아버님 + **께**
noun dative ending

— **에게** [ege] (*when the word to be declined indicates an animate being*)

for example:

○ 아이 **에게** [aiege] to one's child

explanation:

아이 + **에게**
noun dative ending

○ 사람 **에게** [saramege] to a man

explanation:

사람 + **에게**
noun dative ending

○ 말 **에게** [marege] to a horse

explanation:

말 + **에게**
noun dative ending

— **에** [e] (*when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being*)

for example:

- 나무에 [namue] to a tree

explanation:

나무 + 에
noun dative ending

- 평양에 [pyongyang.e] to Pyongyang, in Pyongyang

explanation:

평양 + 에
noun dative ending

- 낮에 [naje] in the daytime

explanation:

낮 + 에
noun dative ending

21 The locative for the question *where* or *from where* has the locative ending: **에게서, 에서**

— **에게서**[egeso] (*when the word to be declined indicates an animate being*)

for example:

- 아이에게서 [aiegeso] by one's child, from one's child

explanation:

아이 + 에게서
noun locative ending

- 사람에게서 [saramegeso] by a man, from a man

explanation:

사람 + 에게서
noun locative ending

- 말에게서 [maregeso] by a horse, from a horse

explanation:

말 + 에게서
noun locative ending

— **에서**[eso] (*when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being*)

for example:

- 나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree

explanation:

나무 + 에서
noun locative ending

- 공장에서 [kongjang·eso] in a factory, from a factory

explanation:

공장 + 에서
noun locative ending

22 The instrumental for the question *to what, as what, with what, through what, from what, what for or after what* has the instrumental ending: 로

—로[ro] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel or the consonant ㄹ [l]*)

when the word to be declined ends in a consonant other than the consonant ㄹ [l], the link-vowel 으[u] is inserted (*refer to 194*) between the word to be declined and the instrumental ending 로[ro].

the word to be declined + link-vowel 으[u] + instrumental ending 로[ro]

for example:

- 동무로 [tongmuro] as a friend

explanation:

동무 + 로
noun instrumental ending

- 손님으로 [sonnimuro] as a guest

explanation:

손님 + 으 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 아이로 [airo] as a child

explanation:

아이 + 로
noun instrumental ending

- 사람으로 [saramuro] as a man

explanation:

사람 + 으 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 도끼로 [toggiro] with an ax

explanation:

도끼 + 로
noun instrumental ending

- 삽으로 [saburo] with a shovel

explanation:

삽 + 으 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 편지로 [pyonjiro] by a letter

explanation:

편지 + 로
noun instrumental ending

- 우편으로 [upyonuro] by post

explanation:

우편 + 으 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 첼로 [chollo] of iron

explanation:

첼 + 로
noun instrumental ending

- 감기로 [kamgiro] because of a cold

explanation:

감기 + 로
noun instrumental ending

- 병으로 [pyong·uro] because of illness

explanation:

병 + 으 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

- 도시로 [tosiro] to the city

explanation:

도시 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 집으로 [chiburo] to one's home

explanation:

집 + 으 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

23 The coordinative case has the coordinative case ending:

와 / 과

—와 [wa] and, with (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel*)

for example:

○ 아버지와 어머니 [abojiwa omoni] father and mother

explanation:

아버지 + 와 어머니
noun coordinative case ending noun

○ 아버지와 가다 [abojiwa kada] go with father

explanation:

아버지 + 와 가다
noun coordinative case ending verb

—과 [gwa] and, with (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant*)

for example:

○ 사람과 말 [saramgwa mal] a man and a horse

explanation:

사람 + 과 말
noun coordinative case ending noun

○ 형과 가다 [hyong-gwa kada] go with brother

explanation:

형 + 과 가다
noun coordinative case ending verb

24 The vocative has the vocative ending: 이시여, 여, 이여, 야, 아

—이시여 [isiyo] (*when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined*)

for example:

어머니 이시여! [omoniisiyo] mother!

explanation:

어머니 + 이시여!
noun vocative ending

- 여[yo] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel; this is mostly used in written language*)

for example:

누나여! [nunayo] sister!

explanation:

누나 + 여!
noun vocative ending

- 이여[iyo] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant; this is mostly used in written language*)

for example:

조국이여! [chogugiyoy] fatherland!

explanation:

조국 + 이여!
noun vocative ending

- 야[ya] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel; this represents a low form of courtesy (refer to 168) in colloquial language*)

for example:

애야! [aeya] child!

explanation:

애 + 야!
noun vocative ending

- 아[a] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant; this represents a low form of courtesy in colloquial language*)

for example:

영철아! [yongchora] Yong Chol! (Yong Chol is a name)

explanation:

영철 + 아!
noun vocative ending

25 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given:

아버님[abonim] father

nominative	아버님께서[abonimggeso] one's father
accusative	아버님을[abonimul] one's father
genitive	아버님의[abonimui] of one's father, father's
dative	아버님께[abonimgge] to one's father
locative	아버님에게서[abonimegeso] by one's father, from one's father
instrumental	아버님으로[abonimuro] to one's father, as one's father
coordinative case	아버님과[abonimgwa] one's father and, with one's father
vocative	아버님이시여![abonimisiyo] one's father!

26 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a vowel:

1. When the word to be declined indicates an animate being:

아이 [ai] child

nominative	아이가[aiga] one's child
accusative	아이를[airul] one's child
genitive	아이의[aiui] of one's child, child's
dative	아이에게[aiege] to one's child
locative	아이에게서[aiegeso] by one's child, from one's child
instrumental	아이로[airo] to one's child, as one's child
coordinative case	아이와[aiwa] one's child and, with one's child
vocative	아이야![aiya] one's child!

소 [so] cow

nominative	소가 [soga] a cow
accusative	소를 [sorul] a cow
genitive	소의 [soui] of a cow
dative	소에게 [so·ege] to a cow
locative	소에서 [so·egeso] by a cow, from a cow
instrumental	소로 [soro] to a cow, as a cow
coordinative	소와 [sowa] a cow and, with a cow
case	
vocative	not used

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

나무 [namu] tree

nominative	나무가 [namuga] a tree
accusative	나무를 [namurul] a tree
genitive	나무의 [namuui] of a tree
dative	나무에 [namue] to a tree
locative	나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree
instrumental	나무로 [namuro] of a tree
coordinative	나무와 [namuwa] a tree and, with a tree
case	
vocative	not used

27 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a consonant:

1. When the word to be declined indicates an animate being:

사람 [saram] man

nominative	사람이 [sarami] a man
accusative	사람을 [saramul] a man
genitive	사람의 [saramui] of a man
dative	사람에게 [saramege] to a man
locative	사람에게서 [saramegeso] by a man, from a man

instrumental	사람으로 [saramuro] to a man, as a man
coordinative	사람과 [saramgwa] a man and, with a man
case	
vocative	사람 이여! [saramiyo] a man!

말 [mal] horse

nominative	말이 [mari] a horse
accusative	말을 [marul] a horse
genitive	말의 [marui] of a horse
dative	말에게 [marege] to a horse
locative	말에게서 [maregeso] by a horse, from a horse
instrumental	말로 [mallo] on a horse
coordinative	말과 [malgwa] a horse and, with a horse
case	
vocative	not used

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

책 [chaek] book

nominative	책 이 [chaegi] a book
accusative	책 을 [chaegul] a book
genitive	책 의 [chaegui] of a book
dative	책 에 [chaege] to a book
locative	책 에서 [chaegeso] in a book
instrumental	책 으로 [chaeguro] with a book
coordinative	책 과 [chaek·gwa] a book and, with a book
case	
vocative	not used

THE DECLENSION OF A NOUN IN THE PLURAL

28 The declension of a noun in the plural is the same as the declension of the singular noun which ends in a consonant.

29 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given :

아버님들[abonimdul] fathers

nominative	아버님들께서[abonimdulggeso] fathers
accusative	아버님들을[abonimdurul] fathers
genitive	아버님들의[abonimdurui] of fathers, fathers'
dative	아버님들께[abonimdulgge] to fathers
locative	아버님들에게서[abonimduregeso] by fathers, from fathers
instrumental	아버님들로[abonimdullo] to fathers, as fathers
coordinative case	아버님들과[abonimdulgwa] fathers and, with fathers
vocative	아버님들이시여[abonimdurisiyo] fathers!

30 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an animate being:

아이들[aidul] children

nominative	아이들이[aiduri] children
accusative	아이들을[aidurul] children
genitive	아이들의[aidurui] of children, children's
dative	아이들에게[aidurege] to children
locative	아이들에게서[aiduregeso] by children, from children
instrumental	아이들로[aidullo] to children, as children
coordinative case	아이들과[aidulgwa] children and, with child- ren
vocative	아이들아[aidura] children!

소들[sodul] cows

nominative	소들이[soduri] cows
accusative	소들을[sodurul] cows

genitive	소들의 [sodurui] of cows
dative	소들에게 [sodurege] to cows
locative	소들에게서 [soduregeso] by cows, from cows
instrumental	소들로 [sodullo] to cows, as cows
coordinative case	소들과 [sodulgwa] cows and, with cows
vocative	not used

사람들 [saramdul] men

nominative	사람들이 [saramduri] men
accusative	사람들을 [saramdurul] men
genitive	사람들의 [saramdurui] of men
dative	사람들에게 [saramdurege] to men
locative	사람들에게서 [saramduregeso] by men, from men
instrumental	사람들로 [saramdullo] to men, as men
coordinative case	사람들과 [saramdulgwa] men and, with men
vocative	사람들이여! [saramduriyo] men!

말들 [maldul] horse

nominative	말들이 [malduri] horses
accusative	말들을 [maldurul] horses
genitive	말들의 [maldurui] of horses
dative	말들에게 [maldurege] to horses
locative	말들에게서 [malduregeso] by horses, from horses
instrumental	말들로 [maldullo] on horses
coordinative case	말들과 [maldulgwa] horses and, with horses
vocative	not used

31 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an inanimate being:

나무들 [namudul] trees

nominative	나무들이 [namuduri] trees
accusative	나무들을 [namudurul] trees
genitive	나무들의 [namudurui] of trees
dative	나무들에 [namudure] to trees
locative	나무들에서 [namudureso] on trees, from trees
instrumental	나무들로 [namudullo] of trees
coordinative	나무들과 [namudulgwa] trees and, with trees
case	
vocative	not used

책들 [chaekdul] books

nominative	책들이 [chaekduri] books
accusative	책들을 [chaekdurul] books
genitive	책들의 [chaekdurui] of books
dative	책들에 [chaekdure] to books
locative	책들에서 [chaekdureso] in books
instrumental	책들로 [chaekdullo] with books
coordinative	책들과 [chaekdulgwa] books and, with books
case	
vocative	not used

32 Table of the endings of the case of the noun:

number of the word to be declined	singular	plural
case		
nominative	께서 [ggeso], 가 [ga] / 이 [i]	께서 [ggeso], 이 [i]
accusative	를 [rul] (리 [li]) / 을 [ul]	을 [ul]

genitive	의[ui]	의[ui]
dative	께[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]	께[gge], 에게[ege], 에[e]
locative	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]
instrumental	로[ro]	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]/과[gwa]	과[gwa]
vocative	이시여[isiyo], 여[yo]/ 이여[iyo], 야[ya]/ 아[a]	이시여[isiyo], 이여[iyo], 아[a]

WORD ORDER

33 The predicate always lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

버스가*2

[bbosuga
a bus

온다.*1

[onda]
comes

A bus comes.

explanation:

*1 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the
final ending of the verb(refer to 90)]

온다(after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound ㄴ)

The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence.

*2 버스 + 가
noun nominative ending

34 The subject usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

기차가*

[kichaga
a train

온다.

[onda]
comes

A train comes.

explanation:

* 기차 + 가
noun nominative ending

The subject 기차가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

35 The genitive always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

○ 아버지의* 책 | the book of the father
[abojiui chaek]
the father of the book
explanation:

* 아버지 + 의
noun genitive ending

The genitive 아버지의 lies before the word 책 it refers to.

○ 여성들의* 권리 | the right of women
[nyosongdurui kwolli]
women of right

explanation:

* 여성 + 들 + 의
noun plural ending genitive ending

The genitive 여성들의 lies before the word 권리 it refers to.

36 The object lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

학생이*2 신문을*1 본다.*3 | A pupil reads the newspaper.
[haksaeng.i sinmunul ponda]
a pupil the newspaper reads

explanation:

*1 신문 + 을
noun accusative ending

The object 신문을 lies between the subject 학생이 and the predicate 본다.

*2 학생 + 이
noun nominative ending

*₃ 보 + 다 [po da] read
 stem ending

보 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

본다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound ㄴ)

LESSON 2

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

37 The personal pronoun has different forms: singular and plural and in the form of courtesy.

form of courtesy		number	person	To a superior	To a person of the same rank or to an inferior
speaker	singular			저[cho] I	나[na] I
	plural			저희[chohui] we	우리[uri] we
person addressed	singular				너[no] you
	plural				너희[nohui] you

for example:

○ 저는*¹ 갑니다*² | I go.
 [chonun kamnida]
 I go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to a superior.

*₁ 저 + 는
 personal pronoun auxiliary ending (refer to 185)

*₂ 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 너 + 는
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 너희는 * 간다. | You go.
[nohuinun kanda]
you go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to inferiors.

* 너희 + 는
personal pronoun auxiliary ending

38 당신[tangsin] "you" is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun.

for example:

당신은* 갑니다. | You go.
[tangsinun kamnida]
you go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to a superior.

* 당신 + 은
noun auxiliary ending

동무[tongmu] "comrade" is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun with the meaning "you".

for example:

동무는* 간다. | You go.
[tongmunun kanda]
comrade goes

explanation:

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 동무 + 는
noun auxiliary ending

39 he, she, it, they (the person to be spoken about) are expressed as follows:

1. 그 [ku] he

그 - demonstrative pronoun that

2. 그 여자 [ku nyoja] she

그
demonstrative pronoun

여자
noun

3. 그것 [kugot] it

그
demonstrative pronoun

+

것
incomplete noun

An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning in itself and expresses a complete meaning only when another word lies before it as an attribute.

4. 그들 [kudul] they

그
demonstrative pronoun

+

들
plural ending

그 여자들 [ku nyojadul] they

그
demonstrative pronoun

여자

+

들

plural ending

그것들 [kugotdul] they

그
demonstrative pronoun

+

것

incomplete noun

+

들

plural ending

DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

- 40 The declension of the personal pronoun is just the same as that of the noun (refer to 26, 27, 30, 31).
- 41 The declension of the personal pronoun 처 [cho] "I" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 처 [che] "I" is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 처 [cho] "I". Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 처 [cho] in the nominative.

저 [cho] I

nominative	제가 [chega] I
	저는 [chonun] I
accusative	저를 [chorul] me
genitive	저의 [choui] my
dative	저에게 [cho·ege] me
locative	저에게서 [cho·egeso] by me, from me
instrumental	저로 [choro] to me, as I
coordinative case	저와 [chowa] I and, with me
vocative	not used

42 The declension of the personal pronoun 나 [na] "I" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

The personal pronoun 내 [nae] "I" is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 나 [na] "I".

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 나 [na] "I" in the nominative.

나 [na] I

nominative	내가 [naega] I
	나는 [nanun] I
accusative	나를 [narul] me
genitive	나의 [nau] my
dative	나에게 [na·ege] me
locative	나에게서 [na·egeso] by me, from me
instrumental	나로 [naro] to me, as I
coordinative case	나와 [nawa] I and, with me
vocative	not used

43 The declension of the personal pronoun 저희 [chohui] "we"

is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

저희 [chohui] we

nominative	저희가 [chohuiga] we
accusative	저희를 [chohuirul] us
genitive	저희의 [chohuiui] our
dative	저희에게 [chohuiege] us
locative	저희에게서 [chohuiegeso] by us, from us
instrumental	저희로 [chohuiro] to us, as we
coordinative case	저희와 [chohuiwa] we and, with us
vocative	not used

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 저희 [chohui] "we". The declension of the personal pronoun 저희들 [chohuidul] "we" formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

저희들 [chohuidul] we

nominative	저희들이 [chohuiduri] we
accusative	저희들을 [chohuidurul] us
genitive	저희들의 [chohuidurui] our
dative	저희들에게 [chohidurege] us
locative	저희들에게서 [chohiduregeso] by us, from us
instrumental	저희들로 [chohuidullo] to us, as we
coordinative case	저희들과 [chohuidulgwa] we and, with us
vocative	not used

44 The declension of the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] "we" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indica -

tes an animate being (*refer to 26*).

우리 [uri] we

nominative	우리가 [uriga]	we
accusative	우리를 [urirul]	us
genitive	우리의 [uriui]	our
dative	우리에게 [uriego]	us
locative	우리에게서 [uriego]	by us, from us
instrumental	우리로 [uriro]	to us, as we
coordinative case	우리와 [uriwa]	we and, with us
vocative		not used

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] "we". The declension of the personal pronoun 우리들 [uridul] "we" formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

우리들 [uridul] we

nominative	우리들이 [uriduri]	we
accusative	우리들을 [uridurul]	us
genitive	우리들의 [uridurui]	our
dative	우리들에게 [uridurege]	us
locative	우리들에게서 [uriduregeso]	by us, from us
instrumental	우리들로 [uridullo]	to us, as we
coordinative case	우리들과 [uridulgwa]	we and, with us
vocative		not used

45 The declension of the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

The personal pronoun 네 [ne] "you" is used in the nominati-

ve instead of the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you".

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you" in the nominative.

너 [no] you

nominative	네가 [nega]	you
	너는 [nonun]	you
accusative	너를 [norul]	you
genitive	너의 [noui]	your
dative	너에게 [no·ege]	you
locative	너에게서 [no·egeso]	by you, from you
instrumental	너로 [norol]	to you, as you
coordinative case	너와 [nowa]	you and, with you
vocative		not used

- 46 The declension of the personal pronoun 너희 [nohui] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

너희 [nohui] you

nominative	너희가 [nohuiga]	you
accusative	너희를 [nohuirul]	you
genitive	너희의 [nohuiui]	your
dative	너희에게 [nohuiege]	you
locative	너희에게서 [nohuiegeso]	by you, from you
instrumental	너희로 [nohuiro]	to you, as you
coordinative case	너희와 [nohuiwa]	you and, with you
vocative		not used

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal

pronoun 너희 [nohui] "you". The declension of the personal pronoun 너희들 [nohuidul] formed by that is the same with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

너희들 [nohuidul] you

nominative	너희들이 [nohuiduri] you
accusative	너희들을 [nohuidurul] you
genitive	너희들의 [nohuidurui] your
dative	너희들에게 [nohuidurege] you
locative	너희들에게서 [nohuiduregeso] by you, from you
instrumental	너희들로 [nohuidullo] to you, as you
coordinative case	너희들과 [nohuidulgwa] you and, with you
vocative	not used

47 The declension of the noun 당신 [tangsin] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

당신 [tangsin] you

nominative	당신이 [tangsin-i] you
accusative	당신을 [tangsin-ul] you
genitive	당신의 [tangsin-ui] your
dative	당신에게 [tangsin-ege] you
locative	당신에게서 [tangsin-egeso] by you, from you
instrumental	당신으로 [tangsin-uro] to you, as you
coordinative case	당신과 [tangsin-gwa] you and, with you
vocative	not used

The plural form 당신들 [tangsin-dul] "you" (pl) of the noun 당신 [tangsin] "you" (sg) is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the noun 당신 [tangsin] "you" (sg).

The declension of the noun 당신들 [tangsin-dul] "you" (pl) is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

당신들 [tangsin-dul] you

nominative	당신들이 [tangsin-duri] you
accusative	당신들을 [tangsin-durul] you
genitive	당신들의 [tangsin-durui] your
dative	당신들에게 [tangsin-durege] you
locative	당신들에게서 [tangsin-duregeso] by you, from you
instrumental	당신들로 [tangsin-dullo] to you, as you
coordinative case	당신들과 [tangsin-dulgwa] you and, with you
vocative	당신들이여 ! [tangsin-duriyo] you!

48 The declension of 그 [ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

그 [ku] he

nominative	그가 [kuga] he
accusative	그를 [kurul] him
genitive	그의 [kuui] his
dative	그에게 [kuege] him
locative	그에게서 [kuegeso] by him, from him
instrumental	그로 [kuro] to him, as he
coordinative case	그와 [kuwa] he and, with him
vocative	not used

49 The declension of 그 여자 [ku nyoja] "she" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

그 여자 [ku nyoja] she

nominative	그 여자가 [ku nyojaga] she
accusative	그 여자를 [ku nyojaru] she
genitive	그 여자의 [ku nyojai] her
dative	그 여자에게 [ku nyoja·ege] her
locative	그 여자에게서 [ku nyoja·egeso] by her, from her
instrumental	그 여자로 [ku nyojaro] to her, as she
coordinative case	그 여자와 [ku nyojawa] she and, with her
vocative	not used

50 The declension of 그것 [kugot] "it" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (refer to 27).

그것 [kugot] it

nominative	그것 이 [kugosi] it
accusative	그것 을 [kugosul] it
genitive	그것 의 [kugosui] its
dative	그것 에 [kugose] to it
locative	그것 에서 [kugoseso] in it, from it
instrumental	그것 으로 [kugosuro] with it, through it, of it, because of it
coordinative case	그것 과 [kugotgwa] it and, with it
vocative	not used

51 The declension of 그들 [kudul] "they" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate

being (*refer to 27*).

그들 [kudul] they

nominative	그들이 [kuduri] they
accusative	그들을 [kudurul] them
genitive	그들의 [kudurui] their
dative	그들에게 [kudurege] them
locative	그들에게서 [kuduregeso] by them, from them
instrumental	그들로 [kudullo] to them, as they
coordinative case	그들과 [kudulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

52 The declension of 그 녀자들 [ku nyojadul] "they" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

그 녀자들 [ku nyojadul] they

nominative	그 녀자들이 [ku nyojaduri] they
accusative	그 녀자들을 [ku nyojadurul] them
genitive	그 녀자들의 [ku nyojadurui] their
dative	그 녀자들에게 [ku nyojadurege] them
locative	그 녀자들에게서 [ku nyojaduregeso] by them, from them
instrumental	그 녀자들로 [ku nyojadullo] to them, as they
coordinative case	그 녀자들과 [ku nyojadulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

53 The declension of 그것들 [kugotdul] they is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (*refer to 27*).

그것들 [kugotdul] they

nominative	그것들이 [kugotduri] they
accusative	그것들을 [kugotdurul] them
genitive	그것들의 [kugotdurui] their
dative	그것들에 [kugotdure] them
locative	그것들에서 [kugotdureso] in them, from them
instrumental	그것들로 [kugotdullo] with them, through them, of them, because of them
coordinative case	그것들과 [kugotdulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

54 The genitive of the personal pronoun in Korean corresponds with the possessive pronoun in English.

for example:

○ 나의*	아버지		my father
[nau]	aboji]		
my	father		

explanation:

* 나 + 의 (나 - personal pronoun 의 - genitive ending of the personal pronoun)

○ 나의	어머니		my mother
[nau]	omoni]		
my	mother		
○ 나의	집		my house
[nau]	chip]		
my	house		
○ 나의	동무들		my friends
[nau]	tongmudul]		
my	friends		

55 Table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun

number of the word to be declined case	singular	plural
	nominative	가 [ga]
accusative	를 [rul] (르 [l])	를 [rul] (르 [l]) / 을 [ul]
genitive	의 [ui]	의 [ui]
dative	에게 [ege]	에게 [ege]
locative	에게서 [egesō]	에게서 [egesō]
instrumental	로 [ro]	로 [ro]
coordinative case	와 [wa]	와 [wa] / 과 [gwa]
vocative	여 [yo]	여 [yo] / 이여 [iyo]

WORD ORDER

56 The genitive of the personal pronoun always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

- 나의* 어머니 [nau i omoni] my mother
- 우리의* 어머니 [uriui omoni] our mother

explanation:

* 나의 or 우리의, the genitive of the personal pronoun 나 "I" or 우리 "we" lies before its relative word 어머니.

LESSON 3

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

57 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into three forms according to the distance between the speaker and the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the speaker:

이 [i] this, these

여기 [yogi] this place

for example:

○ 이 집이* ¹ 나의 집이다* ²	This is my house.
[i chibi nau chibida]	
this house my house is	

explanation:

*¹ 이 집 + 이 (이 - demonstrative pronoun 집 - noun 이 - nominative ending)

*² 집 + 이 + 다 [집 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

○ 여기가* ¹ 나의 고향이다* ²	This is my native place.
[yogiga nau kohyang·ida]	
this place my native place is	

explanation:

*¹ 여기 + 가 (여기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)

*² 고향 + 이 + 다 [고향 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

2. The demonstrative pronoun, which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed:

그 [ku] that, those

거기[kogi] that place

for example:

○ 그 사람이 * 나의 친구다. | That man is my friend.
[ku sarami nau chinguda] |
that man my friend is

explanation:

* 그 사람 + 이 (그 - demonstrative pronoun 사람 - noun 이 - nominative ending)

○ 저기가 * 그의 고향이다. | That is his native place.
[kogiga kuui kohyang·ida] |
that place his native place is

explanation:

* 저기+가 (저기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)

3. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed:

저[cho] that, those

저기[chogi] that place

for example:

○ 저 집이 나의 집이다. | That is my house.
[cho chibi nau chibida] |
that house my house is

○ 저기가 그의 고향이다. | That is his native place.
[chogiga kuui kohyang·ida] |
that place his native place is

58 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into two kinds according to the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object:

이[i] this, these

그[ku] that, those

저[cho] that, those

2. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place:

여기 [yogi] this place
 거기 [kogi] that place
 저기 [chogi] that place

59 Table of the demonstrative pronouns

distance kind	something existing in the vicinity of the speaker	something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed	something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed
object	이 this, [i] these	그 that, [ku] those	저 that, [cho] those
place	여기 this place [yogi]	거기 that place [kogi]	저기 that place [chogi]

THE DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

60 The demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object is used as an adjective and is not declined.

for example:

이 사람 [i saram] this man.

그 나무 [ku namu] that tree

저 마을 [cho maul] that village

explanation:

이, 그, 저 - demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object

사람, 나무, 마을 - noun

61 The demonstrative pronoun 그 [ku] "that" which indicates an object can be also used substantively.

In this case the demonstrative pronoun 그 [ku] "that" which indicates the object expresses the meaning of "he". The declension of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그 [ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being.

그 [ku] he

nominative	그가 [kuga] he
accusative	그를 [kurul] him
genitive	그의 [kuui] his
dative	그에게 [kuege] him
locative	그에게서 [kuegeso] by him, from him
instrumental	그로 [kuro] to him, as he
coordinative case	그와 [kuwa] he and, with him
vocative	not used

The plural form 그들 [kudul] "they" of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그 [ku] "he" is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그 [ku] "he".

62 The declension of the plural form 그들 [kudul] "they" of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그 [ku] "he" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

그들 [kudul] they

nominative	그들이 [kuduri] they
accusative	그들을 [kudurul] them
genitive	그들의 [kudurui] their
dative	그들에게 [kudurege] them

locative	그들 에게서[kuduregeso] by them, from them
instrumental	그들 로[kudullo] to them, as they
coordinative case	그들 과[kudulgwa] they and, with them
vocative	not used

The plural form 이들[idul] of the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] "this" is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] "this" which indicates the object and is used substantively. In this case the plural form 이들[idul] of the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] "this" which indicates the object has the meaning of "these men".

63 The declension of 이들[idul] "these men" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

이들 [idul] these men

nominative	이들이 [iduri] these men
accusative	이들을 [idurul] these men
genitive	이들의 [idurui] of these men
dative	이들에게 [idurege] to these men
locative	이들에게서[iduregeso] by these men, from these men
instrumental	이들로 [idullo] to these men, as these men
coordinative case	이들과 [idulgwa] these men and, with these men
vocative	not used

64 The declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place is the same as with a noun which ends in a

vowel and indicates an inanimate being:

여기 [yogi] this place

nominative	여기가 [yogiga] this place
accusative	여기를 [yogirul] this place
genitive	여기의 [yogiui] of this place
dative	여기에 [yogie] to this place
locative	여기에서 [yogieso] in this place, from this place
instrumental	여기로 [yogiro] to this place
coordinative case	여기와 [yogiwa] this place and, with this place
vocative	not used

거기 [kogi] that place

nominative	거기가 [kogiga] that place
accusative	거기를 [kogirul] that place
genitive	거기의 [kogiui] of that place
dative	거기에 [kogie] to that place
locative	거기에서 [kogieso] in that place, from that place
instrumental	거기로 [kogiro] to that place
coordinative case	거기와 [kogiwa] that place and, with that place
vocative	not used

저기 [chogi] that place

nominative	저기가 [chogiga] that place
accusative	저기를 [chogirul] that place
genitive	저기의 [chogiui] of that place
dative	저기에 [chogie] to that place
locative	저기에서 [chogieso] in that place, from that place

instrumental	저기로 [chogiro] to that place
coordinative case	저기와 [chogiwa] that place and, with that place
vocative	not used

65 Table of the endings of the case of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates place

number of the word to be declined case	singular
nominative	가 [ga]
accusative	를 [rul] (은 [1])
genitive	의 [ui]
dative	에 [e]
locative	에서 [eso]
instrumental	로 [ro]
coordinative case	와 [wa]
vocative	여 [yo], 야 [ya]

WORD ORDER

66 The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

이* 사람 [i saram] this man

explanation:

* 이 - *adjectively used demonstrative pronoun*

The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 이 which indicates the object lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

67 The attribute always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

자는*	아이	sleeping child
[chanun	ai]	
sleeping	child	

explanation:

* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending

자 + 는 [는 - *attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)*]

The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다.

The attribute 자는 lies before the word 아이 it refers to.

68 The adverbial modifier usually lies after the subject and the object.

for example:

우리는	평양을	곧* ¹	방문합니다* ² .	We will visit Pyongyang soon.
[urinun	pyongyang-ul	kot	pangmunhamnida]	
we	Pyongyang	soon	visit	

explanation:

*₁ The adverbial modifier 곧 lies after the subject 우리는 and the object 평양을.

*₂ 방문하 + 다 [pangmunha da] visit
stem ending

방문하 + ㅂ니다
[ㅂ니다 - *most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)*]

방문합니다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅂ)

LESSON 4

THE VERB

69 The infinitive of the verb in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending [다 [da]

example	explanation	
	stem +	ending
가다 [kada] (go)	가	다
오다 [oda] (come)	오	다
먹다 [mokda] (eat)	먹	다
주다 [chuda] (give)	주	다
마시다 [masida] (drink)	마시	다
공부하다 [kongbuhada] (learn)	공부하	다

THE FORMS OF THE VERB

70 The verb has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

for example:

나는	집으로	간다.*
[nanun	chiburo	kanda]
I	home to	go

I am going home.

explanation:

* The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.

가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The low declarative form ㄴ다 of the final ending of the verb is attached to the stem 가 of the verb 가다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The final form 간다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence.

for example:

나는	공장에서	일하고*	I work at the factory and go home.
[nanun	kongjang·eso	ilhago	
I the	factory at	work and	
집으로	간다.		
chiburo	kanda]		
home	to go		

explanation:

* The connecting form 일하고 is derived from the infinitive 일하다.

일하 + 다 [ilha da] work
stem ending

일하 + 고 [고 - connecting ending of the verb (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the verb is attached to the stem 일하 of the verb 일하다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 일하고 of the verb 일하다 connects the phrases, 공장에서 일하- and 집으로 간다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pro-

noun or numeral

for example:

자는*	아이	sleeping child
[chanun	ai]	
sleeping	child	

explanation:

* The attributive form 자는 is derived from the infinitive 자다.

자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending

자 + 는 [는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The attributive form 자는 of the verb 자다 is added to the noun 아이.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

땀이	비가	오듯*	흐른다.	The sweat flows as it rains.
[ddami	piga	odut	hurunda]	
the sweat	the rain	as it comes	flows	

explanation:

* The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 is derived from the infinitive 오다.

오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 듯 [듯 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]

The ending of the adverbial modifier 듯 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 오 of the verb 오다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 of the verb 오다 modifies the verb 흐른다.

비가 오듯 is the expanded adverbial modifier (refer to 227).

THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERB

71 The final form of the verb is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the verb makes no distinction of person or number. The tense of the final form of the verb is the present.

for example:

person \ number	singular	plural
speaker	내가 간다*. [naega kanda] I go.	우리가 간다. [uriga kanda] We go.
person addressed	네가 간다. [nega kanda] You go.	너희가 간다. [nohuiga kanda] You go.
person spoken about	그가 간다. [kuga kanda] He goes.	그들이 간다. [kuduri kanda] They go.

explanation:

- * The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.
 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending
- 가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
- 간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERB

72 The final ending of the verb is the ending of the final form

of the verb.

The final ending of the verb expresses the closing of the sentence.

73 The final ending of the verb can express four moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

내가	간다*		I go.
[naega	kanda]		
I	go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb(refer to 90)]

간다(after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신이	갑니까 *?		Are you going?
[tangsini	kamnigga]		
you	go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

가 + ㅁ니까 [ㅁ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 102)]

갑니까(after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅁ)

3. The suggestive form

The suggestive form is the mood in which the speaker

suggests to the person addressed that they should do some act together.

for example:

우리가	가자*.		Let us go!
[uriga	kaja]		
we	let us go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending
 가 + 자 [자 - low suggestive form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 119)]

4. The imperative form

The imperative form is the mood in which the speaker urges the person addressed to do some action.

for example:

너는	가라* !		You go!
[nonun	kara]		
you	go!		

explanation:

* 가 + 다
 stem ending
 가 + 라 [라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 121)]

74 The final ending of the verb can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example :

저는	평양으로 갑니다*.		I go to Pyongyang.
[chonun	pyongyang-uro kamnida]		
I	Pyongyang to go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다
 stem ending

가 + ㅅ니다 [ㅅ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅅ)
The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy

The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는	평양으로	가오*.	I go to Pyongyang.
[nanun	pyongyang·uro	kao]	
I	Pyongyang to	go	

explanation:

* 가 + 다
stem ending

가 + 오 [오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy

The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는	평양으로	간다*.	I go to Pyongyang.
[nanun	pyongyang·uro	kanda]	
I	Pyongyang to	go	

explanation:

* 가 + 다
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)
The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

75 The final endings of the verb are subdivided into the final

endings of the declarative form, the final endings of the interrogative form, the final endings of the suggestive form and the final endings of the imperative form.

THE ADJECTIVE

76 The infinitive form of the adjective in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending 다 [da]

for example:

푸르	+	다	[puru da]	blue
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

즐겁	+	다	[chulgop da]	merry
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

밝	+	다	[pak da]	bright
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

THE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE

77 The adjective has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:

하늘은	푸르다*
[hanurun	puruda]
the sky	blue

The sky is blue.

explanation:

* The final form 푸르다 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다.

푸르	+	다	[puru da]	blue
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

푸르 + 다 [다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

The low declarative form 다 of the final ending of the adjective is attached to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The final form 푸르다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective in Korean corresponds to the form "copula + nominal part of the predicate" in English.

The final form 푸르다 in Korean corresponds to the form "is blue" in English.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence

for example:

하늘은		푸르고*		The sky is blue and my heart is merry.
[hanurun the sky		purugo blue and		
내	마음은	즐겁다.		
nae	maumun	chulgopda]		
my	heart	merry		

explanation:

* The connecting form 푸르고 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다 of the adjective.

푸르 + 다
stem ending

푸르 + 고 [고 - connecting ending of the adjective (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the adjective is attached to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 푸르고 of the adjective 푸르다 connects the clauses 하늘은 푸르- and 내 마음은 즐겁다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun or numeral

for example:

푸른*	하늘		blue sky
[purun	hanul]		
blue	sky		

explanation:

* The attributive form 푸른 is derived from the infinitive form 푸르다 of the adjective.

푸르 + 다
stem ending

푸르 + ㄴ [ㄴ - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)]

푸른 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㄴ)

The attributive ending ㄴ of the adjective in its present tense is added to the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The attributive form 푸른 of the adjective 푸르다 is added to the noun 하늘.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

달이	밝게*	비친다.		The moon shines brightly.
[tari	palge	pichinda]		
the moon	brightly	shines		

explanation:

* The form of the adverbial modifier 밝게 is derived from the infinitive form 밝다 of the adjective.

밝 + 다 [pak da] bright
stem ending

밝 + 게 [게 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]

The ending of the adverbial modifier 게 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 밝 of the adjective 밝다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The form of the adverbial modifier 밝게 of the adjective 밝다 modifies the verb 비친다.

THE FINAL FORM OF THE ADJECTIVE

78 The final form of the adjective is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the adjective is the present.

for example:

number person	singular	plural
speaker	내가 크다.* [naega kuda] I big I am big.	우리가 크다. [uriga kuda] we big We are big.
person addressed	네가 크다. [nega kuda] you big You are big.	너희가 크다. [nohuiga kuda] you big You are big.
person spoken about	그가 크다. [kuga kuda] he big He is big.	그들이 크다. [kuduri kuda] they big They are big.

explanation:

* The final form 크다 is derived from the infinitive form 크다 of the adjective.

크	+	다	[ku da]	big
<i>stem</i>		<i>ending</i>		

크 + 다 (다-low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE ADJECTIVE

79 The final ending of the adjective is the ending of the final form of the adjective.

The final ending of the adjective expresses the closing of the sentence.

80 The final ending of the adjective can express two moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

나는	기쁘다*
[nanun	kibbuda]
I	glad

I am glad.

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다
stem ending

[다-low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신은	기뻐니까*?
[tangsinun	kibbumnigga]
you	glad?

Are you glad?

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다
stem ending

기쁘 + ㅂ니다 [ㅂ니다—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 104)]

기쁩니다 (after contracting the syllable ㅂ and the sound ㅂ)

81 The final ending of the adjective can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example:

저는 기쁩니다*
[chonun kibbumnida]
I glad

I am glad.

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다
stem ending

기쁘 + ㅂ니다 [ㅂ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

기쁩니다 (after contracting the syllable ㅂ and the sound ㅂ)

The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy

The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는 기쁘오*
[nanun kibbuo]
I glad

I am glad.

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다
stem ending

기쁘 + 오 [오- middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to .92)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy

The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는	기쁘다*	I am glad.
[nanun	kibbuda]	
I	glad	

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다
stem ending

기쁘 + 다 [다-low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to .92)]

The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

- 82 The final endings of the adjective are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 83 The verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching a final ending, a connecting ending or an attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 94, 128, 151) to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○	여기가	평양입니다*	It is Pyongyang.
	[yogiga	pyongyang · imnida]	
	this place	pyongyang is	

explanation:

* 평양 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [평양 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

평양입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

평양입니다 is the final form of the verbal form of the noun 평양.

○ 그것은 나요.*
[kugosun nayo]
it I is

It is me.

explanation:

* 나 + 요 [나 - personal pronoun 요 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

나요 is the final form of the verbal form of the personal pronoun 나.

○ 조국은 하나다.*
[chogugun hanada]
fatherland one is

The fatherland is one.

explanation:

* 하나 + 다 [하나 - numeral 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

하나다 is the final form of the verbal form of the numeral 하나.

○ 저는 기자이고*
[chonun kijaigo
I a journalist am and
이분은 의사입니다.
ibunun uisaimnida]
this person a doctor is

I am a journalist, and
this is a doctor.

explanation:

* 기자 + 이 + 고 [기자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 고 - connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]

기자이고 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 기자.

○ 주체의 조국인*	조선	Korea, the
[chucheui chogugin	choson	fatherland
Juche of the fatherland being	Korea	of Juche

explanation:

* 조국 + 이 + ㄴ [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ -
 attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]
 조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)
 조국인 is the attributive form of the verbal form of the
 noun 조국.

THE DIVISION OF THE VERBAL FORMS OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

84 The verbal forms of the noun, pronoun or numeral are divided as follows:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:

조선은 주체의 조국이다.*	Korea is the father-
[chosonun chucheui chogugida]	
Korea Juche of the fatherland is	

explanation:

* 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 -
 low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal
 form (refer to 94)]

The final form 조국이다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects the words or phrases or clauses in a sentence

for example:

저는	로동자이고*
[chonun	rodongjaigo
I a	worker am and
이분은	기사입니다.
ibunun	kisaimnida]
this person	an engineer is

I am a worker, and he is an engineer.

explanation:

* 로동자 + 이 + 고 [로동자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending
고 - connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 로동자이고 connects the clauses, 저는 로동자이 - and 이분은 기사입니다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun or numeral

for example:

영웅의	나라인*	조선
[yong.ung-ui	narain	choson]
hero of	land being	Korea

Korea, the heroes' land

explanation:

* 나라 + 이 + ㄴ [나라 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ - at-
tributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]

나라인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

The attributive form 나라인 is added to the noun 조선.

THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

- 85 The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the present.

for example:

number person	singular	plural
	speaker	저는 영국사람입니다. [chonun yong.guksaram imnida] I an Englishman am I am an Englishman
person addressed	당신은 영국사람입니다. [tangsinun yong.guksa- ramimnida] you an Englishman are You are an English- man.	당신들은 영국사람들입니다. [tangsinurun yong.guk saramdurimnida] you Englishmen are You are Englishmen.
person spoken about	그는 영국사람입니다. [kunun yong.guksaram imnida] he an Englishman is He is an Englishman.	그들은 영국사람들입니다. [kudurun yong.guksaram durimnida] they Englishmen are They are Englishmen.

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

86 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the ending of the final form of the verbal

form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral expresses the closing of the sentence.

87 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express two moods:

1. The declarative form

The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

조선은	주체의	조국이다.*	Korea is the fa- therland of Juche.
[chosonun	chucheui	chogugida]	
Korea	Juche of	the fatherland is	

explanation:

* 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 -
low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal
form (refer to 94)]

2. The interrogative form

The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신은	조선사람입니까*?	Are you a Korean?
[tangsinun	chosonsaramimnigga]	
you	a Korean are	

explanation:

* 조선사람 + 이 + ㅂ니까 [조선사람 - noun 이 - exchanging
ending ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the
final ending of the verbal form (refer to 106)]
조선사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the
sound ㅂ)

88 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example:

저는	영국사람입니다.*	I am an Englishman.
[chonun	yong-guksaramimnida]	
I	an Englishman am	

explanation:

* 영국사람 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [영국사람 - noun 이] - exchanging ending ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
영국사람입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy

The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는	영국사람이오.*	I am an Englishman.
[nanun	yong-guksaramio]	
I	an Englishman am	

explanation:

* 영국사람 + 이 + 오 [오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy

The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는 영국사람이다.*
[nanun yong.guksaramida]
I an Englishman am

I am an Englishman.

explanation:

* 영국사람 + 이 + 다 [다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

- 89 The final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

LESSON 5

THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

- 90 There are the following declarative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

습니다 [sumnida]/ㅁ니다 [mnida]

- 1) 습니다 [sumnida] (*when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant*)

for example:

저는 사과를 먹습니다.*
[chonun sagwarul moksumnida]
I an apple eat

I eat an apple.

explanation:

* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending

먹 + 습니다 (습니다-most deferential declarative form)

of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

- 2) **ㅁ니다** [mnida] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

○ 환영 합니다.		Welcome !
[hwanyonghamnida]		
welcome		

explanation:

환영하	+	다	[hwanyongha da] welcome
stem		ending	

환영하 + ㅁ니다 (ㅁ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

환영 합니다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅁ)

The stem 환영하 of the verb 환영하다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

○ 그는 편지를 씁니다.*		He writes a letter.
[kunun pyonjirul ssumnida]		
he a letter writes		

explanation:

* 쓰 + 다	[ssu da] write
stem	ending

쓰 + ㅁ니다 (ㅁ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

씁니다 (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound ㅁ)

The stem 쓰 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel ㅡ.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

오 [o] / 소 [so]

- 1) 오 [o] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

나는	가오.*		I go.
[nanun	kao]		
I	go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

가 + 오 (오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

2) 소[so] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:

나는	사과를	먹소*		I eat an apple.
[nanun	sagwarul	mokso]		
I	an apple	eat		

explanation:

* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
 stem ending

먹 + 소 (소-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

The sound ㄴ [n] or the syllable 는 [nun] is placed before this final ending in the present.

The final endings ㄴ다 [nda] and 는다 [nunda] are formed by it.

The final ending ㄴ다 [nda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a vowel.

The final ending 는다 [nunda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a consonant.

1) ㄴ다 [nda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

나는	주체의	조국인		I go to Korea, the father-
[nanunchueui	chogugin			land of Juche.
I	Juche of the fatherland being			
조선으로	간다*			
chosonuro	kanda]			
Korea to	go			

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

2) ㄴ다 [nunda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:

그는	밥을	먹는다.*	He eats rice.
[kunun	pabul	mongnunda]	
he	rice	eats	

explanation:

* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending

먹 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

91 Table of declarative final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니다 [sumnida] / 받습니다 [mnda]	오 [o] / 소 [so]	다 [da]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE ADJECTIVE

92 There are the following declarative final endings to the adjective:

1. The most deferential form:

습니다[sumnida]/ ㅁ니다[mnida]

1) 습니다[sumnida] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant*)

for example:

저의	마음은	즐겁 습니다.*	My heart is merry.
[choui	maumun	chulgopsumnida]	
my	heart	merry	

explanation:

* 즐겁 + 다 [julkop da] merry
stem ending

즐겁 + 습니다(습니다—*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective*)

The stem 즐겁 of the adjective 즐겁다 ends in the consonant ㅁ.

2) ㅁ니다[mnida] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel*)

for example:

하늘은	푸릅니다.*	The sky is blue.
[hanurun	purumnida]	
the sky	blue	

explanation:

* 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue
stem ending

푸르 + ㅁ니다 (ㅁ니다—*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective*)

푸릅니다(after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㅁ)

The stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 ends in the vowel—.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

오 [o]/ 소 [so]

- 1) 오 [o] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

평양은 웅장하 오*
[pyongyang·un ungjanghao]
Pyongyang magnificent

Pyongyang is magnificent.

explanation:

* 웅장하 + 다 [ungjangha da] magnificent
 stem ending

웅장하 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 웅장하 of the adjective 웅장하다 ends in the vowel ㅏ.

- 2) 소 [so] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)

for example:

저 산은 높소*.
[cho sanun nopsol]
that mountain high

That mountain is high.

explanation:

* 높 + 다 [nop da] high
 stem ending

높 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 높 of the adjective 높다 ends in the consonant ㅈ.

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

조선의 아침은 맑다*.
[chosonui achimun makda]
the Korean morning fresh

The morning in Korea is fresh.

explanation:

* 맑 + 다 [mak da] fresh
 stem ending

ㅁ + 다 (다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

93 Table of declarative final endings of the adjective

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니다 [sumnida] / 받니다 [mnida]	오 [o] / 소 [so]	다 [da]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.

THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE
NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

94 There are the following declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

1. The most deferential form:

습니다 [sumnida] / 받니다 [mnida]

1) 습니다 [sumnida] (*when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense*)

for example:

그는 대학생이였 습니다*.

[kunun taehaksaeng-iyotsumnida]

He a student was

He was a student.

explanation:

* 대학생 + 이 + 였 + 습니다 [대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 였 - ending of the past tense (refer to 161) 습니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

2) ㅁ니다 [mnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense)

for example:

저는 영국사람 입니다.*

[chonun yong-guksaramimnida]

I an Englishman am

I am an Englishman.

explanation:

* 영국사람 + 이 + ㅁ니다 [영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㅁ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

영국사람 입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

요 [yo]

This final ending is used in spoken language when a person speaks with a sense of intimacy.

for example:

그는 나의 동무 요.*

[kunun naui tongmuyo]

he my friend is

He is my friend.

explanation:

* 동무 + 요 (동무 - noun 요 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

○ 조선은 하나이다.*

[chosonun hanaida]

Korea one is

Korea is one.

explanation:

* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나 - numeral 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the noun, pronoun or numeral to which the final ending of the verbal form is attached ends in a vowel, the exchanging ending 이 can be omitted.

In the final form 하나이다 the numeral 하나 ends in the vowel ㅏ. Therefore, 하나다 can be used instead of 하나이다.

95 Table of declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니다[sumnida] / ㅁ니다[mnida]	요 [yo]	다 [da]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

96 The declarative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

나는 주체의 조국인
 [nanun chucheui chogugin
 I Juche of the fatherland being
 조선으로 간다*.
 chosonuro kanda]
 Korea to go

I go to Korea, the fatherland of Juche.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 [ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The final form 간다 of the verb 가다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

97 The declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

평양은
[pyongyang-un
Pyongyang

아름답습니다*.
arumdapsumnida]
beautiful

Pyongyang is beautiful.

explanation:

* 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
stem ending

아름답 + 습니다 (습니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 아름답습니다 of the adjective 아름답다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

98 The declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

저는 학생대표입니다*.
[chonun haksaeŋdaepyoimnida]
I a student delegate am

I am a student delegate.

explanation:

* 학생대표 + 이 + ㅂ니다 [학생대표 - noun 이 - exchanging ending
ㅂ니다 - most deferential form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

학생대표입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

The final form 학생대표입니다 of the verbal form of the noun 학생대표 is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

LESSON 6

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

99 The interrogative pronouns are divided as follows:

1. The interrogative pronoun indicating a person

1) 누구 [nugu] who

누구 is substantively used.

for example:

당신은	누구입니까*?
[tangsinun	nuguimnigga]
you	who are?

Who are you?

explanation:

* 누구 + 이 + ㅂ니까 [누구 - interrogative pronoun 이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 106)]
누구입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

2) 아무 [amu] anyone; any

아무 "anyone" is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:

○ 아무도*1	그것을	모름니까*2?	Does nobody know it?
[amudo	kugosul	morumnigga]	
anyone also	it	not knows?	

explanation:

*1 아무 + 도 [아무 - interrogative pronoun 도 - auxiliary ending (refer to 185)]

*² 모르 + 다 [moru da] not know
 stem ending

모르 + ㅂ니까 [ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb(refer to '102)]

모릅니까(after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㅂ)

○ 아무 사람도* 그것을	Does nobody know it?
[amu saramdo kugosul	
any man also it	
모릅니까?	
morumnigga]	
not knows?	

explanation:

* 아무 사람 + 도

(아무—interrogative pronoun 사람—noun 도—auxiliary ending)

The adjectively used interrogative pronoun 아무 lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

2. the interrogative pronoun indicating a thing

무엇 [muot] what

무엇 is substantively used.

for example:

이것은 무엇입니까*?	What is this?
[igosun muosimnigga]	
this what is?	

explanation:

* 무엇 + 이 + ㅂ니까 (무엇—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending ㅂ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

무엇입니까(after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

3. The interrogative pronoun indicating quantity

1) 얼마 [olma] how much, how many

얼마 is substantively used.

for example:

그것은	얼마입니까*?	How much is it?
[kugosun	olma imnigga]	
it	how much is?	

explanation:

- * 얼마 + 이 + ㅁ니까 (얼마—*interrogative pronoun 이*—*exchanging ending ㅁ니까*—*most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)
얼마입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

2) 몇 [myot] how many

몇 is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:

- | | | |
|---------|---------------|---------------------|
| ○ 이것은 | 몇입니까 *? | How many are there? |
| [igosun | myochimnigga] | |
| this | how many is? | |

explanation:

- * 몇 + 이 + ㅁ니까 (몇—*interrogative pronoun 이*—*exchanging ending ㅁ니까*—*most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)
몇입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

- | | | |
|----------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| ○ 그들은 | 몇사람입니까 *? | How many people are they? |
| [kudurun | myot saramimnigga] | |
| they | how many man are? | |

explanation:

- * 몇 + 사람 + 이 + ㅁ니까
(몇—*interrogative pronoun 사람*—*noun 이*—*exchanging ending ㅁ니까*—*most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)
몇사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

4. The interrogative pronoun indicating a place

어디 [odi] which place

어디 is substantively used.

for example:

당신은 어디에 *1 갑니까 *2? | Where are you going?
 [tangsinun odie kamnigga]
 you , which place to go?

explanation:

*1 어디 + 에(어디-interrogative pronoun 에-dative ending

*2 가 + 다 [ka da] go

가 + ㅂ니까 (ㅂ니까-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

5. The interrogative pronoun indicating time

언제 [onje] which time
 언제 is substantively used.

for example:

그는 언제* 옵니까? | When is he coming?
 [kunun onje omnigga]
 he at which time comes?

explanation:

* the interrogative pronoun 언제 is in the dative form. Accordingly the dative ending 에 of the interrogative pronoun 언제 was omitted. This is called the absolute case.

100 Table of interrogative pronouns

person	누구 [nugu]	who
	아무 [amu]	anyone; any
thing	무엇 [muot]	what
quantity	얼마 [olma]	how much, how many
	몇 [myot]	how many
place	어디 [odi]	which place
time	언제 [onje]	which time

THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

101 The declension of the interrogative pronoun is the same as with a noun(*refer to 26, 27*).

THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

102 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

습니까 [sumnigga]/ ㅁ니까[mnigga]

1) 습니까[sumnigga] (*when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant*)

for example:

그는	사과를	먹 습니까*?	Is he eating the apple?
[kunun	sagwarul	moksumnigga]	
he	the apple	eats?	

explanation:

* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
 stem ending

먹 + 습니까 (습니까—*most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb*)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

2) ㅁ니까 [mnigga] (*when the stem of the verb ends in vowel*)

for example:

그는	편지를	씁니까*?	Is he writing the letter?
[kunun	pyonjirul	ssumnigga]	
he	the letter	writes?	

explanation:

* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write
 stem ending

쓰 + ㅅ니다 (ㅅ니다—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

습니까 (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound ㅅ)

The stem 쓰 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel—.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

나 [na]

This final ending is used when a man asks something with friendly feeling.

for example:

그는	자나*?
[kunun	chana]
he	sleeps?

Is he asleep?

explanation:

* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
 stem ending

자 + 나 (나—middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:

느냐 [nunya]

for example:

동무야	알겠느냐*!
[tongmuya	algennunya]
comrade!	know?

Comrade! Do you know!

explanation:

* 알 + 다 [al da] know
 stem ending

알 + 겠 + 느냐 (겠—ending of the future tense 느냐—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 겠 expresses here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.

103 Table of interrogative final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니까 [sumnigga] / 뵈니까 [mnigga]	나 [na]	느냐 [nunya]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other interrogative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE ADJECTIVE

104 There are the following interrogative final endings to the adjective:

1. The most deferential form:

습니까 [sumnigga] / 뵈니까 [mnigga]

1) 습니까 [sumnigga] (*when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant*)

for example:

당신의	마음은	즐겁	습니까* ?	Is your heart merry?
[tangsinui	maumun	chulgop	sumnigga]	
your	heart	merry?		

explanation:

* 즐겁 + 다 [julgop da] merry
stem ending

즐겁 + 습니까 (습니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem *즐겁* of the adjective *즐겁다* ends in the consonant *ㅂ*.

2) *ㅂ*니까 [mnigga] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

하늘은	푸릅니까?		Is the sky blue?
[hanurun	purumnigga]		
the sky	blue?		

explanation:

* 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue
stem ending

푸르 + ㅂ니까 (ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

푸릅니까 (after contracting the syllable *르* and the sound *ㅂ*)

The stem *푸르* of the verb *푸르다* ends in the vowel-.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

ㄴ가 [nga]

for example:

날씨가	나쁜가*?		Is the weather bad?
[nalssiga	nabbun·ga]		
the weather	bad?		

explanation:

* 나쁘 + 다 [nabbu da] bad
stem ending

나쁘 + ㄴ가 (ㄴ가 - middle interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

나쁜가 (after contracting the syllable *ㅂ* and the sound *ㄴ*)

3. The low form of courtesy:

1) *냐* [nya]

This final ending is used for the adjective without any ending of the tense.

for example:

너는	기쁘냐*?		Are you glad?
[nonun	kibbunya]		
you	glad?		

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다 [kibbu da] glad
 stem ending

기쁘 + 냐 (냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

2) 느냐 [nunya]

This final ending is used for the adjective with the ending of the tense.

for example:

너는	얼마나	기쁘겠	느냐*?	How glad are you?
[nonun	olmana	kibbugennunya]		
you	how	glad		

explanation:

* 기쁘 + 다 [kibbu da] glad
 stem ending

기쁘 + 겠 + 느냐 (겠 - ending of the future tense 느냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The ending of the future tense 겠 has here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.

105 Table of interrogative final endings of the adjective

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니까 / [sumnigga] 뉘니까 [mnigga]	ㄴ가 [nga]	1) 냐 [nya] 2) 느냐 [nunya]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used.

For the other interrogative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.

THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

106 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

1. The most deferential form:

습니까 [sumnigga] / ㅂ니까 [mnigga]

- 1) 습니까 [sumnigga] (*when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense*)

for example:

그는	대학생이	였	습니까* ?	Was he a student?
[kunun	taehaksaeng	.iyossumnigga]		
he	a student	was	?	

explanation:

* 대학생 + 이 + 였 + 습니까 (대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 였 - ending of the past tense 습니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

- 2) ㅂ니까 [mnigga] (*when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense*)

for example:

그는	영국사람	입니까* ?	Is he an Englishman?
[kunun	yong-guksaram	imnigga]	
he	an Englishman	is	?

explanation:

* 영국사람 + 이 + ㅂ니까 (영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

영국사람 ㅂ니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

ㄴ가 [nga]

for example:

이	꽃은	조선의	진달래인가*?		Is this flower
[i	ggochun	chosonui	chindallae in-ga]		the Korean
this flower	Korea of	the azalia is?		azalia?	

explanation:

* 진달래 + 이 + ㄴ가 (진달래 - noun 이 - exchanging ending
ㄴ가 - middle interrogative form of the final ending
of the verbal form)

진달래인가 (after contracting the syllabe 이 and the sound ㄴ)

3. The low form of courtesy:

1) 냐 [nya]

This final ending is used for the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral without any ending of the tense.

for example:

너는	누구 냐*?		Who are you?
[nonun	nugunya]		
you	who are?		

explanation:

* 누구 + 냐 (누구 - interrogative pronoun 냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

2) 느냐 [nunya]

This final ending is used for the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral with the ending of the tense.

for example:

그것이	언제였	느냐*?		When was it?
[kugosi	onjeyonnunya]			
it	which time was?			

explanation:

* 언제 + 였 + 느냐 (언제 - interrogative pronoun 였 - ending of the past tense 느냐 - low interrogative form of

the final ending of the verbal form)

107 Table of interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
습니까 / 비니까 [sumnigga] / [mnigga]	ㄴ가 [n·ga]	1) 냐 [nya] 2) 느냐 [nunya]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.

For the other interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

108 The interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

당신은	어디에	갑니까*?
[tangsinun]	odie	kamnigga]
you	which place to	go ?

Where are you going?

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 비니까 (비니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

The final form 갑니까 in the sentence is the predicate.

and it lies at the end of the sentence.

109 The interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

당신의	마음은	즐겁습니까* ?	Is your heart merry?
[tangsinui	maumun	chulgopsumnigga]	
Your	heart	merry ?	

explanation:

* 즐겁 + 다 [julgap da] merry
stem ending

즐겁 + 습니까 (습니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 즐겁습니까 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

110 The interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

그는	누구입니까* ?	Who is he?
[kunun	nuguimnigga]	
he	who is ?	

explanation:

* 누구 + 이 + ㅁ니까 (누구—noun 이—exchanging ending
ㅁ니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

누구입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

The interrogative final form 누구입니까 of the verbal form of the noun 누구 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of sentence.

III The position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence is as follows:

1. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the subject, it usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

누가*	옵니까?		Who comes?
[nuga	omnigga]		
who	comes?		

explanation:

* 누 + 가 (가 - *nominative ending*)

2. The final form of the verbal form of the interrogative pronoun is formed by attaching the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral to the interrogative pronoun.

This final form in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

너는	누구나*?		Who are you?
[nonun	nugunya]		
you	who are?		

explanation:

* 누구 + 냐 (누구 - *interrogative pronoun* 냐 - *low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)

3. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the object, it lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

당신은	무엇을*	합니까?		What do you do?
[tangsinun	muosul	hamnigga]		
you	what	do?		

explanation:

* 무엇 + 을 (무엇 - *interrogative pronoun* 을 - *accusative ending*)

The object 무엇을 lies between the subject 당신은 and the predicate 합니까.

4. When the interrogative pronoun is used as an attribute, it lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

그들은	몇	사람	입니까* ?		How many people are they ?
[kudurun	myot	saramimnigga]			
they	how many	man	are?		

explanation:

* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + ㅁ니까 (몇 - *interrogative pronoun* 사람 - *noun* 이 - *exchanging ending* ㅁ니까 - *most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)
 몇사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

- 112 The form of address usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

박동무,	나는	정거장에	가오.*		Comrade Pak, I am going to the station.
[pakdongmu	nanun	chong-gojang.e	kao]		
comrade Pak	I	the station	to go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending
 가 + 오 오 - *middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

- 113 An interjection usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

아*,	나의	고향	이여 !		Ah, my native place !
[a	nai	kohyang.iyo]			
ah	my	native	place !		

explanation:

* The interjection 아 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

LESSON 7

THE NUMERALS

114 The Korean language has a double series of numerals:

1. The series of pure Korean numbers
2. The series of numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters

115 The cardinal numbers:

number	Korean				English
	The pure Korean cardinal numbers		The cardinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters		
	substantival	adjectival	substantival, adjectival		
1	하나 [hana]	한 [han]	일 [il]		one
2	둘 [tul]	두 [tu]	이 [i]		two
3	셋 [set]	세 [se]	삼 [sam]		three
4	넷 [net]	네 [ne]	사 [sa]		four
5	다섯 [tasot]	다섯 [tasot]	오 [o]		five
6	여섯 [yosot]	여섯 [yosot]	륙 [ryuk]		six
7	일곱 [ilgop]	일곱 [ilgop]	칠 [chil]		seven
8	여덟 [yodol]	여덟 [yodol]	팔 [pal]		eight
9	아홉 [ahop]	아홉 [ahop]	구 [ku]		nine
10	열 [yol]	열 [yol]	십 [sip]		ten
11	열하나 [yolhana]	열한 [yolhan]	십일 [sibil]		eleven
12	열둘 [yoldul]	열두 [yoldu]	십이 [sibi]		twelve
13	열셋 [yolset]	열세 [yolse]	십삼 [sipsam]		thirteen
14	열넷 [yolnet]	열네 [yolne]	십사 [sipsa]		fourteen

15	열다섯 [yoldasot]	열다섯 [yoldasot]	십오 [sibo]	fifteen
16	열여섯 [yoryosot]	열여섯 [yoryosot]	십륙 [simryuk]	sixteen
17	열일곱 [yorilgop]	열일곱 [yorilgop]	십칠 [sipchil]	seventeen
18	열여덟 [yoryodol]	열여덟 [yoryodol]	십팔 [sippal]	eighteen
19	열아홉 [yolahop]	열아홉 [yolahop]	십구 [sipgu]	nineteen
20	스물 [sumul]	스무 [sumu]	이십 [isip]	twenty
21	스물하나 [sumulhana]	스물한 [sumulhan]	이십일 [isibil]	twenty one
22	스물둘 [sumuldul]	스물두 [sumuldu]	이십이 [isibi]	twenty two
30	서른 [sorun]	서른 [sorun]	삼십 [samsip]	thirty
40	마흔 [mahun]	마흔 [mahun]	사십 [sasip]	forty
50	쉰 [swin]	쉰 [swin]	오십 [osip]	fifty
60	예순 [yesun]	예순 [yesun]	륙십 [ryuksip]	sixty
70	일흔 [ilhun]	일흔 [ilhun]	칠십 [chilsip]	seventy
80	여든 [yodun]	여든 [yodun]	팔십 [palsip]	eighty
90	아흔 [ahun]	아흔 [ahun]	구십 [kusip]	ninety
100			백 [paek]	hundred
101	백하나 [paek·hana]	백한 [paek·han]	백일 [paegil]	a hundred and one
102	백둘 [paekdul]	백두 [paekdu]	백이 [paegi]	a hundred and two
200			이백 [ibaek]	two hundred
300			삼백 [sambaek]	three hundred
400			사백 [sabaek]	four hundred
500			오백 [obaek]	five hundred
600			륙백 [ryukbaek]	six hundred
700			칠백 [chilbaek]	seven hundred
800			팔백 [palbaek]	eight hundred
900			구백 [kubaek]	nine hundred

1, 000			천 [chon]	thousand
1, 001	천하나 [chonhana]	천한 [chonhan]	천일 [chonil]	a thousand and one
10, 000			만 [man]	ten thousand
100, 000			십만 [simman]	hundred thousand
1, 000, 000			백만 [paengman]	one million
10, 000, 000			천만 [chonman]	ten million
100, 000, 000			억 [ok]	hundred million

It is advisable to read the numeral in the pure Korean numbers as much as possible.

for example:

19 열아홉 [yolahop] nineteen

111 백열하나 [paegyolhana] a hundred and eleven

1007 천일곱 [chonilgop] a thousand and seven

The declension of the numeral is just the same as that of the noun (*refer to 26, 27*).

116 The ordinal numbers:

Korean		English
The pure Korean ordinal numbers	The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters	
첫번째 *1 [chotbonjjae], 첫째 [chotjjae]	제일 *2 [cheil]	first

두번째 [tubonjjae],	제이 [chei]	second
둘째 [tuljjae]		
세번째 [sebonjjae],	제삼 [chesam]	third
셋째 [setjjae]		
네번째 [nebonjjae],	제사 [chesa]	fourth
넷째 [netjjae]		
다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae]	제오 [cheo]	fifth
여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]	제륙 [cheryuk]	sixth
일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae]	제칠 [chechil]	seventh
여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]	제팔 [chepal]	eighth
아홉(번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]	제구 [chegu]	ninth
열(번)째 [yol(bon)jjae]	제십 [chesip]	tenth
열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]	제십일 [chesibil]	eleventh
열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae]	제십이 [chesibi]	twelfth
스무(번)째 [sumu(bon)jjae]	제이십 [cheisip]	twentieth
서른(번)째 [sorun(bon)jjae]	제삼십 [chesamsip]	thirtieth
마흔(번)째 [mahun(bon)jjae]	제사십 [chesasip]	fortieth
쉰(번)째 [swin(bon)jjae]	제오십 [cheosip]	fiftieth
예순(번)째 [yesun(bon)jjae]	제륙십 [cheryuksip]	sixtieth
일흔(번)째 [ilhun(bon)jjae]	제칠십 [chechilsip]	seventieth
여든(번)째 [yodun(bon)jjae]	제팔십 [chepalsip]	eightieth
아흔(번)째 [ahun(bon)jjae]	제구십 [chegusip]	ninetieth
백(번)째 [paek(bon)jjae]	제일백 [cheilbaek]	hundredth

explanation:

*₁ ...째 [...jjae] is a suffix. It means "order" and is attached to the pure Korean cardinal number in order to form the corresponding pure Korean ordinal number.

*₂ 제 [che] is a prefix. It means "order" and is put before the cardinal number in order to form the corresponding ordinal number.

THE COUNTING WORD

117 The numbers are connected to a counting word, and then the counting word lies after the main word. These counting words are different according to the objects to be counted. They have the meaning of "piece" in English.

The counting words are:

- ① 개 [gae] "piece" (for objects)

for example:

의자	두 개	two chairs
[uija	tugae]	
chair	two pieces	

- ② 명 [myong] "person" (for persons)

for example:

대학생	두 명	two students
[taehaksaeng	tumyong]	
student	two persons	

- ③ 분 [bun] "person" (for expressing respect)

for example:

선생	두 분	two teachers
[sonsaeng	tubun]	
teacher two	persons	

- ④ 마리 [mari] "animal" (for animals)

for example:

소	두 마리	two oxen
[so	tumari]	
ox	two animals	

⑤ 권 [gwon] "book", "volume" (for books)

for example:

사전 두권

[sajon tugwon]

dictionary two books

two dictionaries

⑥ 장 [jang] "sheet" (for papers, roofing-tiles or bricks)

for example:

종이 두장

[jong-i tujang]

paper two sheets

two sheets of paper

⑦ 벌 [bol] "suit" (for clothes)

for example:

옷 두벌

[ot tubol]

clothes two suits

two suits of clothes

⑧ 대 [dae] "piece" (for machines, cars or airplanes)

for example:

비행기 두대

[pihaeng-gi tudaе]

airplane two pieces

two airplanes

⑨ 척 [chok] "ship" (for ships)

for example:

배 세척

[pae sechok]

ship three ships

three ships

⑩ 채 [chae] "house" (for houses)

for example:

집 한채		one house
[chip hanchae]		
house one house		

⑪ 자루 [jaru] "piece" (for pencils or rifles)

for example:

연필 네자루		four pencils
[yonpil nejaru]		
pencil four pieces		

⑫ 켄레 [kolle] "pair" (for shoes)

for example:

신 한켄레		a pair of shoes
[sin hankolle]		
shoes one pair		

⑬ 문 [mun] "gun" (for guns)

for example:

대포 열문		ten guns
[taepo yolmun]		
gun ten guns		

⑭ 그루 [guru] "tree" (for trees)

for example:

나무 두그루		two trees
[namu tuguru]		
tree two trees		

THE INCOMPLETE NOUN

118 The Korean language has the incomplete noun. An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning and can express it only when another word lies before it as an attribute.

for example:

- 선생 두분*
[sonsaeng tubun]
teacher two persons | two teachers

explanation:

* The adjectival numeral 두 lies before the incomplete noun 분 as an attribute.

- 우리는 반드시 승리할 것이다.*
[urinun pandusi sungrihalgosida]
we surely win shall | We shall surely win.

explanation:

*승리하 + 다 [sungriha da] win
stem ending

승리하 + 리 + 것 + 이 + 다

[리 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense (refer to 147) 것 -incomplete noun 이 -exchanging ending 다 -low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

승리할 것이다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 리)

- 그가 올수 있다*
[kuga olsu itda]
he come`can | He can come.

explanation:

*오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 리 + 수 있다 (리 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 수 -incomplete noun 있다 -verb)

올수 있 + 다 [(다 -low declarative form of the final ending of the verb) after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 리]

THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

119 There are the following suggestive final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

보시다[psida]

for example:

영 화 를	보시다*	Let us see the film!
[yonghwarul	popsida]	
the film	see let us	

explanation:

* 보 + 다 [po da] watch
stem ending

보 + 보 시 다 (보시다—most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

보 시 다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound ㅂ)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

세[se]

This final ending is used in written language.

for example:

오전에	가세*	Let us go in the morning!
[ojone	kase]	
the morning in	go let us	

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 세 (세—middle suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:

자[ja]

for example:

○ 미제를	남		Let us drive the
[mijerul	nam		
the US imperialists	south		US imperialists
조선에서	몰아내자*!		out of south
josoneso	moranaeja]		Korea!
Korea from	drive out let us		

explanation:

* 몰아내 + 다 [moranae da] drive out
 stem ending

몰아내 + 자 (자 - low suggestive form of the final ending
 of the verb)

○ 여성들의 권리를 옹호하자*!		Let us defend
[nyosongdurui kwollirul onghohaja]		
the women of the right defend let us		women's rights.

explanation:

* 옹호하 + 다 [onghoha da] defend
 stem ending

옹호하 + 자 (자 - low suggestive form of the final ending
 of the verb)

120 Table of suggestive final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
버시다 [psida]	세 [se]	자 [ja]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such suggestive final endings

of the verb which are frequently used.
For the other suggestive final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

THE IMPERATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

121 There are the following imperative final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form :

십시오 [sipsio]

This final ending is used when the speaker holds the person addressed in high esteem.

for example:

빨리 오십시오.*
[bballi osipsio]
quickly come!

Come quickly!

explanation:

*오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오+십시오 (십시오—most deferential imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

시오 [sio]

This final ending is used both in spoken and written Korean.

for example:

어서 앉으시오.*
[oso anjusio]
please sit down!

Please, sit down!

explanation:

* 앉 + 다 [an da] sit down

stem ending

앉+으+시오 (으-link vowel 시오-middle imperative form

of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:

라[ra]

for example:

빨리 오라.*

[bballi ora]

quickly come!

Come quickly!

explanation:

*오 + 다 [o da] come

stem ending

오 + 라 (라-low imperative form of the final end-

ing of the verb)

122 Table of imperative final endings of the verb

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
십시오 [sipsio]	시오 [sio]	라 [ra]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such imperative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other imperative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

123 The suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence

is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

미제를 남조선
[mijerul namjosen
the US imperialists south Korea
에서 몰아내자*
eso moranaeja]
from drive out let us

Let us drive the
US imperialists out
of south Korea!

explanation:

*몰아내+다 [moranae da] drive out
stem ending

몰아내+자 (자 - *low suggestive form of the final ending of the verb*)

The suggestive final form 몰아내자 of the verb 몰아내다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 124 The imperative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

핵무기를 철폐하라* | Abolish nuclear
[haengmugirul cholpehara] | weapons!
the nuclear weapon abolish!

explanation:

* 철폐하+다 [cholpeha da] abolish
stem ending

철폐하+라 (라 - *low imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

The imperative final form 철폐하라 of the verb 철폐하다 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

- 125 The adjectival cardinal number lies before the word

it refers to.

for example:

열 아홉 살

[yolahopsal]

nineteen age

nineteen years old

explanation:

The adjectival cardinal number 열아홉 lies before the word 살 it refers to.

LESSON 8

THE ADVERB

126 According to their meaning or function adverbs in Korean fall into the following categories:

1. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of an action.

These adverbs denote the quality of an action, the manner in which an action is performed or give a quantitative characteristic of an action or a quality. These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify.

for example:

깊이[kipi] deeply

높이[nopi] highly

널리[nolli] widely

반가이[pan·gai] gladly

천천히[chonchoni] slowly

자주[chaju] often

힘껏[himggot] with all

one's strength

가까이[kaggai] near

늘[nul] always

멀리[molli] far

이미[imi] already

2. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of a state.

These adverbs are very closely connected with the ad-

jectives which they modify.

for example:

대단히[taedani] very	좀[chom] a little
아주[aju] very	약간[yakgan] a little
상당히[sangdang.i] fairly	꽤[ggae] fairly
거의[koui] nearly	이리[iri] so; thus

6.

3. Adverbs which are related to the sentence as a whole.

These adverbs are very closely connected with sentences as a whole.

These adverbs denote such modality as conviction, assumption, surmise, doubt and will.

127

for example:

물론[mullon] of course	만일[manil] if, when
결코[kyolko] never	비록[pirok] although
정말[chongmal] indeed	도대체[todaeche] on earth
사실[sasil] really	응당[ungdang] naturally
만약[manyak] if, when	

1.

4. Adverbs which include words expressing both onomatopoeic and mimetic words

These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify. Besides, they are in close relation to the nouns and are used as the attribute or predicate in sentences.

2.

for example:

쿵[kung] bang	꽁[kwang] bounce
꼬끼오[ggoggio]	하하[haha] ha ha
cock-a-doodle-doo	몽게몽게[munggemung.ge] densely

5. Connecting adverbs

These adverbs connect some parts of a sentence.

for example :

및[mit] and 또한[ddohan] also
겸[kyom] and concurrently

6. Adverbs of negation

These adverbs lie mainly before verbs the meaning of which they deny.

아니[ani] / 안[an] not (negation without condition and cause)

못[mot] not (negation with condition and cause)

127 Adverbs have diverse lexical meaning and, besides, differ from each other in their structure. Some of them are single words whereas others are derivatives.

1. Single adverb:

for example:

잘[chal] good; often 몸소[momso] personally
매우[maeu] very

2. Derivatives:

These are formed by attaching 이[i] or 히[hi] to the root of the adjective.

1) By attaching the suffix 이[i]

for example:

깊이[kipi] deeply

explanation:

깊 + 다 [kip da] deep
root ending
깊 + 이 (이-suffix)

The adverb **깊이** is formed by attaching the suffix **이** to the root **깊** of the adjective **깊다**.

2) By attaching the suffix **히**[hi]

for example:

용감히 [yong·gami] bravely

explanation:

용감 + 하 + 다[yong·gam ha da] brave

root suffix ending

용감 + 히 (**히**-*suffix*)

The adverb **용감히** is formed by attaching the suffix **히** to the root **용감** of the adjective **용감하다**.

THE CONNECTING FORM OF THE VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

128 The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form, the ending of which is used as a conjunction.

The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching the connecting ending to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the noun, pronoun or numeral. The following are the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

129 1. The coordinative connecting endings:

The coordinative connecting endings connect grammatically equivalent units.

The coordinative connecting endings are divided into three kinds:

130 1) The copulative connecting endings:

The copulative connecting endings connect equal units.

(1) 고[go]

This connecting ending is used in order to express the simple linking and the linking of chronological order.

for example:

○ 먹 고* ¹ 입는* ² . 문제		the question of food
[mog-go imnun munje]		and clothes
eating and dressing question		

explanation:

*₁ 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending

먹 + 고(고-copulative connecting ending)

*₂ 입 + 다 [ip da] dress
stem ending

입 + 는 [는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense(refer to 147)]

○ 조선사람은 슬기롭고* ¹		The Koreans are a
[chosonsaramun sulgiropgo]		wise and brave nation.
the Korean wise and		
용감한* ² 민족이다.		
yong.gamhan minjogida]		
brave nation is		

explanation:

*₁ 슬기롭 + 다 [sulgirop da] wise
stem ending

슬기롭 + 고(고-copulative connecting ending)

*₂ 용감하 + 다 [yong.gamha da] brave
stem ending

용감하 + ㄴ(ㄴ-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense(refer to 149))

용감한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 맑 고* ¹ 푸른* ² 하늘	the clear, blue sky
[malgo purun hanul]	
clear and blue sky	

explanation:

*₁ 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear
stem ending

맑 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

*₂ 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue
stem ending

푸르 + ㄴ (ㄴ-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

푸른 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 비료는 쌀이 고*	The fertilizer is
[piryonun ssarigo]	rice, and the rice is
the fertilizer rice is and	namely communism.
쌀은 곧 공산주의다.	
ssarun kot kongsanju·uida]	
rice namely communism is	

explanation:

*쌀+이+고 (쌀-noun 이-exchanging ending 고-copulative connecting ending)

(2) 며[myo], 면서[myonso]

These connecting endings are used in order to express a simple link.

for example:

○ 소년단원들이	Children's Union mem-
[sonyon danwonduri]	bers march on the stre-
Children's Union members	et, singing a song.
노래를 부르며*	
noraerul purumyo	
a song sing and	

거리 를 행진 한다.
 korirul haengjinhanda]
 street march

explanation:

* 부르 + 다 [puru da] sing
 stem ending
 부르 + 며 (며-copulative connecting ending)

○ 그는 시인이며* 작곡가이다. | He is a poet
 [kunun si·inimyo chakgokgaida] | and composer.
 he a poet and composer is

explanation:

* 시인+이+며(시인-noun 이-exchanging ending
 며-copulative connecting ending)

○ 로동자이면서*
 [rodongjaimyonso
 a worker is and
 공장 대학생인
 kongjangdaehaksaeng·in
 concurrently a university-
 level factory
 김동무
 kimdongmu]
 college student being
 Kim comrade

Comrade Kim, a wor-
 ker and concurrently a
 student at a university-
 level factory college

explanation:

* 로동자+이+면서(로동자-noun 이-exchanging ending
 면서-copulative connecting ending)

131 2) The adversative connecting endings:

The adversative connecting endings are used to connect two adversative units.

(1) 지만[jiman]

for example:

우리는	전쟁을	바라지	We don't want
[urinun	chonjaeng·ul	paraji	the war, but
we	the war	want	never fear it.

anchiman kyolko chonjaeng-ul
 not but surely the war
 turyowohaji annunda]
 fear not

explanation:

*₁ 바라 + 다 [para da] want
stem ending

바라 + 지 않다 [지 - connecting ending of negation (refer to
139) 않다 - verb]

바라 + 지 않 + 지만 (지만 - adversative connecting ending)

*₂ 두려워하 + 다 [turyowoha da] fear
stem ending

두려워하 + 지 않다 (지 - connecting ending of negation
않다 - verb)

두려워하 + 지 않 + 는다 (는다 - low declarative form of the
final ending of the verb)

(2) L 데 [nde]

L 데 denotes the present tense.

This connecting ending is used in the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral without ending of the tense and in the adjective without ending of the tense.

for example

그는 로동자인데*
 [kunun rodongjainde
 he a worker is but
 공장
 kongjang
 a university-level factory
 대학생이다.
 daehaksaengida]
 college student is

He is a worker, but
 a student at a uni-
 versity-level factory
 college.

explanation:

* 로동자 + 이 + L 데 (로동자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending L 데

-adversative connecting ending)

로동자인데 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

132 3) The disjunctive connecting ending:

(1) 나[na], 든[dun]

These connecting endings are used in pairs, but they can also be used alone.

for example:

눈이	오나*	비가	오나*
[nuni	ona	piga	ona
snow	comes or	rain	comes or
언제나	초소를	지키는	우리
onjena	chosorul	chikinun	uri
always	the post	defending	our

the soldiers of our People's Army who always defend the post whether it snows or rains

인민군	군인들
inmin-gun	gunindul]
People's	Army soldiers

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 나 (나-disjunctive connecting ending)

든[dun] can be used instead of 나[na].

for example:

눈이	오든	비가	오든
[nuni	odun	piga	odun
snow	comes or	rain	comes or

whether it snows or rains

(2) 든지[dunji]

This connecting ending is used in pairs, but it can also be used alone.

for example:

내가	가든지* ₁	네가
[naega	kadunji	nega
I	go or	you
가든지* ₁	하여야	한다.* ₂
kadunji	hayoya	handa]
go or	must	

I or you must go.

explanation:

*₁ 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 든지(든지 - *disjunctive connecting ending*)

*₂ 하 + 다 [ha da] do
stem ending

하 + 여야 하다 [여야 - *connecting ending of condition* (refer to 134) 하다 - *verb*]

하 + 여야 하 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

하여야 한다 - (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

133 2. The subordinate connecting endings:

The subordinate connecting endings are divided as follows:

134 1) The connecting endings of condition:

These endings connect subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the condition for the latter.

(1) 면 [myon]

for example:

래일	날씨가	좋으면* ₁
[raeil	nalssiga	choumyon
tomorrow	the weather	good when

When the weather is fine tomorrow, we shall start.

우리는	출발하겠	다.* ₂
urinun	chulbalhagetda]	
we	start shall	

explanation:

*₁ 좋 + 다 [chota] good

stem ending

좋 + 으 + 면 (으—*link vowel* 면—*connecting ending of condition*)

*₂ 출발하 + 다 [chulbalha da] start

stem ending

출발하 + 겠 + 다 (겠—*ending of the future tense* 다—*low declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

(2) 아야 [aya] / 어야 [oya] / 여야 [yoya]

These endings express indispensable condition.

아야 [aya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅏ [a], ㅑ [ya] or ㅓ [o] in its last syllable.

for example:

나가 + 다 [naga da] go out

stem ending

나가 + 아야 (아야—*connecting ending of condition*)

나가야 (after contracting the syllables 가 [ga] and 아 [a])

어야 [oya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅗ [o], ㅛ [yo], ㅜ [u], ㅠ [u] or ㅣ [i] in its last syllable.

for example:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat

stem ending

먹 + 어야 (어야—*connecting ending of condition*)

여야 [yoya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel ㅣ [i], ㅞ [ae], ㅟ [e], ㅠ [oe], ㅡ [wi], ㅢ [ui] or the syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study

stem ending

공부하+여야 (여야—connecting ending of condition)

for example:

너	는	열	심	히	공	부	하	여	야*
[nonun	yolsimi	kongbuhayoya							
you	hard	only	when	study					
시	험	에	합	격	할	수	있	다	.
sihome	hapgyokalsu	itda]							
to exam	pass	can							

Only when you study hard can you pass the exam.

explanation:

* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
 stem ending
 공부하 + 여야(여야—connecting ending of condition)

135 2) The connecting endings of cause:

The connecting endings of cause connect the subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the cause for the latter.

(1) 므로[muro]

for example:

비	가	오	므	로*	나는			
[piga	omuro	nanun						
the rain	comes	because	I					
우	산	을	가	지	고	간	다	.
usanul	kajigo	kanda]						
the umbrella	take							

Because it rains, I take my umbrella.

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
 stem ending
 오 + 므로(므로—connecting ending of cause)

(2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga]

These connecting endings mainly express the reason.

for example:

날씨가 몹시
 [nalssiga mopssi
 the weather very
 추우니* 건강에
 chu·uni kon·gang·e
 cold because health to
 주의하라.
 chu·uihara]
 attention pay!

Look after your
 health because it is
 very cold!

explanation:

* 춥 + 다 [chup da] cold
 stem ending

추 + 우 + 니 [(니-connecting ending of cause) af-
 ter exchanging the sound ㅅ for the syllable 우 (re-
 fer to 196)]

니까 [nigga] can be used instead of 니 [ni].

for example:

추우니까 [chu·unigga] cold because

explanation:

춥 + 다 [chup da] cold
 stem ending

추 + 우 + 니까 [(니까-connecting ending of cause) after
 exchanging the sound ㅅ for the syllable 우 (refer to
 196)]

(3) 더니 [doni-]

This connecting ending expresses the reason or cause.

for example:

그는 열심히 공부하더니*
 [kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni
 he diligently studied as
 성공하였다*2.
 song·gonghayotda]
 succeeded

As he studied
 diligently, he succeeded.

explanation:

*₁ 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study

stem ending

공부하 + 더니 (더니 - connecting ending of cause)

*₂ 성공하 + 다 [song.gongha da] succeed

stem ending

성공하 + 였 + 다 (였 - ending of the past tense 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

136 3) The connecting endings of order:

These endings are used to express that some acts occur in order.

(1) 다[da], 다가[daga]

These connecting endings are mainly used with the verb.

They express that an action is discontinued and followed by another action.

for example:

그는 책을
[kunun chaegul
he the book
보다*
poda
to read stopping
나갔다.
nagat·da]
went out

He stopped reading
the book and went out.

explanation:

* 보 + 다 [po da] read

stem ending

보 + 다(다 - connecting ending of order)

다가[daga] can be used instead of 다[da].

for example:

보다가[podaga] to read stopping

explanation:

보 + 다 [po da] read
stem ending

보 + 다가(다가—connecting ending of order)

(2) 사[ja]

This connecting ending is mainly used with the verb. It expresses that an action is followed by another action.

for example:

비 가 오 사*₁
[piga oja
the rain came immediately
어 두 워 졌 다*₂
oduwojyotda]
dark got

Immediately after
it rained, it got dark.

explanation:

*₁ 오 + 다 [oda] come
stem ending

오 + 자(자—connecting ending of order)

*₂ 어둡 + 다 [odup da] dark
stem ending

어두+우+어+지다[(어—connecting ending of method or means 지다—verb which is used as an uxiliary)after exchanging the sound ㅂ for the syllable 우(refer to 196)]

어두+워+지+다[(지—stem 다—ending) after contracting the syllables 우 and 어]

어두+워+지+였+다(였—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

어두워졌다(after contracting the syllables 지 and 였)

137 4) The connecting endings of method or means

아[a] / 어[o] / 여[yo]

아[a] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vow-

el ㅏ [a], ㅑ [ya] or ㅓ [o] in its last syllable.

어 [o] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel ㅏ [o], ㅑ [yo], ㅓ [u], ㅕ [u] or ㅗ [i] in its last syllable.

여 [yo] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel ㅓ [i], ㅕ [ae], ㅖ [e], ㅗ [oe], ㅛ [wi], ㅜ [ui] or the syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

○ 해가	쫓아* ¹	오른다* ²	The sun rises.
[haega	sosa	orunda]	
the sun going up	rises		

explanation:

*₁ 쫓 + 다 [sot da] go up
stem ending

쫓 + 아 (아-connecting ending of method or means)

*₂ 오르 + 다 [oru da] rise
stem ending

오르 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

오 른 다 (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound ㄴ)

○ 반제련대성 ,	for anti-imperialist solidarity, peace and friendship
[panjeryondaessong	
anti-imperialist solidarity	
평화와 친선을 위하여*	
pyonghwawa chinsonul wihayo]	
peace and friendship for	

explanation:

* 위하 + 다 [wiha da] serve
stem ending

위하 + 여 (여-connecting ending of method or means)

(1) 려[ryol], 려고[ryogo], 자고[jago]
These endings express intention.

for example:

하 자 고* 결 심 하 면
[hajago kyolsimhamyon
to do determines if
못 해 낼
motaenael
not able to finish
일 이 없 다.
iri opda]
work there is not

If man is determined, there is nothing which cannot be finished.

explanation:

* 하 + 다 [ha da] do
stem ending
하 + 자고(자고-connecting ending of aim or intention)

(2) 러(ro)

This ending expresses purpose.

for example:

나 는 공 부 하 러*
[nanun kongbuharo
I in order to study
학 교 에 간 다.
hakgyoe kanda]
school to go

I go to school in order to study.

explanation:

* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
stem ending
공부하+러(러-connecting ending of purpose or intention)

139 6) The connecting ending of negation

지[ji]

This ending is connected to **않다** [anta] “not”, **못하다** [motada] “cannot” or **말다** [malda] “not” and is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective.

It expresses an action or situation which is denied.

The word with **지** [ji] becomes a part of the sentence together with **않다** [anta] “not”, **못하다** [motada] “cannot” or **말다** [malda] “not”.

for example:

푸른 하늘을	더럽히지	말라*!	Don't pollute the blue sky!
[purun hanurul	toropiji	malla]	
the blue sky	pollute	not!	

explanation:

* 더럽히 + 다 [toropi da] pollute

stem ending

더럽히 + 지 말다 (지 - connecting ending of negation

말다 - verb which is used as an auxiliary)

더럽히지 말 + 다

stem ending

더럽히지 말 + 라 (라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

140 Table of connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

classification		connecting ending
coordinative	copulative	(1) 고 [go] (2) 며 [myo], 면서 [myonso]
	adversative	(1) 지만 [jiman] (2) 는데 [nde]
	disjunctive	(1) 나 [na], 든 [dun] (2) 든지 [dunji]

subordinative	condition	(1) 면[myon] (2) 아야[aya] / 어야[oya] / 여야[yoya]
	cause	(1) 므로[muro] (2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga] (3) 더니[doni]
	order	(1) 다[da], 다가[daga] (2) 자[ja]
	method or means	아[a] / 어[o] / 여[yo]
	purpose or intention	(1) 려[ryo], 려고[ryogo], 자고[jago] (2) 러[ro]
	negation	지[ji]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are often used.

For the other connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

141 The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the unit to be connected.

for example:

조선사람은	슬기롭고*
[chosonsaramun	sulgiropgo
the Korean	wise and
용감한	민족이다.
yong.gamhan	minjogida]
brave	nation is

The Koreans are a
wise and brave nation.

explanation:

*The connecting form 슬기롭고 of the adjective 슬기롭다 lies before the unit 용감한 to be connected.

142 The position of the adverb

1. The adverb can be an adverbial modifier.

1) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verb.

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verb.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verb, the final predicate.

for example:

그는 빨리*	달린다*2.
[kunun bballi	tallinda]
he quickly	runs

He runs quickly.

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 빨리 lies before the final form 달린다 of

the verb 달리다, the final predicate.

*₂ 달리 + 다 [talli da] run
stem ending

달리 + ㄴ다(ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

달린다(after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound ㄴ)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verb.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verb, the connecting predicate.

for example:

그	가	안	* ¹	오	고	* ²	내	가	온	다		He	does'nt	come		
[kuga	anogo	naega	onda]													
he	not	comes	and	I	come									and	I	come.

explanation:

*¹ The adverb 안 lies before the connecting form 오고 of the verb 오다, the connecting predicate.

*₂ 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending of the verb)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verb.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verb (refer to 147), the attribute.

for example:

잘	* ¹	자	는	* ²	아	이		a	good	sleeping	child
[chal	chanun	ai]									
good	sleeping	child									

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 잘 comes before the attributive form 자는

of the verb 자다, the attribute.

*₂ 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending

자 + 는 [는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

2) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the adjective

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and lies before the final form of the adjective, the final predicate.

for example:

이	방	은	아	주	*	큘	니	다	* ₂	This room is very large.
[i	pang	.un	aju	kum	nida]					
this	room		very	large						

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 comes before the final form 큼니다 of the adjective 크다, the final predicate.

*₂ 크 + 다 [ku da] large
stem ending

크 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

큘니다 (after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound ㅂ)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the adjective, the connecting predicate.

for example:

이	방	은	아	주	*	크	고	* ₂	밝	다	This room is very large and bright.
[i	pang	.un	aju	kugo	pak	da]					
this	room		very	large	and	bright					

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 lies before the connecting form 크고 of the adjective 크다, the connecting predicate.

*₂ 크 + 다 [ku da] large

stem ending

크 + 고 (고 - *copulative connecting ending of the adjective*)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the adjective.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the adjective (*refer to 149*), the attribute.

for example:

아	주*	큰*	방
[aju	kun	pang]	
very	large	room	

a very large room

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 lies before the attributive form 큰 of the adjective 크다, the attribute.

*₂ 크 + 다 [ku da] large

stem ending

크 + ㄴ (ㄴ - *attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)*)

큰 (*after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound ㄴ*)

3) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or

numeral, the final predicate.

for example:

벌써*¹ 가을이다*².
[polsso kaurida]
already autumn is

It is already autumn.

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 벌써 lies before the final form 가을이다 of the verbal form of the noun 가을, the final predicate.

*₂ 가을+이+다(가을-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

- (2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, the connecting predicate.

for example:

벌써*¹ 가을이지만*²
[polsso kaurijiman
already autumn is but
날씨는 따듯하다.
nalssinun ddaddutada]
the weather warm

It is already autumn,
but the weather is
warm.

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 벌써 lies before the connecting form 가을이지만 of the verbal form of the noun 가을, the connecting predicate.

*₂ 가을+이+지만(가을-noun 이-exchanging ending 지만-adversative connecting ending of the verbal form)

- (3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verbal form

of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral (*refer to 154*), the attribute.

for example:

벌써*₁ 대학생 인 *₂
[polsso taehaksaeng .in
already student being
김 동 무
kimdongmu]
Kim comrade

Comrade Kim who is
already a student

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 벌써 comes before the attributive form 대학생인 of the verbal form of the noun 대학생, the attribute.

*₂ 대학생 + 이 + ㄴ (대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending ㄴ - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense) 대학생인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

4) The adverb can be a modifier to another modifier expressed by an adverb or adverbial form.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before another adverb or adverbial form, the adverbial modifier.

for example:

좀*₁ 천천히 걸 어 라*₂!
[chom chonchoni korora]
a little slowly walk!

Walk a little slowly!

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 좀 comes before another adverb 천천히, the adverbial modifier.

*₂ 걸 + 다 walk

걸 + 어라 [(어라 - low imperative form of the final ending of

the verb) after exchanging the sound ㅈ for the sound ㅊ
(refer to 196)]

2. The adverb can be an attribute.

The adverb may lie before the word which it modifies.
for example:

쿵*	소리		bang
[kung	sori]		
bang	crack		

explanation:

* The adverb 쿵 comes before the word 소리 it refers to.

3. The adverb can be a predicate.

The adverb comes at the end of the sentence.

for example:

닭	들은	꼬	끼	오*		Hens cry cock-
[tak	durun	ggog	gio]			a-doodle-doo.
hens		cock-	a-	doodle-	doo	

explanation:

* The adverb 꼬끼오 comes at the end of the sentence.

4. The connecting adverb connects similar units.

for example:

정	치,	경	제	및*	문	화		policy, economy and
[chong	chi	kyong	je	mit	mun	hwa]		culture
policy,		economy	and	culture				

explanation:

* The connecting adverb 및 connects 경제 and 문화 and comes between them.

LESSON 9

THE PRE-NOUN

- 143 The pre-noun is a part of speech which defines the character of the object and is not used as a predicate, but only as an attribute.

for example:

○	온	사회	[on sahoe]	whole society
	pre-noun	noun		

○ 모든 근로자들*[modun kullojadul] all working people
pre-noun noun

explanation:

* 근로자 + 들(근로자-noun 들-plural ending)

144 The pre-nouns are divided into two kinds:

1. The pre-noun which expresses the quantity of the object

for example:

○ 매 사람 [mae saram] each man
pre-noun noun

○ 약 3배 [yak sambae] about three times
pre-noun noun

2. The pre-noun which expresses a property of the object

for example:

○ 사회주의, 공산주의의
[sahoeju·ui kongsanju·uiui
socialism of communism of
새 기원*
sae kiwon]
new era

the new era of social-
ism and communism

explanation:

* 새 기원
pre-noun noun

○ 딴 사람 [ddan saram] another person
pre-noun noun

145 The pre-noun has no ending and is only used as an attribute.

for example:

온 나라 [on nara] whole country
pre-noun noun

explanation:

The pre-noun 온 comes before the noun 나라 as an attribute.

THE INTERJECTION

146 The interjection denotes the emotion and attitude of the speaker.

There are the following interjections:

1. Interjections which express emotions such as joy, sorrow and wonder:

for example:

- 1) joy: 만세! [manse] hurrah!
- 2) sorrow: 오! [o] oh!, 아이고! [aigo] woe!
- 3) wonder: 아! [a] ah!, 오! [o] oh!

2. Interjections which express the demand or will of the speaker.

for example:

- 차[cha] now
- 어서[oso] please

3. Interjections which express the attitude of the person addressed.

for example:

- 응[ung] yes (to a person of the same rank or to an inferior)
- 예[ye] yes (to a superior)

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE VERB

147 The attributive form of the verb is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verb to the stem of the verb:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verb

는[nun]

This ending is an attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs simultaneously with another action or at the time when the person is speaking. for example:

싸우는 * 인민	fighting people
[ssaunun inmin]	
fighting people	

explanation:

*싸우 + 다 [ssau da] fight
stem ending

싸우 + 는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past tense of the verb

ㄴ[n]

This attributive ending is the attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs before another action or before the time when the person is speaking. for example:

○ 우리 나라에	the people's power established in our country
[uri nara.e our country in	
세워진* 인민정권 sewojin inminjong.gwon] established people power	

explanation:

*세우 + 다 [seu da] establish
stem ending

세우 + 어 + 지다 (어-*connecting ending of method or means*
지다-*verb which is used as an auxiliary*)

세워 + 지 + 다 (after contracting the syllables 우 and 어)

세워 + 지 + L (L—attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)

세워진 (after contracting the syllable 지 and the sound L)

○ 이 책은 내가

[i chaegun naega

this book I

어제 읽은 * 책이다.

oje ilgun chaegida]

yesterday read book is

This book is the book
which I read yesterday.

explanation:

* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read

stem ending

읽 + 으 + L (으—link-vowel L—attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)

읽 + 은 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound L)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verb

던 [don]

for example:

이 책은 내가

[i chaegun naega

this book I

어제 읽던*

oje ikdon

yesterday having been read

책이다.

chaegida]

book is

This book is the book
which I was reading
yesterday.

explanation:

* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read

stem ending

읽 + 던 (던—attributive ending of the verb in its past continuous tense)

4. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the verb

ㄹ [l]

for example:

○ 어린이들은 앞날의
 [orinidurun amnarui
 the children the future of
 조국을
 chogugul
 the fatherland
 떠메고나갈 *
 ddomegonagal
 to shoulder and go forward
 우리 혁명의 믿음직한
 uri hyongmyong·ui midumjikan
 our revolution of reliable
 후계자들이다.
 hugyejadurida]
 successors are

The children are the
 reliable successors of
 our revolution who will
 brighten the future of our
 fatherland.

explanation:

* 떠메 + 다 [ddome da] shoulder
 stem ending

떠메 + 고 + 나가다 (고 - copulative connecting ending
 나가다 - verb which is used as an auxiliary)

떠메 + 고 + 나가 + 다
 stem ending

떠메 + 고 + 나가 + ㄹ (ㄹ - attributive ending of the verb in its
 future tense)

떠메고 나갈 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound
 ㄹ)

○ 이 책은 내가
 [i chaegun naega
 this book I
 래일 읽을 * 책이다.
 raeil ilgul chaegida]
 tomorrow to be read book is

This book is the book
 which I shall read to-
 morrow.

explanation:

* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
 stem ending

읽 + 으 + ㄹ (으 - link-vowel)

ㄴ-*attributive ending of the verb in its future tense*)
 읽을 (*after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㄴ*)

148 Table of the attributive endings of the verb

attributive ending of the verb	tense
는[nun]	present
ㄴ[n]	past
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE ADJECTIVE

149 The attributive form of the adjective is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the adjective to the stem of the adjective:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the adjective

L[n]

for example:

○ 오늘 우리 사회주의 조국은
 [onul uri sahoeju·ui jogugun
 today our socialist fatherland
 조선인민의 행복 한*
 chosoninminui haengbokan
 Korean people of happy

Our socialist fatherland is today the happy cradle of the Korean people.

보금자리이다.
pogumjari·ida]
nest is

explanation:

* 행복하 + 다 [haengboka da] happy
stem ending

행복하 + L (L—attributive ending of the adjective in its
present tense)

행복한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound L)

○ 이것은 붉은* 꽃이다. | This is a red flower.
[igosun pulgun ggochida]
this red flower is

explanation:

* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red
stem ending

붉 + 으 + L (으—link-vowel

L—attributive ending of the adjective in its
present tense)

붉은 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound L)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the adjective

던 [don]

for example:

어둡던* 하늘이 맑게
[odupdon hanuri malge
having been dark sky clearly

The sky which was
dark brightens up.

개인다.
kaeinda]
brightens

explanation:

* 어둡 + 다 [odup da] dark
stem ending

어둡 + 던 (던—attributive ending of the adjective in its
past continuous tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the adjective

ㄹ[1]

for example:

이	것	은	클*	나무	이다.	This is a tree that will grow big.
[igosun			kul	namuida]		
this			to grow big	tree is		

explanation:

* 크 + 다 [ku da] big
stem ending

크 + ㄹ(ㄹ-attributive ending of the adjective in its
future tense)

클(after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound ㄹ)

150 Table of the attributive endings of the adjective

attributive ending of the adjective	tense
ㄹ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[1]	future

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF
THE VERBAL FORM OF THE
NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

151 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form which is used as an attribute.

The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun,

pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verbal form to the noun, pronoun or numeral by means of the exchanging ending 이:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

ㄴ[n]

for example:

주 체 의 조 국 인*
[chucheui chogugin
Juche of the fatherland being

Korea, the fatherland
of Juche

조 선
choson]
Korea

explanation:

*조국+이+ㄴ(조국-noun 이-exchanging ending

ㄴ-attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)

조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

던[don]

for example:

지난 날에 조선인민군
[chinannare chosoninmingun
the past in Korean People's Army

Comrade Kim who was a
soldier of the Korean
People's Army

군인이던* 김 동 무
guninidon kimdongmu]
soldier having been Kim comrade

explanation:

*조선인민군 군인 + 이 + 던 (조선인민군 군인 -noun
이 -exchanging ending 던 -attributive ending of the
verbal form in its past continuous tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense
of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral
ㄹ[1]

for example:

나라의	주인공들일*		the new generation
[narai	chuin-gongduril		who will be heroes of
the country of heroes to be			the country
새 세대			
[sae sedae]			
new generation			

explanation:

*주인공 + 들 + 이 + ㄹ (주인공 -noun 들 - plural ending
이 -exchanging ending ㄹ -attributive ending of the
verbal form in its future tense)

주인공들일 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound
ㄹ)

152 Table of the attributive endings of the verbal form of
the noun, pronoun or numeral

attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	tense
ㄹ [n]	present
던 [don]	past continuous
ㄹ [1]	future

THE FORM OF THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

153 This form is a form which is used as an adverbial modifier.

This is formed by attaching one of the following endings of the adverbial modifier to the stem of the verb or adjective:

1. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

게[ge], 도록[dorok]

These endings of the adverbial modifier express the manner or circumstance in which some action or situation occurs.

for example:

<p>○ 아름답게*¹ 피는*² [arumdapge pinun beautifully blooming 목란꽃 mongranggot] magnolia blossom</p>		<p>beautifully blooming magnolia blossom</p>
---	--	---

explanation:

*¹ 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
 stem ending

아름답 + 게 (게 -ending of the adverbial modifier of the
 verb or adjective)

*² 피 + 다 [pi da] bloom
 stem ending

피 + 는 (는 -attributive ending of the verb in its present
 tense)

<p>○ 밤이 깊도록* [pami kipdorok] night deep till</p>		<p>till late at night</p>
--	--	---------------------------

explanation:

* 깊 + 다 [kip da] deep
stem ending

깊+도록(도록-*ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective*)

2. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

듯[dut], 뜻이[dusi]

These endings are used to express comparison in actions or situations.

for example:

그가 말하듯이*
[kuga malhadusi]
he says as

as he says

explanation:

* 말하 + 다 [malha da] say
stem ending

말하+듯이(듯이-*ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective*)

3. The ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

근수록[lsurok]

This ending expresses intensification in comparison.
for example:

붉을수록* 아름다운
[pulgulsurok arumdaun]
red the more beautiful

조선의 진달래
chosonui chindallae]
Korean azalea

The redder, the more beautiful is Korean azalea.

explanation:

* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red
stem ending

붉+으+근수록(으-link-vowel 근수록-*ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective*)

붙을수록 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound
근)

154 Table of the endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective
1. 게 [ge], 도록 [dorok] 2. 듯 [dut], 듯이 [dusi] 3. 르수록 [lsurok]

WORD ORDER

155 The attributive form of the verb comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

싸우는* 인민
[ssaunun inmin]
fighting people

fighting people

explanation:

* 싸우 + 다 [ssau da] fight
stem ending

싸우 + 는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

The attributive form 싸우는 of the verb 싸우다 lies before the word 인민 it refers to.

156 The attributive form of the adjective comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

붉은* 꽃
[pulgun ggot]
red flower

red flower

explanation:

* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red
stem ending

붉+으+ㄴ(으-link-vowel ㄴ-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

붉은 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㄴ)
The attributive form 붉은 of the adjective 붉다 lies before the word 꽃 it refers to.

157 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

로 동 자 발명가인*
[rodongja palmyong·gain
worker inventor being

Comrade Kim, an inventor and worker

김 동무
kimdongmu]
Kim comrade

explanation:

* 발명가+이+ㄴ(이-exchanging ending ㄴ-attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)

발명가인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

The attributive form 발명가인 of the verbal form of the noun 발명가 lies before the word 김동무 it refers to.

158 The form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective comes before the word it modifies.

for example:

아 름 답 게* 피는 진 달 래
[arumdage pinun chindallae]
beautifully blooming azalea

beautifully blooming.
azalea

explanation:

* 아 름 답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
stem ending

아 름 답 + 게 (게-ending of the adverbial modifier of the

verb or adjective)

The form of the adverbial modifier 아름답게 of the adjective 아름답다 lies before the word 피는 it refers to.

159 The pre-noun comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

○ 새* 집		new house
[sae chip]		
new house		

explanation:

* The pre-noun 새 comes before the word 집 it refers to.

○ 단* 둘		only two
[tan dul]		
only two		

explanation:

* The pre-noun 단 comes before the word 둘 it refers to.

160 The interjection depends on no word and mostly comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

오* 평양!		Oh, Pyongyang!
[o pyongyang		Pyongyang is my heart.
oh Pyongyang!]		
평양은		
pyongyang-un		
Pyongyang		
나의 심장..		
[nau simjang]		
my heart		

explanation:

* The interjection 오 comes at the beginning of the sentence.

LESSON 10

THE TENSES

- 161 The tenses in Korean are expressed by the tense ending.
162 The tenses expressed by the tense endings are called the absolute tenses.

The absolute tenses are the present, past and future.

1. The present

The present expresses an action or situation which occurs at the time when the person is speaking.

The present is expressed by the zero tense ending, namely without any tense ending.

for example:

열 차 는 달 린 다 *
[ryolchanun tallinda]
the train runs

The train runs.

explanation:

* 달리 + 다 [talli da] run
stem ending

달리 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

달린다 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound ㄴ)

There is no tense ending in the final form 달린다 of the verb 달리다.

2. The past

The past expresses an action or situation which occurred before the time when the person is speaking.

The past is expressed by the ending of the past tense 았[at]/ 였[ot]/ 었[yot].

았[at] is attached to the stem of a word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the

vowel ㅏ[a], ㅑ[ya] or ㅓ[o] in its last syllable.

았[ot] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the vowel ㅓ[o], ㅕ[yo], ㅗ[u], ㅛ[u] or ㅜ[i] in its last syllable.

였[yot] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word ends in the vowel ㅣ[i], ㅐ[ae], ㅔ[e], ㅚ[oe], ㅞ[wi], ㅟ[ui] or the syllable ㅏ[ha] in its last syllable.

았[at], 았[ot] and 였[yot] come before the ending of the word which is to express the past.

for example:

두	유격대원	이	*2	} Two partisans visited the peasant's cottage.
[tu	yugyokdaewoni			
two	partisans			
농막집을	찾아	왔다	*1	
nongmakjibul	chajawatda]			
the peasant's cottage	visited			

explanation:

*1 찾아오 + 다 [chajao da] visit
stem ending

찾아오+았+다(았-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

찾아왔다(after contracting the syllables 오 and 았)

The ending of the past tense 았 is attached to the stem 오 of the verb 오다.

*2 두 유격대원 + 이
numeral noun nominative ending

Although the plural ending 들 is not attached to 유격대원, the meaning of the plural of 유격대원 is expressed by the numeral 두 which lies before 유격대원.

3. The future expresses the action or situation which will occur after the person speaks.

The future is expressed by the ending of the future tense 겠[get].

겠 [get] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the future.

for example:

우리는 래일 영국으로 [urinun raeil yong·guguro We tomorrow England for 떠나겠습니다*. [ddonagetsumnida] leave shall	We shall leave for England tomorrow.
---	---

explanation:

* 떠나 + 다 [ddona da] start
 stem ending

떠나 + 겠 + 습니다 (겠-ending of the future tense 습니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 겠 is attached to the stem 떠나 of the verb 떠나다.

163 The tenses are also expressed by attributive endings.

These tenses are called the relative tenses.

for example:

○ 그는 열린*1 문을 [kunun yollin munul he the opened door 닫았다*2. [tadatda] shut	He shut the opened door.
--	-----------------------------

explanation:

*1 열리 + 다 [yolli da] be opened
 stem ending

열리 + ㄴ [리-ending of the voice (refer to 176) ㄴ-attributive ending of the verb in its past tense]

열린 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound ㄴ)

*2 닫 + 다 [tat da] shut
 stem ending

달+았+다 (았-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The attributive ending ㄴ of the verb is the past.

And this is anterior to the past 달았다.

○ 그는 래달에
[kunun raedare
he next month in
수행할*¹
suhaenghal
to be carried out
계획을 세웠다*².
gyehoegul sewot.da]
plan worked out

He worked out the plan
which will be carried
out next month.

explanation:

*₁ 수행하 + 다 [suhaengha da] carry out
stem ending

수행하 + ㄴ (ㄴ-attributive ending of the verb in its future tense)

수행할 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

*₂ 세우 + 다 [seu da] work out
stem ending

세우+였+다 (였-ending of the past tense)

세웠다 (after contracting the syllables 우 and 었)

The attributive ending ㄴ of the verb is the future.

And this future is the future in the past 세웠다.

164 We can exactly express complicated relations of time by using tense endings.

1. In order to express the fact that one thing happened in the past and earlier than another thing, the combined form of two endings which express the past is used. Such a combination is made from among the past endings 았[at], 였[ot] and 옹[yot].

for example:

이 집 주인은
 [i chip chuinun
 this house of the owner
 그 유격대원들과
 ku yugyokdaewondulgwa
 those partisans with
 전에 만났었으므로 *1
 chone mannassossumuro
 before had met as
 반갑게 *2 맞이했다 *3
 pan·gapge majihaet da]
 gladly received

As the house owner
 had met those partisans
 before, he received them
 gladly.

explanation:

*1 만나 + 다 [manna da] meet
 stem ending

만나 + 았 + 었 + 으 + 므로 (았-ending of the past tense
 었-ending of the past tense 으-link-vowel 므로-con-
 necting ending of cause)

만났었으므로 (after contracting the syllables 나 and 았)

*2 반갑 + 다 [pangap da] glad
 stem ending

반갑 + 게 (게-ending of the adverbial modifier of the
 verb or adjective)

*3 맞이하 + 다 [majiha da] receive
 stem ending

맞이하 + 었 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense 다-low
 declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

맞이했다 (after contracting the syllables 하 and 었)

2. 았[at], 었[ot] and 였[yot] are linked with ㄹ[l] or 겠[get]
 to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

for example:

○ 그는 평양에
 [kunun pyongyang·e
 he Pyongyang to
 도착하였겠다*.
 tochakayotget da]
 may have arrived

He may have arrived
 at Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 도착하 + 다 [tochaka da] arrive
stem ending

도착하 + 였 + 겠 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense
 겠-ending of the future tense 다-low declarative form
 of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the past tense 였 and the ending of the future tense 겠 are linked to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

○ 그는 평양에
[kunun pyongyang.e
he Pyongyang to
도착하였을것이다*.
tochakayossulgosida]
may have arrived

He may have arrived
at Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 도착하 + 다 [tochaka da] arrive
stem ending

도착하 + 였 + 으 + 겐 (였-ending of the past tense
 으-link-vowel 겐-attributive ending of the verb in
 its future tense)

도착하였을 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the
 sound 겐)

도착하였을 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것-incomplete noun 이-ex-
 changing ending 다-low declarative form of the final
 ending of the verbal form)

The ending of the past tense 였 and the attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 겐 are linked to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

165 The tenses can also be expressed by other methods.

1. The past can also be expressed by the connecting ending which begins with [더 [do].

for example:

그는 열심히 공부하더니*
 [kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni
 he diligently studied as
 성공하였다.
 song·gong·hayotda]
 succeeded

As he had studied dili-
 gently, he succeeded.

explanation:

* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
 stem ending

공부하+더니 (더니-connecting ending of cause)

2. The future can also be expressed by attaching **ㄹ것**[lgot] to the stem of the word concerned.

for example:

그는 래일 올것이다*
 [kunun raeil olgosida]
 he tomorrow come will

He will come tomorrow.

explanation:

오 + 다 [o da] come
 stem ending

오 + ㄹ + ㄱ + ㅅ + 이 + 다 (ㄹ-attributive ending of the verb in its future tense ㅅ-incomplete noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

올것이다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound ㄹ)

166 Table of the tense endings

name \ tense	present	past	future
ending of the tense	zero ending	았[at], 엇[ot], 였[yot]	겠[get]

RESPECT AND COURTESY

167 Respect is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the doer.

Respect is expressed by the ending of respect 시[si].

The ending of respect 시[si] is attached to the predicative word.

for example:

선생님이	가십니다*.
[sonsaengnimi	kasimnida]
the teacher	goes

The teacher goes.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㅂ니다 (시-ending of respect ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

선생님 is the owner of the action.

The speaker expresses respect to 선생님 by the ending of respect 시.

168 Courtesy is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the person addressed.

Courtesy is expressed in three forms, namely, the most deferential, middle and low forms.

for example:

○ 아버지가	가십니다*.
[abojiga	kasimnida]
the father	goes

The father goes.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㅂ니다 (시-ending of respect ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

When a speaker speaks to a superior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb ㅂ니다.

○ 아버지가 가시오*. | The father goes.
[abojiga kasio]
the father goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + 오 (시-ending of respect 오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

When a speaker speaks to a person at the same rank, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

○ 아버지가 가신다*. | The father goes.
[abojiga kasinda]
the father goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시-ending of respect ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

When a speaker speaks to an inferior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the low declarative form of the final ending of the verb ㄴ다.

169 There are two cases in (the relation between) respect and courtesy.

In the first case the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

In the second case the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1. When the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

for example:

아버지는 언제
[abojinun onje
the father when

평양에 가십니까 * ?
pyongyang·e kasimnigga]
Pyongyang to go?

When do you, father,
go to Pyongyang?

explanation :

가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㅂ니까 (시-ending of respect ㅂ니까-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
가십니까 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by the ending of respect 시.

The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed, who is 아버지, by the most deferential interrogative form ㅂ니까 of the final ending of the verb.

In Korean we do not use the personal pronoun such as you when we speak to a respected person. Instead, we use the denomination of his position in the family or society, such as father, mother and Mr.

2. When the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1) The speaker expresses respect for the doer of an action, etc.:

for example:

아버지가	평양에	가신다*.		The father goes to Pyongyang.
[abojiga	pyongyang.e	kasinda]		
the father	Pyongyang to	goes		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시-ending of respect ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The speaker speaks to an inferior. For example, a mother speaks to her child.

2) The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed:

for example:

그	애가	평양에		That child goes to Pyongyang.
[ku	aega	pyongyang.e		
that child	Pyongyang to			

갑니다*.
kamnida]
goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

The speaker speaks to a superior.

For example, a son speaks to his father.

170 There are several words which have the meaning of respect. Such words should be used correctly.

for example:

word	word which has the meaning of respect	English
먹다 [mokda]	잡수시다[chapsusida]	eat
자다 [chada]	주무시다[chumusida]	sleep
있다 [itda]	계시다[kesida]	there is, be
말하다 [malhada]	말씀하시다[malssumhasida]	say
주다 [chuda]	드리다[turida]	give
	올리다[ollida]	give

for example:

○ 아버지가 주무신다* . | The father sleeps.
 [abojiga chumusinda]
 the father sleeps

explanation:

* 주무시 + 다 [jumusi da] sleep
 stem ending

주무시 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by 주무신다.

○ 아이가 잔다* . | The child sleeps.
 [aiga chanda]
 the child sleeps

explanation:

* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
 stem ending

자 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

잔다 (after contracting the syllable 자 and the sound ㄴ)
 The doer of the action 잔다 is the child. Therefore, the speaker does not express respect for the doer of the action.

The word 잔다 which has no meaning of respect is used here.

171 Table of the ending of respect

ending of respect	시 [si]
-------------------	--------

WORD ORDER

172 The ending of the tense comes directly before the final ending.

for example:

○ 나는 조선으로 간다* . | I go to Korea.
 [nanun chosonuro kanda]
 I Korea to go

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)
 The zero ending of the tense lies directly before the final ending ㄴ다.

○ 나는 조선으로 갔다* . | I went to Korea .
 [nanun chosonuro katda]
 I Korea to went

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

가 + 았 + 다 (았-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

갔다 (after contracting the syllables 가 and 았)

The ending of the past tense 았 comes directly before the final ending 다.

○ 나는 조선으로 가겠다* | I will go to Korea.
[nanun chosonuro kageta]
I Korea to go will

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 겠 + 다 (겠-ending of the future tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 겠 comes directly before the final ending 다.

173 The ending of respect comes before the final ending. But when there is a tense ending, the ending of respect comes before the ending of the tense.

for example:

○ 아버지는 공장으로 | The father goes to
[abojinun konjang-uro | the factory.
the father the factory to
가신다*.
kasinda]
goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시-ending of the respect ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The ending of respect 시 comes before the final ending ㄴ다.

○ 아버지는 공장으로
 [abojinun konjang·uro
 the father the factory to
 가셨다*.
 kasyotda]
 went

The father went to
 the factory.

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da]
 stem ending

가 + 시 + 였 + 다 (시-ending of respect 였-ending of
 the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final
 ending of the verb)

가셨다 (after contracting the syllables 시 and 였)

The ending of respect 시 comes before the ending of the
 tense 였.

LESSON 11

THE VOICE

174 The voice is the form of the verb which shows the relation between the action and its agent—the doer, indicating whether the subject of the sentence is the agent or the object of the action expressed by the predicate verb.

There are three voices in Korean—active, passive and causative.

175 1. active voice

The active voice shows that the action is performed by its subject, that the subject is the doer of the action. The active form is expressed by the zero ending.

for example:

그 동무는 글씨를
[ku tongmunun kulssirul
that man the letter

That man writes
the letter well.

잘 쓴다*.
chal ssunda]
well writes

explanation:

* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write
stem ending

쓰 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다- low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

쓴다 (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound ㄴ)

176 2. The passive voice

The passive voice shows that the subject is the recipient—the object of this action.

The passive voice is expressed by the ending of the voice 이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi] or 리[ri].

for example:

그 종이에^{*2}는 글씨가
[ku chong.iēnun kulssiga
on that paper the letter

The letter is well
written on that paper.

잘 쓰인다*1.
chal ssuinda]
well is written

explanation:

*1 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write
stem ending

쓰 + 이 + ㄴ다 (이-ending of the voice of the passive form ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

쓰인다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

The action in which the letter is written is expressed by the passive form 쓰인다 which has the ending of the

passive voice 이

*₂ 종이 + 에 + 는 (종이 - noun 에 - dative ending
 는 - auxiliary ending)

ending of the voice of the passive form	end sound of the stem of the word	example
이 [i]	vowel, ㄹ [r], ㄱ [g], ㅋ [gg], ㅍ [p], ㅌ [t], ㅎ [h]	보이다 [poida] be seen (보다 [poda] see)
히 [hi]	ㅍ [p], ㅌ [t], ㅈ [j], ㄱ [k]	박히다 [pakida] be struck in (박다 [pakda] strike in)
기 [gi]	ㅁ [m], ㅌ [t], ㅌ [t], ㅈ [j], ㅊ [ch], ㅅ [t]	씻기다 [ssitgida] be washed (씻다 [ssitda] wash)
리 [ri]	ㄹ [l], ㄹ [ru]	날리다 [nallida] be flown (날다 [nalda] fly)

remarks:

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of

the passive form which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice of the passive form, please refer to the appendix.

177 3. The causative form

The causative form is expressed by the ending of the voice 이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi] or 리[ri].

for example:

그는 사람들을 잘
[kunun saramdurul chal
he the people well

He's good at making
the people laugh.

웃긴다*.
utginda]
makes laugh

explanation:

* 웃 + 다 [ut da] laugh
stem ending

웃 + 기 + ㄴ다 (기-ending of the voice of the causative form ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

웃긴다 (after contracting the syllable 기 and the sound ㄴ)

The action in which he makes the people laugh is expressed by the causative form 웃긴다 which has the ending of the voice 기.

ending of the voice of the causative form	end sound of the stem of the word	example
이[i]	vowel, ㄹ[r],	먹이다[mogida] let eat

	ㄱ[g], ㄲ[gg], ㅍ[p], ㅌ[t], ㅎ[h]	(먹다[mokda] eat)
히[hi]	ㅍ[p], ㅌ[t], ㅈ[j], ㄱ[k]	앉히다[an chida] let sit, set (앉다[anda] sit)
기[gi]	ㅁ[m], ㅌ[t], ㅌ[t], ㅈ[j], ㅊ[ch], ㅅ[t]	웃기다[utgida] make laugh (웃다[utda] laugh)
리[ri]	ㄹ[l], ㄹ[ru]	울리다[ullida] make weep (울다[ulda] weep)

remarks:

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of the causative form which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice of the causative form, please refer to the appendix.

178 The voice may also be expressed as follows:

1. In order to express the passive 되다 [toeda] "become", 당하다[tanghada] "suffer", 받다[patda] "receive", -아지다[ajida] /-어지다[ojida]/-여지다[yojida] "become" or -게 되다[ge toeda] "become", etc. are attached to the root of the verb.

for example:

○ 발전되다 | be developed
[paljondoeda]

explanation:

발전하 + 다 [paljonha da] develop
stem ending

발전 + 하 + 다
root suffix ending

발전 + 되다
verb

○ 파괴당하다 | be destroyed
[pagoedanghada]

explanation:

파괴하 + 다 [pagoeha da] destroy
stem ending

파괴 + 하 + 다
root suffix ending

파괴 + 당하다
verb

○ 착취받다 | be exploited
[chakchwibatda]

explanation:

착취하 + 다 [chakchwiha da] exploit
stem ending

착취 + 하 + 다
root suffix ending

착취 + 받다
verb

○ 닦아지다 | be polished
[taggajida]

explanation:

닦 + 다 [tak da] polish
stem ending

닦 + 아 + 지다 (아-connecting ending of method
or means 지다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)

2. In order to express the causative 시키다[sikida] "let", -게 하다[ge hada] "let" or -도록 하다[dorok hada] "let", etc. are attached to the root of the verb.

for example:

○ 공부시키다
[kongbusikida] | make study

explanation:

공부 + 하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
root suffix ending

공부 + 시키다 make study
verb

○ 먹게 하다
[mokge hada] | let eat
eat let

explanation:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending

먹 + 게 하다 (게-ending of the adverbial modifier
of the verb 하다-verb)

○ 먹도록 하다
[mokdorok hada] | let eat
eat let

explanation:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending

먹 + 도록 하다 (도록-ending of the adverbial
modifier of the verb 하다-verb)

179 Table of endings of the voice

ending \ form	passive form	causative form
ending of the voice	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri]	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such endings of the voice which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice, please refer to the appendix.

THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

180 The exchanging endings are the endings which make the noun, pronoun or numeral into the verbal form or in the reverse the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into the noun.

181 When the noun, pronoun or numeral is made into the verbal form, the exchanging ending 이 [i] is attached to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○ 평양은
[pyongyang·un
Pyongyang
조선민주주의
chosonminjuju·ui
the Democratic People's
인민공화국의
inmin·gonghwagugui
Republic of Korea of
수도이다*.
sudoida]
the capital is

Pyongyang is the capital of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

explanation:

* 수도 + 이 + 다 (수도-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the noun 수도.

○ 다음 차례는 너이다* . | Next, it is your turn.
 [taum charyenun noida]
 next turn you is

explanation:

* 너 + 이 + 다 (나 *pyon* 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the pronoun 너.

○ 조선은 하나이다* . | Korea is one.
 [chosonun hanaida]
 Korea one is

explanation:

* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나-numeral 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the numeral 하나.

182 When the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is turned into the noun, the exchanging ending □[m] or 기[gi] is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the stem of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

○ 아침에 일찍 | Getting up early in the
 [achime iljjik] morning is good for the
 the morning in early health.
 일어남은* 건강에 좋다.
 ironamun kon-gang-e chota]
 getting up health to good

explanation:

* 일어나 + 다 [irona da] get up
 stem ending

일어나 + □ (□- exchanging ending)

일어남 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound □)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the stem 일어나
of the verb 일어나다.

○ 그는	일하기를 ^{*1}	좋아한다 ^{*2} .		He likes working.
[kunun	ilhagirul	choahanda]		
he	working	likes		

explanation:

*₁ 일하 + 다 [ilha da] work
stem ending

일하 + 기 + 를(기-exchanging ending 를-accusative ending)

The exchanging ending 기 is attached to the stem 일하
of the verb 일하다.

*₂ 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good
stem ending

좋+아+하다 (아-connecting ending of method or means
하다-verb which is used as an auxiliary do)

좋 + 아 + 하 + 다
stem ending

좋+아+하+ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final
ending of the verb)

좋아한다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and sound ㄴ)

○ 나는	아침에	일찍		I know that getting
[nanun	achime	iljjik		up early in the morning
I	the morning in	early		is good for the health.

일어남이	건강에
ironami	kon.gang.e
getting up	health to

좋은을 ^{*1}	안다 ^{*2} .
choumul	anda]
good being	know

explanation:

*₁ 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good
stem ending

좋+으+ㅁ+을(으-link-vowel ㅁ-exchanging ending)

을-accusative ending)

종음을 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㅁ)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the stem 종 of the adjective 좋다 by the link-vowel 으.

*₂ 알 + 다 [al da] know

stem ending

알+ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

안다 [after dropping the sound ㄹ (refer 196) and contracting the syllable 아 and the sound ㄴ]

○ 나는 주체조선의
 [nanun chuchejasonui
 I Juche Korea of
 공민임을* 자랑한다.
 kongminimul charanghanda]
 citizen being proud

I am proud that I am a citizen of Korea of Juche.

explanation:

* 공민 + 이 + 다 [kongmini da] citizen be

(공민-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

공민 + 이 + ㅁ + 을 (ㅁ-exchanging ending 을-accusative ending)

공민임을 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅁ)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the exchanging ending 이, and the exchanging ending 이 is attached to the noun 공민.

183 The exchanging ending should be used correctly.

1. The exchanging ending 이 can be omitted after noun, pronoun or numeral which ends in a vowel. for example:

그는 의사다*.
 [kunun uisada]
 he doctor is

He is a doctor.

explanation:

* 의사 + 이 + 다 (의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending
다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the
verbal form)

의사 + 다 (The exchanging ending 이 can be omitted.)

The exchanging ending 이 is not omitted in the attributive form.

for example:

의사인*	김동무		Comrade Kim, a doctor
[uisain	kimdongmu]		
doctor being	Kim comrade		

explanation:

* 의사 + 이 + L (의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending L - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)

의사인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound L)

- The exchanging ending □ [m] makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun.

The exchanging ending 기 makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun and also expresses the process of the action.

for example:

의사가	되기 전에*	먼저		Man must become a
[uisaga	toegijone	monjo		revolutionary before
a doctor	becoming before	first		becoming a doctor.
혁명이	되어야	한다.		
hyongmyong-gaga	toeyoya	handa		
a revolutionary	become	must		

explanation:

* 되 + 다 [toe da] become
stem ending

되 + 기 + 전 + 예 (기 - exchanging ending 전 - noun

에 - *dative ending*)

The exchanging ending 기 makes the verb 되다 into the noun and also expresses the process of becoming a doctor.

3. The substantivized form by the exchanging ending □ [m] can also be used as a predicate.

for example:

오늘은 날씨가
[onurun nalssiga
today the weather

맑음 *.
[malgum]
clear being

The weather is clear today.

explanation:

* 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear
stem ending

맑 + 으 + □ (으 - *link-vowel* □ - *exchanging ending*)

맑음 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound □)

184 Table of the exchanging endings

ending \ for	verbal form	substantive
exchanging ending	이 [i]	□ [m], 기 [gi]

LESSON 12

THE AUXILIARY ENDINGS

- 185 The auxiliary endings are attached to various kinds of words. These endings are used to express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.

There are the following auxiliary endings:

는[nun] (ㄴ[n]) / 은 [un]	
야[ya] / 이야[iya]	만[man]
나[na] / 이나[ina]	부터[buto]
커녕[konyong]	까지[ggaji]
도[do]	

186 There is a difference between the auxiliary endings and the case endings.

As mentioned the auxiliary endings express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.

But the case endings express the connective relations between words.

for example:

올해에는 과일도* 잘
[olhaeenun kwaildo chal
this year in the fruit also well
되였다.
toeyotda]
became

The fruit also grew well
this year.

explanation:

* 과일 + 도
noun auxiliary ending

The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the relation between the fruit and other agricultural products such as grain, vegetables and so on.

for example:

올해에는 과일이* 잘 되였다.
[olhaeenun kwairi chal toeyotda]
this year in the fruit good became

The fruit grew
well this year.

explanation:

* 과일 + 이
noun nominative ending

The nominative ending 이 expresses the relation between

the word 과일 and the word combination 잘 되었다.

187 The auxiliary endings are divided as follows according to the content of the relations which the auxiliary endings express:

1. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of inclusion

도[do] also

for example:

올해에는	남새도*	The vegetable also grew well this year.
[olhaeenun	namsaedo	
this year in the	vegetable also	
잘 되었다.		
chal toeyotda]		
well became		

explanation:

* 남새 + 도
noun auxiliary ending of inclusion

The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the idea that agricultural products including the vegetables have grown well.

2. The auxiliary ending which expresses restriction

만[man] alone

for example:

나만* 간다.	I go alone.
[naman kanda]	
I only go	

explanation:

* 나 + 만
pronoun auxiliary ending of restriction

The auxiliary ending 만 expresses that I and no one else go alone.

3. The auxiliary endings which express the relation of

limitation:

부터[buto] from 까지[ggaji] till

for example:

1926년 부터* ¹		from 1926 to 1989
[chon·gubaek·isimryungnyon·buto]		
1926 year from		
1989년 까지* ²		
[chon·gubaek·palsip·gunyon·ggaji]		
1989 year till		

explanation:

*¹ 1926년 + 부터
 noun *auxiliary ending of limitation*

*² 1989년 + 까지
 noun *auxiliary ending of limitation*

4. The auxiliary ending which express the relation of indication

는[nun] (ㄴ [n])/은[un]

for example:

○ 나는*	간다.		I go.
[nanun	kanda]		
I	go		

explanation:

* 나 + 는
 pronoun *auxiliary ending of indication*

The auxiliary ending 는 expresses that no one other than I go.

The auxiliary ending 는 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 는 is attached ends in a vowel.

○ 난*	간다.		I go.
[nan kanda]			
I	go		

explanation:

* 나 + ㄴ
 pronoun *auxiliary ending of indication*

난 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound ㄴ)

The auxiliary ending ㄴ expresses that no one other than I go.

The auxiliary ending ㄴ is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending ㄴ is attached ends in a vowel.

○ 하늘은*	푸르다.	The sky is blue.
[hanurun	puruda]	
the sky	blue	

explanation:

* 하늘 + 은
noun auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 은 expresses that nothing other than the sky is blue.

The auxiliary ending 은 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 은 is attached ends in a consonant.

5. The auxiliary endings which express the emphasis

야[ya] / 이야[iya]

for example:

남 이야*	가든지	말든지	You must go whether others go or not.
[namiya	kadunji	maldunji	
just others	go or	not	
너는 가야 한다.			
nonun kaya handa]			
you go must			

explanation:

* 남 + 이야
noun auxiliary ending of emphasis

The auxiliary ending 이야 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이야 is attached ends in a consonant.

The auxiliary ending 야 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 야 is attached ends in a vowel.

6. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of concession

나[na] / 이나[ina]

for example:

그 한테 나* 가자!
[ku hantena kaja]
him to let us go!

Let us go to him!

(나—even if he is not the
very man we want)

explanation:

* 그 + 한테 + 나 [그—pronoun
한테—ending which is used as the case ending
(refer to 189)
나—auxiliary ending of concession]

The auxiliary ending 나 expresses that he is not the very man we want.

The auxiliary ending 나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 나 is attached ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 이나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이나 is attached ends in a consonant.

7. The auxiliary ending which expresses negation

커녕 [konyong]

for example:

비는커녕* 구름 한점
[pinunkonyong kurum hanjom
rain far from cloud a piece
없는 날씨였다.
omnun nalssiyotda]
not there being weather was

Far from raining, it
was a cloudless day.

explanation:

* 비 + 는 + 커녕 (비—noun 는—auxiliary
ending of indication 커녕—auxiliary ending of negation)

The auxiliary ending 커녕 is usually used together with the auxiliary ending 는 or 은.

The auxiliary ending 는 is attached to a syllable which ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 은 is attached to a syllable which ends in a consonant.

188 Table of auxiliary endings

meaning \ ending	auxiliary ending
relation of inclusion	도 [do] also
relation of restriction	만 [man] only
relation of limitation	부터 [buto] from, 까지 [ggaji] till
relation of indication	는 [nun] (ㄴ [n]) / 은 [un]
relation of emphasis	야 [ya] / 이야 [iya]
relation of concession	나 [na] / 이나 [ina]
relation of negation	커녕 [konyong]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such auxiliary endings which are frequently used.

For the other auxiliary endings, please refer to the appendix.

ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

189 There are the following endings which are used as case endings:

1. 란 [ran] / 이란 [iran]

These endings perform the function of nominative endings and are used to give a definition to the word acting as the subject.

for example:

주체사상 이란* 한마디로
[chuchegasang.iran hanmadiro
Juche Idea in a nutshell
말하여 혁명과
malhayo hyongmyong.gwa
saying revolution and
건설의 주인은
konsorui chuinun
construction of the master
인민대중이며
inmindaejung .imyō
people masses is and
혁명과 건설을
hyongmyong.gwa konsorul
revolution and construction
추동하는 힘도
chudonghanun himdo
driving force also
인민대중에게 있다는
inmindaejung.ege itdanun
the people masses to there being
사상이다.
sasang .ida]
idea is

In a nutshell, the idea of Juche means that the masters of the revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction.

explanation:

* 주체사상 + 이란(주체사상—noun 이란—ending which is used as the case ending)

The ending 이란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 이란 is attached ends in a consonant.

The ending 란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 란 is attached ends in a vowel.

2. 한테[hante]

This ending is mostly used in spoken language and serves the function of a dative ending.

for example:

그는	나 한테*	묻는다.		He asks me.
[kunun	nahante	mununda]		
he	me to	asks		

explanation:

* 나 + 한테 (나—pronoun 한테—ending which is used as the case ending)

3. 하고[hago]

This ending serves the same function as that of the ending of the coordinative case.

for example:

김동무 하고*	나		Comrade Kim and I
[kimdongmuhago	na]		
Kim comrade and	I		

explanation:

* 김동무 + 하고 (김동무—noun 하고—ending which is used as the case ending)

4. 보다[boda] (more) than

처럼 [chorom] as, 마다[mada] every

The endings 보다, 처럼 are used to express comparison.

for example:

○ 그는	나보다*	크다.		He is bigger than I.
[kunun	naboda	kuda]		
he	I than	big		

explanation:

* 나 + 보다 (나—pronoun 보다—ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 눈 처럼*	흰		white as snow
[nunchorom	huin]		
snow as	white		

explanation:

* 눈+처럼(눈-noun처럼-ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 해마다
[haemada]
year every

every year

explanation:

해 + 마다(해-noun마다-ending which is used as the case ending)

190 Table of endings which are used as case endings:

ending	ending which is used as the case ending
case	
nominative	란 [ran]/ 이란 [iran]
dative	한테 [hante]
coordinative	하고 [hago]
others	보다 [boda] 처럼 [chorom] 마다 [mada]

remarks:

We have indicated here only such endings which are frequently used.

For the other endings, please refer to the appendix.

LESSON 13

STEM AED ENDING

191 The distinction between the stem and the ending is clear in the formation of Korean words.

When a certain grammatical meaning is necessary, the

ending to express it is attached to the stem, when unnecessary, some omissions are made.

for example:

보 + 다 [po da] see
stem ending

in order to express respect

보 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see
(시-*ending of respect*)

in order to express the causative

보 + 이 + 다 [po i da] show
(이-*ending of the causative voice*)

in order to express the past

보 + 았 + 다 [po at da] saw
(았-*ending of the past tense*)

In order to express both the causative and respect, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of respect 시 [si] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 시 + 다 [po i si da] show
(이-*ending of the causative voice* 시-*ending of respect*)

In order to express both the causative and the past, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of the past tense 았 [yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 았 + 다 [po i yot da] showed
(이-*ending of the causative voice* 았-*ending of the past tense*)

In order to express both respect and the past, the ending of respect 시 [si] and the ending of the past tense 았 [yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 시 + 았 + 다 [po si yot da] saw
(시-*ending of respect* 았-*ending of the past tense*)

In order to express causative, respect and the past simultaneously, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i],

n
the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 였[yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 시 + 였 + 다 [po i si yot da] showed
(이-*ending of the causative voice* 시-*ending of respect*
였-*ending of the past tense*)

When the grammatical meaning of the causative in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" is not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] is omitted.

보 + 시 + 였 + 다 [po si yot da] saw
(시-*ending of respect* 였-*ending of the past tense*)

When the grammatical meaning of the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" is not necessary, the ending of the past tense 였[yot] is omitted.

보 + 이 + 시 + 다 [po i si da] show
(이-*ending of the causative voice* 시-*ending of respect*)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative and respect in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] and the ending of respect 시[si] are omitted.

In this case the ending of the past tense is directly attached to the stem. The stem 보[po] has the vowel ㅓ[ɔ]. Therefore, not the ending of the past 였[yot] but the ending of the past tense 았[at] is attached to the stem.

보 + 았 + 다 [po at da] saw
(았-*ending of the past tense*)

When the grammatical meanings of respect and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 였[yot] are omitted.

보 + 이 + 다 [po i da] show
(이-*ending of the causative voice*)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of the past tense 였 [yot] are omitted.

보 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see
 (시-*ending of respect*)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative, respect and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i], the ending of respect 시 [si] and the ending of the past tense 였 [yot] are omitted.

보 + 다 [po da] see
 stem ending

ATTACHING OF ENDINGS

192 The endings are attached one by one.

for example:

공장	에서의	모임	the meeting in the factory
[kongjang·esoui		moim]	
the factory in		the meeting	

explanation:

공장 + 에서
 noun locative ending

First, the locative ending 에서 is attached to the noun 공장.

공장에서 + 의
 genitive ending

Next, the genitive ending 의 is attached to 공장에서.

PAIRS OF ENDINGS

193 There are pairs of endings, which have the same grammatical meaning. Their usage differs according to the last sounds which the stems have.

for example:

1. 나무가* ¹	높다.	The tree is high.
[namuga the tree	nopda] high	
물이* ²	맑다.	The water is clear.
[muri the water	makda] clear	

explanation:

*₁ 나무 + 가
noun nominative ending

*₂ 물 + 이
noun nominative ending

The endings 가 and 이 form a pair of nominative endings.

The nominative ending 가 is attached to a word which ends in a vowel.

The nominative ending 이 is attached to a word which ends in a consonant.

2. 노래와* ¹	춤	song and dance
[noraewa song and	chum] dance	

춤과* ²	노래	dance and song
[chumgwa dance and	norae] song	

explanation:

*₁ 노래 + 와
noun ending of the coordinative case

*₂ 춤 + 과
noun ending of the coordinative case

The endings 와 and 과 form a pair of endings of the coordinative case.

The ending of the coordinative case 와 is attached to a word which ends in a vowel.

The ending of the coordinative case 과 is attached to a word which ends in a consonant.

3. 나는 가오*¹ . I go.
 [nanun kao]
 I go
 그는 갔소*². He went.
 [kunun katso]
 he went

explanation:

*₁ 가 + 다 [ka da] go
 stem ending

가 + 오 (오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

*₂ 가 + 다 go
 stem ending

가 + 았 + 소 (았-ending of the past tense 소-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

갔소 (after contracting the syllables 가 and 았)

The final endings 오 and 소 form a pair of final endings. The final ending 오 is attached to a stem which ends in a vowel.

The final ending 소 is attached to a stem which ends in a consonant.

THE LINK-VOWEL

- 194 When an ending which begins with a consonant is attached to a word or stem which ends in a consonant, the syllable 이[i] or 으[u] is inserted between them in some cases.

This syllable 이[i] or 으[u] is called the link-vowel.

1. syllable 이[i]

for example

○ 책 + 이 + नाम [chaeg i nama] though the book
 noun link-vowel auxiliary ending

explanation:

The link-vowel 이 is inserted between the noun 책 which

ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending *나마* which begins with a consonant.

- *그들* + *이* + *나마* [ku duri nama] though they
pronoun link-vowel auxiliary ending
explanation:

The link-vowel *이* is inserted between the pronoun *그들* which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending *나마* which begins with a consonant.

- *둘* + *이* + *나마* [tur i nama] though two
numeral link-vowel auxiliary ending
explanation:

The link-vowel *이* is inserted between the numeral *둘* which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending *나마* which begins with a consonant.

- *책* + *이* + *다* [chaeg i da] it's a book

[*책*-noun *이*-exchanging ending (link-vowel) *다*-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

remarks:

The syllable *이* which is inserted between the stem and predicative ending is the exchanging ending.

2. The syllable *으*[u]

for example

- *책* + *으* + *로* [chaeg u ro] with the book
noun link-vowel instrumental ending
- *이것* + *으* + *로* [igos u ro] with this
pronoun link-vowel instrumental ending
- *셋* + *으* + *로* [ses u ro] with three
numeral link-vowel instrumental ending
- *읽으며* [ilgumyo] read and
읽 + *다* [ik da] read
stem ↓ *ending*
읽 + *으* + *며* (*으*-link-vowel *며*-copulative connecting ending)

- 맑으며 [malgumyo] clear and
 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear
 stem ↓ ending
 맑 + 으 + 며 (으 - link-vowel 며 - copulative connecting ending)

THE VOCAL HARMONY

195 The vocal harmony

1. when the vowel ㅏ [a], ㅑ [ya] or ㅓ [o] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending 아 [a], 아라 [ara], 아도 [ado] or 았 [at] is attached to the stem.

for example:

ㅁㅅ + ㄷㅏ [mak da] block
 stem ending

- ㅁㅅ + ㅏ [mag a] blocking

(ㅏ - connecting ending of method or means)

- ㅁㅅ + ㅏㅓ [mag ara] block!

(ㅏㅓ - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

- ㅁㅅ + ㅏㅌ [mag ado] even if block

(ㅏㅌ - connecting ending of condition)

- ㅁㅅ + 았 + ㄷㅏ [mag at da] blocked

(았 - ending of the past tense ㄷㅏ - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

remarks:

The verb 하ㅌ [hada] "do" is excluded here.

Although the stem 하 of the verb 하ㅌ has the vowel ㅏ, the ending 여 [yo], 여ㅓ [yora], 여ㅌ [yodo] or 았 [yot] is attached to the stem 하.

for example

ㅏ + ㄷㅏ [ha da] do
 stem ending

- 하 + 여 [ha yo] doing
(여—connecting ending of method or means)
- 하 + 여라 [ha yora] do!
(여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
- 하 + 여도 [ha yodo] even if do
(여도—connecting ending of condition)
- 하 + 였 + 다 [ha yot da] did
(였—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

2. When the vowel ㅓ [o], ㅕ [yo], ㅓ [u], ㅡ [u] or ㅣ [i] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending ㅆ [o], ㅆ라 [ora], ㅆ도 [odo] or ㅆ [ot] is attached to the stem.

for example:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
stem ending

○ 먹 + ㅆ [mog o] eating
(ㅆ—connecting ending of method or means)

○ 먹 + ㅆ라 [mog ora] eat!
(ㅆ라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 먹 + ㅆ도 [mog odo] even if eat
(ㅆ도—connecting ending of condition)

○ 먹 + ㅆ + 다 [mog ot da] ate
(ㅆ—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. when the stem ends in the vowel ㅣ [i], ㅐ [ae], ㅓ [e], ㅑ [oe], ㅓ [wi], ㅓ [ui] or syllable ㅆ [ha] in its last syllable, the ending ㅆ [yo], ㅆ라 [yora], ㅆ도 [yodo] or ㅆ [yot] is attached to the stem.

for example:

가지 + 다 [kaji da] have
stem ending

○ 가지 + 여 [kaji yo] having
(여—connecting ending of method or means)

○ 가지 + 여라 [kaji yora] have!
(여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 가지 + 여도 [kaji yodo] even if have
(여도—connecting ending of condition)

○ 가지 + 였 + 다 [kaji yot da] had
(였—ending of past다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

THE EXCHANGE OF SOUNDS

196 The exchange of sounds is also made partly in Korean when some endings are attached to stems.

In such cases the changed sound also belongs to the stem.

The exchange of sounds is as follows:

1. The last syllable ㄹ[ru] of the stem of the verb or adjective is changed to ㄹㄹ[ll] before the connecting ending of method or means 어[ə], before the ending of the past tense 였[ot] or before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 어라[ora].

for example:

흐르 + 다 [huru da] flow
stem ending

○ 흘러 [hullo] flowing

흐+ㄹㄹ+어 (어—connecting ending of method or means)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흐르 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to 르르 before the connecting ending of method or means 어.

흐 + 르 + 어 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound 르)

흘러 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 어)

○ 흘렀다 [hullotda] flowed

흐 + 르르 + 었 + 다 (였 - ending of the past tense 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흐르 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to 르르 before the ending of the past tense 었.

흐 + 르 + 었 + 다 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound 르)

흘렀다 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 었)

○ 흘러라 [hullora] flow!

흐 + 르르 + 어라 (어라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흐르 of the verb 흐르다 is changed to 르르 before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 어라.

흐 + 르 + 어라 (after contracting the syllable 흐 and the sound 르)

흘러라 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 어)

2. The last consonant ㄷ [t] of the stem of the verb is partly changed to ㄹ [r] before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel 으 [u].

for example:

듣 + 다 [tut da] hear
stem ending

○ 들어 [tur o] hearing

듣+어 (어-connecting ending of method or means)

The last consonant ㄷ of the stem 듣 of the verb 듣다 is changed to ㄹ before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

○ 들으니 [turuni] as hear

듣+으+니 (으-link-vowel 니-connecting ending of cause)

The last consonant ㄷ of the stem 듣 of the verb 듣다 is changed to ㄹ before the connecting ending of cause 니 which requires the link-vowel 으.

3. The last consonant ㅂ [p] of the stem of the verb or adjective is partly changed to 오[oi] / 우[u] before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel 으[u].

for example:

돕 + 다 [top da] help
stem ending

○ 도와 [towa] helping

도 + 오 + 아 (아-connecting ending of method or means)

The last consonant ㅂ of the stem 돕 of the verb 돕다 is changed to 오 before the connecting ending of method or means 아 which begins with a vowel.

도와 (after contracting the syllables 오 and 아)

○ 도우니 [touni] as help

도 + 우 + 니 (니 - connecting ending of cause)

The last consonant ㅂ of the stem 돕 of the verb 돕다

is changed to 우 before the connecting ending of case 니 which requires the link-vowel 으.

4. The last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 누르[nuru] of the adjective 누르다[nuruda], the last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 푸르[puru] of the adjective 푸르다[puruda] and the last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 이르[iru] of the verb 이르다[iruda] are changed to 르[ru] 르[r] before an ending which begins with a vowel.

for example:

누르 + 다 [nuru da] golden
stem ending

누 + 르르 + 어 (어—connecting ending of method or means)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 누르 of the adjective 누르다 is changed to 르르 before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

누르러 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 어)

for example:

푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue
stem ending

푸 + 르르 + 었 + 다 (었—ending of the past tense
다—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 is changed to 르르 before the ending of the past tense 었 which begins with a vowel.

푸르렀다 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 었)

for example:

이르 + 다 [iru da] arrive
 stem ending

이 + 르르 + 어라 (어라—low imperative form
 of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 이르 of the verb 이르
 다 is changed to 르르 before the low imperative form
 of the final ending of the verb 어라 which begins
 with a vowel.

이르러라 (after contracting the sound 르 and
 the syllable 어)

5. The last sound ㄹ[l] of the stem of the verb or
 adjective disappears before an ending which begins with
 ㄴ[n] or ㅂ[p] and before the ending 시[si] or 오[o].

for example:

울 + 다 [ul da] weep
 stem ending

- 우는 [unun] weeping

우 + 는 (는—attributive ending of the verb in its
 present tense)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다
 disappears before the attributive ending of the verb
 in its present tense 는 which begins with ㄴ.

- 읍니다 [umnida] weep

우 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다—most deferential declarative form of
 the final ending of the verb)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다 di-
 sappears before the most deferential declarative fo-
 rm of the final ending of the verb ㅂ니다 which be-
 gins with ㅂ.

읍니다 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound ㅂ)

- 우시며 [usimyo] weep and
 우 + 시 + 며 (시-*ending of respect*
 며-*copulative connecting ending*)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다 disappears before the ending of respect 시.

- 우오 [uo] weep
 우 + 오 (오-*middle declarative form of*
the final ending of the verb)

The last sound ㄹ of the stem 울 of the verb 울다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

6. The last sound ㄷ [t] of the stem of the verb or adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link vowel 으.

for example:

낫 + 다 [nat da] cure
stem ending

- 나아서 [naaso] curing
 나 + 아 + 서 (아-*connecting ending of method*
or means 서-emphasizing ending)

The last sound ㄷ of the stem 낫 of the verb 낫다 disappears before the connecting ending of method or means 아서 which begins with a vowel.

- 나으며 [naumyo] cure and
 나 + 으 + 며 (으-*link-vowel* 며-*copulative*
connecting ending)

The last sound ㄷ of the stem 낫 of the verb 낫다 disappears before the copulative connecting ending

며 which requires the link-vowel 으.

7. The last sound ㅎ [h] of the stem of an adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel.

for example:

빨강 + 다 [bbalga ta] red
stem ending

빨가오 [bbalgao] red

빨가 + 오 (오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last sound ㅎ of the stem 빨강 of the adjective 빨강다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective 오 which begins with a vowel.

LESSON 14

THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE

197 There are eleven parts of the sentence in Korean.

1. The predicate
2. The subject
3. The object
4. The quotation
5. The adverbial modifier
6. The attribute
7. The form of address
8. The parenthesis
9. The exclamatory word
10. The conjunctive
11. The appended modifier

198 The part of the sentence as a unit performs its own function in the sentence, but its composition differs. Accordingly the simple part of the sentence and the expanded part of the sentence are distinguished.

199 The simple part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which consists of an independent word or of a combination of words which is used as one word.

for example:

조선은* ¹	아름다운* ²	나라이다.* ³	Korea is a beautiful country.
[chosonun arumdaun	naraida]		
Korea	a beautiful country is		

explanation:

*₁ 조선 + 은
noun auxiliary ending

조선은 is the subject which consists of the noun 조선 and the auxiliary ending 은.

조선은 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

*₂ 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
stem ending

아름다 + 우 + L [(L—attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense) after exchanging the sound ㅂ for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

아름다운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound L)

아름다운 is the attribute which consists of the adjective 아름답.

아름다운 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

나라 + 이 + 다 (이—exchanging ending 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

나라이다 is the predicate which consists of the noun 나라, the exchanging ending 이 and the low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 다.

나라이다 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

200 The expanded part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which is formed by the syntactical combination of two or more independent words.

for example:

사람은	자연과	사회의* ¹	Man is the master of nature and society and the most precious and powerful being in the world.
[saramun	chayon.gwa	sahoeui	
the man	nature and	society of	
주인이며	세상에서		
chuinimyo	sesang.eso		
the master is and	the world in		
가장	귀중하고	가장	
kajang	kwijunghago	kajang	
most	precious and	most	
힘있는* ²	존재이다		
himinnun	chonjaeida]		
powerful	being is		

explanation:

*₁ 자연+과 사회+의 (자연-noun 과-ending of the coordinative case 사회-noun 의-genitive ending)

자연과 사회의 is the syntactical combination of two independent words 자연 and 사회.

자연과 사회의 is the expanded part of the sentence.

*₂ 세상+에서 가장 귀중하+고 가장 힘+있+는

(세상-noun 에서-locative ending 가장-adverb 귀중하-stem

of the adjective 귀중하다 고-copulative connecting ending

가장-adverb 힘-noun 있-stem of the verb 있다 는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense

The above-mentioned combination of words is the syntactical combination of two or more independent words and the expanded part of the sentence.

THE PREDICATE

201 The predicate is the part of the sentence which is used to express the action, state or character of an object.

The predicate answers the question of "who is?", "what is?" "how does?" or "how is?" in the sentence.

for example:

○ (who is?)

우리는	관광객들입니다.	We are
[urinun	kwan·gwang·gaekdurimnida]	tourists.
we	tourits are	

○ (what is?)

함흥은	Hamhung is an
[hamhung·un	industrial city.
Hamhung	
공업도시이다.	
kong·opdosiida]	
an industrial city is	

○ (how does?)

그는	파시즘을	He fought against
[kunun	pasijumul	fascism.
he	the fascism	
반대하여	싸웠다.	
pandaehayo	ssawotda]	
opposing	fought	

○ (how is?)

조선의	가을하늘은	The autumn sky in Korea
[chosonui	kaulhanurun	is extremely clear.
Korea of	autumn sky	
끝없이	맑다.	
ggudopsi	makda]	
endlessly	clear	

202 The predicates are classified as the final predicate

and the connecting predicate.

1. The final predicate

The final predicate comes at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final predicate is expressed as follows:

- 1) The final form of a word becomes the final predicate.
for example:

저는	영국으로	돌아갑니다.*	I go back to
[chonun	yong·guguro	toragamnida]	England.
I	England to	go back	

explanation:

* 돌아가 + 다 [toraga da] go back
stem ending

돌아가 + ㅂ니다 (ㅂ니다 - *most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

돌아갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

The final form 돌아갑니다 of the verb 돌아가다 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

- 2) The connecting form of a word becomes the final predicate.

for example:

동무는	래일	You leave for London
[tongmunun	raeil	
comrade	tomorrow	tomorrow, don't you?
런던으로	떠난다면*?	
londonuro	ddonandamyonso]	
London for	leave and?	

explanation:

* 떠나 + 다 [ddona da] leave
stem ending

떠나 + ㄴ다 + 면서 (ㄴ다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verb* 면서 - *copulative connect-*

ing ending)

떠난다면서 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound L)

The connecting form 떠난다면서 of the verb 떠나다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

- 3) The final predicate is also formed by attaching an exchanging ending to the stem of the word.

for example:

저녁에	모임이	있음*	There is a meet- ing in the evening.
[chonyoge	moimi	issum]	
the evening in	a meeting	is	

explanation:

*	있	+	다	[it da]	be
	stem		ending		

있 + 으 + □ (으 - link-vowel □ - exchanging ending)

있 음 (after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound □)

The substantive form 있음 of the verb 있다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

- 4) Sometimes, a word without any ending becomes the final predicate.

for example:

우리는	영용한	We are the heroic and brave Korean People's Army.
[urinun	yong-yonghan	
we	heroic and brave	
조선인민군*		
chosoninmin-gun]		
Korean People's Army		

explanation:

*	조선	+	인민	+	군
	noun		noun		noun

The noun 조선인민군 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

2. The connecting predicate lies before the final predicate.

The connecting predicate expresses that a sentence is not closed yet and connects two units of the sentence.

The connecting predicate is usually expressed by the connecting form.

- 1) The connecting form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

for example:

하늘은	푸르고*	내 마음		The sky is blue and
[hanurun	purugo	nae maum		I am merry.
the sky	blue and	my heart		
즐겁다.				
chulgopda]				
merry				

explanation:

* 푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue
 stem ending

푸르 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

The connecting form 푸르고 of the adjective 푸르다 becomes the connecting predicate.

- 2) The final form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

for example:

날이	밝았다*,	안개가	자욱하다.		The day has
[nari	palgatda	an-gaega	chaukada]		dawned, the
the day	dawned	the fog	dense		fog is dense.

explanation:

* 밝 + 다 [pak da] dawn
 stem ending

밝 + 았 + 다 (았-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The final form 밝았다 of the verb 밝다 becomes the connecting predicate.

3) In Korean there are nouns and adverbs which perform the function of connection. Some such nouns are 동시[tongsil] "same time", 반면[panmyon] "contrary", 한편[hanpyon] "one side", 일방[ilbang] "one side", 이상[isang] "over" and 한[han] "limit", etc. And we can cite 겸[kyom] "and concurrently" as an example of such adverbs.

Those words become the connecting predicate together with the attributive form of the word which lies before them.

for example:

그는	소설가인	He is both a novelist and a poet.
[kunun	sosolgain	
he	a novelist being	
동시에*	시인이다.	
tongsie	siinida]	
the same time at	a poet is	

explanation:

* 소설가 + 이 + ㄴ 동시 + 에
 (소설가-noun 이-exchanging ending ㄴ-attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense 동시-noun 에-dative ending)

소설가인 동시에 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㄴ)

203 Between the connecting predicate and the final predicate such a phenomenon is found as the grammatical meaning which is expressed in the final predicate has something to do with the connecting predicate. It is expressed as follows:

1. By the ending of respect

for example:

아버지는 나의 말을
 [abojinun naui marul
 the father my word
 듣고* 이렇게 말씀하시였다.
 tutgo iroke malssumhasiyotda]
 heard thus said

Father listened to
 me and said thus.

explanation:

* 듣 + 다 [tut da] hear
 stem ending

듣 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)

The meaning of respect which must be expressed in the connecting form 듣고 of the verb 듣다 has been expressed by the ending of respect 시 in the final form 말씀하시였다 of the verb 말씀하다.

2. By the ending of the tense

for example:

바람은 불어도*
 [paramun purodo
 the wind blew although
 세지 않았따.
 seji anatda]
 strong not was

Although the wind
 blew, it was not
 strong.

explanation:

* 불 + 다 [pul da] blow
 stem ending

불 + 어도 (어도—connecting ending of condition)

The meaning of the past which must be expressed in the connecting form 불어도 of the verb 불다 has been expressed by the ending of the past tense 았 in the final form 않았따 of the adjective 았다.

3. By the final ending

for example:

춤을 추고* 노래를
 [chumul chugo noraerul
 the dance dance and the song

Let us dance and sing!

부릅시다.
purupsida]
sing!

explanation:

* 추 + 다 [chu da] dance
stem ending

추 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

The meaning of suggestion which must be expressed in the connecting form 추고 of the verb 추다 has been expressed by the ending of the most deferential suggestive form ㅂ시다 in the final form 부릅시다 of the verb 부르다.

4. By the word which is used as an auxiliary

for example:

우리는 이 달의
[urinun i darui
we this month of
생산계획도
saengsan-gyehoekdo
production plan also
완수하고*1 래달의
wansuhago raedarui
fulfil and next month of
생산계획도
saengsan-gyehoekdo
production plan also
완수하고야 말것이다*2.
wansuhagoya malgosida]
fulfil surely shall

We shall surely fulfil
the production plan
for this month as well
as next month.

explanation:

*1, 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil
stem ending

완수하 + 고 (고-copulative connecting ending)

The modal meaning of conviction which must be expressed in the connecting form 완수하고 of the verb 완수하

다 has been expressed by the word 말것이다 which is used as an auxiliary.

*₂ 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil
 stem ending

완수하 + 고 + 야 말다 [wansuha go ya malda] fulfil surely (고-copulative connecting ending 야-auxiliary ending of emphasis 말다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)

완수하 + 고 + 야 말 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것-incomplete noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the connecting predicate and the final predicate are related to different subjects, there is no relation in the grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate.

for example:

그는	왔으니까	저는	As he came, I will go.
[kunun	wassunigga	chonun	
he	came as	I	
가겠습니다.			
kagetsumnida]			
go will			

explanation:

The person who came is he, and the person who will go is I.

Therefore, there is no relation in grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate 왔으니까 and the final predicate 가겠습니다.

THE SUBJECT

204 The subject is the doer of the action, etc. expressed by the predicate.

But the subject can be omitted in some cases.

The subject is expressed mainly by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.

1. The subject is expressed by attaching one of the following endings to the word:

the nominative ending **께서**[ggeso], **가**[ka] or **이**[i]

the ending which is used as the ending of the case **란** [ran] or **이란**[iran]

the auxiliary ending **는**[nun]/**ㄴ**[n] or **은**[un]

for example:

- | | | | | | |
|---|--------|-------|---------|--|---------------|
| ○ | 아버지 | 께서* | 오신다. | | Father comes. |
| | [aboji | ggeso | osinda] | | |
| | father | | comes | | |

explanation:

- * 아버지 +께서 (아버지—noun께서—nominative ending)

The subject 아버지께서 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending께서 to the noun 아버지.

- | | | | | | |
|---|--------|---------------|---------|--|------------|
| ○ | 제가* | 가 | 겠습니다. | | I will go. |
| | [chega | gagetsumnida] | | | |
| | I | | go will | | |

explanation:

- * 제 +가 (제—pronoun가—nominative ending)

The subject 제가 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending가 to the pronoun 제.

- | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------|---------------------|---|-------|--|-------------------|
| ○ | 지구란* | 태양계의 | 한 | 행성이다. | | The earth is one |
| | [chiguran | taeyang-gyeui | | | | of the planets of |
| | the earth | the solar system of | | | | the solar system. |
| | 한 | 행성이다. | | | | |
| | han | haengsong·ida] | | | | |
| | a | planet is | | | | |

explanation:

* 지구 + 란 (지구—noun 란—ending which is used as the ending of the case)

The subject 지구란 is expressed by attaching the ending 란, which is used as the ending of the case, to the noun 지구.

○	오늘의 날씨는 어떻습니까?		What's the
	[onurui nalssinun oddosumnigga]		weather like
	today of the weather how is?		today?

explanation:

* 날씨 + 는 (날씨—noun 는—auxiliary ending)

The subject 날씨는 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 는 to the noun 날씨.

2. The locative ending 에서 [eso] is also used for the subject when a collective object is expressed.

for example:

이 해에도	우리 농장에서*		Our farm produced
[i haedo	uri nongjang·eso		a lot of vegetables
this year in	also our farm in		this year, too.
많은 남새를	생산했다.		
manun namsaerul	saengsan haetda]		
much vegetable	produced		

explanation:

* The subject 우리 농장에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 농장.

3. A word without ending becomes the subject.

Such a subject is often used in poems or scenarios.

for example:

저 노래*1	우리에게는*2		That song will give
[cho norae	uriegenun		courage to us but
that song	us to		fear to the enemy.

용기를	주고	원쑤에게는	
yong-girul	chugo	wonssuegenun	
the courage	give and	to the enemy	
공포를	주리라*3!		
kongporul	churira]		
the fear	give will!		

explanation:

- *₁ The noun 노래 is used as a subject without ending.
The noun 노래 is in absolute case.
- *₂ 우리 + 에게 + 는 (우리—personal pronoun 에게-
dative ending 는—auxiliary ending)
- *₃ 주 + 다 [chu da] give
stem ending
주 + 리라 (리라—middle declarative form of the final
ending of the verb)
리라 expresses surmise.

THE OBJECT

205 The object expresses the object which makes up the action or state expressed by the predicate.

The object implies such a content as answers the following question:

whom? what? to whom? to what? by whom? in what? with what? or (more) than who? (more) than what?

for example:

○ (whom?)

나는	매일	그를* 만난다.	I meet him
[nanun	maeil	kurul mannanda]	everyday.
I	everyday	him meet	

explanation:

- * The object 그를 makes up the action which is expressed

by the predicate 만난다.

○ (what?)

저는	커피를*	마십니다.	} I drink a cup of coffee.
[chonun	kopirul	[masimnida]	
I	coffee	drink	

explanation:

* The object 커피를 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 마십니다.

○ (to whom?)

그는	나에게*	이	책을	주었다.	} He gave me this book.
[kunun	naege	i	chegul	chuetda]	
he	me to	this	book	gave	

explanation:

* The object 나에게 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 주었다.

○ (to what?)

나는	공장에*	간다.	} I go to the factory.
[nanun	kongjang.e	kanda]	
I	the factory to	go	

explanation:

* The object 공장에 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 간다.

○ (by whom?)

나는	그에게서*	강의를	} I attend his lecture.
[nanun	kuegeso	kang·uirul	
I	him by	lecture	
받는다.			
pannunda]			
get			

explanation:

* The object 그에게서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 받는다.

○ (in what?)

저는	런던에서*	삽니다.	} I live in London.
[chonun	londoneso	samnida]	
I	London in	live	

explanation:

* The object 런던에서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 삽니다.

○ (to whom?)

우리는 가장 행복한
[urinun kajang haengbokan
we the happiest.

We have become the
happiest people.

인민으로* 되었다.
inminuro toeyotda]
people became

explanation:

* The object 인민으로 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 되었다.

○ (with what?)

나는 톱으로*
[nanun toburo
I a saw with

I cut the wood with a
saw.

나무를 벤다.
namurul penda]
the wood cut

explanation:

* The object 톱으로 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 벤다.

○ [(more)than who?]

그는 나보다* 크다.
[kunun naboda kuda]
he I than big

He is bigger than I.

explanation:

* The object 나보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

○ [(more) than what?]

이 집은 저
[i chibun cho
this house that

This house is bigger
than that one.

집보다*	크다.
chipboda	kuda]
house than	big

explanation:

* The object 저 집보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

206 The object is usually expressed by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.

1. The object is expressed by attaching the ending of the case or the auxiliary ending to the word.

for example:

○ 저는	차를*	I prefer to drink tea.
[chonun	charul	
I	tea	
즐겨	마십니다.	
chulgyo	masimnida]	
for preference	drink	

explanation:

* The object 차를 is expressed by attaching the accusative ending 를 to the noun 차.

○ 저는	평양에서* ₁	I go from Pyongyang to London.
[chonun	pyongyang-eso	
I	Pyongyang from	
런던까지* ₂	갑니다.	
london-ggaji	kamnida]	
London to	go	

explanation:

*₁ The object 평양에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 평양.

*₂ The object 런던까지 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 까지 to the noun 런던.

2. The object is expressed without attaching any ending of the case to the word.

for example:

저는	사이다*	마십니다.		I drink a glass of
[chonun	saida	masimnida]		lemonade.
I	lemonade	drink		

explanation:

* The object 사이다 has no ending of the case.

3. The object is expressed by attaching to itself the word which is used as an auxiliary such as 위하여[wihayo] "for", 대하여[taehayo] "for", 의하여[uihayo] "through", 관하여[kwanhayo] "about" and 말미암아[malmiama] "because of".

for example:

조국을	위하여*	싸우자.		Let us fight for
[chogugul	wihayo	ssauja]		the fatherland!
the fatherland	for let us	fight!		

explanation:

* The object 조국을 위하여 is expressed by attaching to the word 조국을 the word 위하여 which is used as an auxiliary.

THE QUOTATION

- 207 The quotation expresses the object or additional description which is introduced to give a concrete explanation of the predicate.

for example:

○ (who he is?)

그는	나에게	김동무가		He said to me that
[kunun	na·ege	kimdongmuga		Comrade Kim was a
he	me to	Kim comrade		football player.
축구선수라고*		말하였다.		
chukgusonsurago		malhayotda]		
football player		was said		

explanation:

* The quotation 김동무가 축구선수라고 expresses that com-
rade Kim was a football player.

○ (what it is?)

그는	나에게	이것이	그의		He said to me
[kunun	na·ege	igosi	ku·ui		that this was his
he	me to	that this	his		school.
학교라고* 말하였다.					
hakgyorago	malhayotda]				
school was	said				

explanation:

* The quotation 이것이 그의 학교라고 expresses that this
was his school.

○ (how man does?)

그는	열심히	공부하자고*		He was determined
[kunun	yolsimi	kongbuhajago		to study hard.
he	hard	to study		
결심하였다.				
kyolsimhayotda]				
determined				

explanation:

* The quotation 열심히 공부하자고 expresses to study hard.

208 The quotation is expressed as follows:

1. The quotation is expressed by -라고[-rago] (-이라고[-ir-ago]), -느냐고[-nunyago], -나가고[-ngago] and -다고[-dago] which are formed by attaching the connecting ending 고[go] to the final form of the word.

for example:

그들은	금강산이		They admired Mt.
[kudurun	kumgangsani		Kumgang very much for
they	Mt. Kumgang		it's supreme natural
대자연의			beauty.
tajayonui			
the great nature of			

으뜸가는	
uddumganun	
the best being	
아름다움이라고*	못내
arumdaumirago	monnae
beauty is that	very
감탄하였다.	
kamtanhayotda]	
admired	

explanation:

* The quotation 금강산이 대자연의 으뜸가는 아름다움이라고 is expressed by the connecting form -이라고.

2. The quotation is expressed by the final form of the word with such final endings as 다[da], 자[ja] and 느냐 [nunya].

for example:

그	아이는	《아버지다》*
[ku	ainun	abojida
that	child	“father is”
소리쳤다.		
sorichotda]		
shouted		

That child shouted:
“Father’s coming”.

explanation:

* The quotation 《아버지다》 is expressed by the final form with the final ending 다 of the verbal form of the noun 아버지.

3. The quotation is expressed by attaching 하고[hago] to the quoted word.

The quoted word is put in quotation marks.

for example:

나는	그에게	《고맙습니다》!	I said to him:
[nanun	kuege	komapsumnida	“Thank you”.
I	him to	“Thank you”	

하고 말하였다.
hago malhayotda]
said

THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

209 The adverbial modifier defines the grade or form of the action or state to be expressed by the predicate or adds the modality to the aforementioned content.

for example:

그는	빨리	간다.		He goes fast.
[kunun	bballi	konnunda]		
he	fast	goes		

210 The adverbial modifier is usually expressed by the adverb or by a form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective.

L The adverbial modifier form of the verb or adjective becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는	밤이	깊도록*		He studies till late at
[kunun	pami	kipdorok		night.
he	the night	deep till		
공부한다.				
kongbuhanda]				
studies				

explanation:

* 깊 + 다 [kip da] deep
stem ending

깊 + 도록 (도록—ending of the adverbial modifier)

2. The adverb or the noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.

- 1) All adverbs except the connecting adverb such as **및** [mit] "and" and **겸** [kyom] "and concurrently" become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는	조선말을	아주*	잘한다.	He speaks very well in Korean.
[kunun	chosonmarul	aju	chal handa]	
he	Korean	very well	speaks	

explanation:

* The adverb **아주** becomes the adverbial modifier.

- 2) The noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier without ending.

for example:

그는	나를	적극*	He actively helps me.
[kunun	narul	chokguk	
he	me	actively	
돕는다.			
tomnunda]			
helps			

explanation:

* The noun **적극** used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.

- 3) The noun in the form **-적[-jok]** with the instrumental ending **로[ro]** or without ending becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는	나를	적극적으로*	He actively helps me.
[kunun	narul	chokgukjoguro	
he	me	actively	
돕는다.			
tomnunda]			
helps			

explanation:

* 적극적 + 으 + 로 (으-link-vowel 로-instrumental ending)

3. The following become the adverbial modifier:

1) The incomplete nouns such as 채[chae] "just as it is", 대로[taero] "as" and 족족[chokjok] "every time" are attached to the attributive form of the word and become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

우리는	곰을	산채로*	잡았다.	We captured the bear alive.
[urinun	komul	sanchaero	chabatda]	
we	the bear	alive	captured	

explanation:

* 살 + 다 [sal da] live
stem ending

사 + ㄴ + 채 + 로 [(ㄴ-attributive ending of the verb in its past tense 채-incomplete noun "just as it is" 로-instrumental ending) after disappearance of the sound ㄹ (refer to 196)]

산채로 (after contracting the syllable 사 and the sound ㄴ)

2) The repeated connecting forms such as -나 -나[-na -na]

-든 -든[-dun -dun] and -거나 -거나[-gona -gona] become the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그가	가든	안가든*	Not depending on it, whether he goes or not, I go.
[kuga	kadun	angadun	
he	whether goes or	not goes or	
나는	간다.		
nanun	kanda]		
I	go		

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가 + 든 안+가 + 든 (든-disjunctive connecting ending
안-*adverb of negation* 든-disjunctive connecting ending)

THE ATTRIBUTE

211 The attribute comes before attributed words and defines their character or denomination or expresses their belonging.

for example:

우리 청년들은
[uri chongnyondurun
our youths
혁명하는*¹
hyongmyonghanun
revolution making

세대이며
sedaeimyo
generation are and
투쟁하는*² 세대이며
tujaenghanun sedaeimyo
fighting generation are and
전진하는*³ 세대이다.
chonjinhanun sedaeida]
marching forward generation are

Our youths are the generation making revolution, the fighting generation and the generation marching forward.

explanation:

*₁ 혁명하 + 다 [hyongmyongha da] the revolution
stem ending make

혁명하 + 는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

*₂ 투쟁하 + 다 [tuojaengha da] fight
stem ending

투쟁하 + 는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

*₃ 전진하 + 다 [jonjinha da] march forward
 stem ending

전진하 + 는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

212 The attribute is expressed as follows:

1. The attributive form of words becomes the attribute.
 - 1) The attributive form of the verb or adjective becomes the attribute.

for example:

그 때는 따뜻한*
 [ku ddaenun ddaddutan
 that time warm
 봄날이었다.
 pomnariyotda]
 a spring day was

It was a warm spring day.

explanation:

* 따뜻하 + 다 [ddadduta da] warm
 stem ending

따뜻하 + ㄴ (ㄴ - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

따뜻한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and sound ㄴ)

- 2) The attributive form of some verbs which are used as an auxiliary becomes the attribute.

for example:

그는 자기 고향에
 [kunun chagi kohyang-e
 he own native place
 대한* 이야기를 하였다.
 taehan iyagirul hayotda]
 about the story did

He talked about his own native place.

explanation:

대하 + 다 [taeha da] be confronted (verb which is used as an auxiliary)
 stem ending

대하 + ㄴ (ㄴ - *attributive ending of the verb in its past tense*)

대한 (*after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ*)

2. All pre-nouns become attribute.

for example:

선생은 매* 학생의
[sonsaeng-un mae haksæng-ui
the teacher each pupil of
이름을 불렀다.
irumul pullotda]
name called

The teacher called
the name of each
pupil.

explanation:

* 매 학생 + 의 (매 - *pre-noun* 학생 - *noun* 의 - *genitive ending*)

The pre-noun 매 is the attribute to the noun 학생.

3. The noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive becomes the attribute.

1) Without ending

for example:

저것이 우리* 집이다.
[chogosi uri chibida]
that our house is

That is our house.

explanation:

* 우리 집 + 이 + 다 (우리 - *personal pronoun* 집 - *noun* 이 - *exchanging ending* 다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)

The personal pronoun 우리 is the attribute to the noun 집.

The genitive ending 의 of the personal pronoun 우리, which is in the genitive, is omitted.

2) With the genitive ending

for example:

저것이	우리의*	집이다.		That is our house.
[chogosi	uriui	chibida]		
that	our	house is		

explanation:

* 우리 + 의 집 + 이 + 다 (우리 - *personal pronoun* 의 - *genitive ending* 집 - *noun* 이 - *exchanging ending* 다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form*)

The personal pronoun in the genitive 우리의 is the attribute to the noun 집.

4. The adverb becomes the attribute.

1) Without ending

for example:

붕붕*	벌소리		a bee's buzzing sound
[pungbung	polsori]		
buzz bee	sound		

explanation:

* 붕붕 벌소리 (붕붕 - *adverb* 벌소리 - *noun*)

The adverb 붕붕 is the attribute to the noun 벌소리.

2) With the genitive ending

for example:

스스로 의*	가책		One's own reproach
[susuroui	kachaek]		
one's own	reproach		

explanation:

* 스스로 + 의 가책 (스스로 - *adverb* 의 - *genitive ending* 가책 - *noun*)

The adverb 스스로 with the genitive ending 의 is the attribute to the noun 가책.

THE FORM OF ADDRESS

213 The form of address is the word with which the

speaker calls the person addressed.

for example:

조국이며,	영원히	번영하라!	Fatherland, prosper forever!
[chogugiyo	yong·woni	ponyonghara]	
fatherland	forever	prosper!	

214 The form of address is expressed as follows:

1. A word with the vocative ending becomes the form of address.

for example:

전우들 이여*,	동지들에게	Comrades-in-arms! We send militant greetings to you!
[chonuduriyo	tongjidurege	
comrades-in-arms	comrades to	
뜨거운 전투적 인사를		
ddugoun chontujok insarul		
warm militant greetings		
보냅니다!		
ponaemnida]		
send		

explanation:

* 전우 + 들 + 이여 (전우 - noun 들 - plural ending
이여 - vocative ending)

2. A word without ending becomes the form of address.

for example:

김동무*!	잘	가게!	Comrade Kim! Good-bye!
[kimdongmu	chal	kage]	
Kim comrade	well	go!	

explanation:

* 김동무!
noun

The word 김동무 has no ending and becomes the form of address.

THE PARENTHENSIS

215 The parenthesis is the part of sentence which is in-

serted to express the source of the fact about which a person is talking or to give an additional explanation in the sentence.

for example:

듣건대*	김동무는	They say Comrade Kim is a top student.
[tutgondae	kimdongmunun	
they say	Kim comrade	
최우등생이다.		
choeudungsaeng·ida]		
a top student is		

explanation:

* 듣건대 is the parenthesis.

216 The parenthesis is expressed as follows:

1. The connecting form of the word becomes parenthesis.

for example:

말하자면*	김동무는	Comrade Kim is a top student, so to speak.
[malhajamyon	kimdongmunun	
so to speak	Kim comrade	
최우등생이다.		
choeudungsaeng·ida]		
a top student is		

explanation:

* 말하 + 다 [malha da] speak
 stem ending

말하 + 자면 (자면 - *connecting ending of condition*)

The connecting form 말하자면 of the verb 말하다 becomes the parenthesis.

2. Phrases become parenthesis.

for example:

보는바와	같이*	우리	As you see, our football players won.
[ponunbawa	kachi	uri	
as see		our	

축구선수들이	이겼다.	
chukgusonsuduri	igyotda]	
football players	won	

explanation:

* 보 + 다 [po da] see
 stem ending

보 + 는 바 + 와 같이 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense* 바-*incomplete noun ending of the coordinative case* 같이-*adverb*)

The firm composition of the words 보는바와 같이 becomes the parenthesis.

THE EXCLAMATORY WORD

217 The exclamatory word expresses the thought or attitude of the speaker according to his feelings.

for example:

예*,	저도	가겠습니다.		Yes, I will	go, too.
[ye	chodo	kagetsumnida]			
yes	I also	go will			

explanation:

* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

218 The exclamatory word is expressed as follows:

1. An interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

for example:

예*,	저도	갑니다.		Yes, I go, too.
[ye	chodo	kamnida]		
yes	I also	go		

explanation:

* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

2. A non-interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

for example:

옳소*,	자네가	옳소.	Right, you are right.
[olso	chanega	olso]	
right	you	right	

explanation:

* 옳 + 다 [ol ta] right
stem ending

옳 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The final form 옳소 of the adjective 옳다 becomes the exclamatory word.

THE CONJUNCTIVE

219 The conjunctive is the part of a sentence which connects two contents to each other.

The conjunctive usually lies at the beginning of the sentence and connects the content of a sentence with the content of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

for example:

래일은	아침	일찌기	We must leave early to- morrow morning.
[raeirun	achim	iljjigi	
tomorrow	morning	early	
떠나야	하오.	그러니까*	Therefore, go to bed early this evening!
ddonaya	hao	kuronigga onul	
leave	must	therefore today	
저녁에는		일찌기 자시오!	
chonyogenun		iljjigi chasio]	
evening in		early sleep!	

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그러니까 connects the content of a sentence with that of the sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

But in some cases the conjunctive performs the function of connecting two parts of a sentence to each other.

for example:

기적과 혁신은	공장에서,	Miracles and innovations take place one after another in the factory, countryside, mine and fishing village.
[kijokgwa hyoksinun	kongjang · eso	
miracle and innovation	the factory in	
농촌에서,	광산에서	
nongchoneso	kwangsaneso	
the countryside in	the mine in	
그리고*	어촌에서	
kurigo	ochoneso	
and	the fishing village in	
런이어	일어나고 있다.	
ryonio	ironagoitda]	
one after another	take place	

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그리고 connects an object 광산에서 and another object 어촌에서 to each other.

220 The conjunctive is expressed as follows:

1. The adverb becomes the conjunctive.

for example:

이	공장에서	In this factory they produce both cars and buses.
[i	kongjang · esonun	
this	factory in	
승용차를	생산한다.	
sungyongcharul	saengsanhanda	
the passenger car	produce	
또한*	버스도 생산한다.	
ddohan	bbosudo saengsanhanda]	
as well the bus	also produce	

explanation:

* The conjunctive 또한, which is an adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in

which the conjunctive lies.

2. A non-adverb becomes the conjunctive.

for example:

처음에 박동무가
[choume pakdongmuga
first Pak comrade
연설하겠습니 다. 다음으로*
yonsolhagetsumnida taumuro
speech make will next
김동무가 연설하겠습니 다.
kimdongmuga yonsolhagetsumnida]
Kim comrade speech make will

First Comrade Pak
will make a speech
and then Comrade
Kim.

explanation:

* The conjunctive 다음으로, which is a non-adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

3. Phrases become the conjunctive.

for example:

그 녀자는 노래를
[ku nyojanun noraerul
she the song
잘 부른다. 그뿐아니라*
chal purunda kubbunanira
well sings besides
춤도 잘 춘다.
chumdo chal chunda]
the dance also well dances

She sings well. Besides
she dances well.

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그뿐아니라 connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

THE APPENDED MODIFIER

221 The appended modifier is the part of a sentence which

is presented for emphasis.

for example:

백두산, 그 이름은
[paekdusan ku irumun
Mt. Paekdu the name
모든 조선사람의
modun chosonsaramui
all Korean of
심장속에 영원히
simjangsoge yong·woni
the heart in forever
살아있을것이다.
saraisulgosida]
live will

Mt. Paekdu!
The name will live for-
ever in the hearts of
all Koreans.

THE EXPANDED PART OF SENTENCE

222 The expanded part of a sentence consists of word combinations.

223 1. The expanded predicate

for example:

혁명의 요람
[hyongmyong·ui yoram
revolution of the cradle
만경대는 경치가
mangyongdaenun kyongchiga
Mangyongdae the scenery
매우 아름답다*.
maeu arumdapda]
very beautiful

The scenery of
Mangyongdae, the
cradle of the revo-
lution, is very
beautiful.

explanation:

* 경치 + 가 매우 아름답다. (경치—*noun* 가—*nominative ending* 매우—*adverb* 아름답다—*final form of adjective*)
경치가 매우 아름답다 is a word combination and the

expanded part of the sentence.

In the word combination 경치가 매우 아름답다 the final form 아름답다 of the adjective 아름답다 lies at the end of the sentence.

Therefore, the word combination 경치가 매우 아름답다 is an expanded predicate.

224 2. The expanded subject

This is similar to the complex subject in English.

for example:

조선말을	배우기가*	The Korean language is not difficult to learn.
[chosonmarul	paeugiga	
the Korean language	to learn	
어렵지 않다.		
oryopji anta]		
difficult not		

explanation:

* 조선말 + 을 배우다 [chosonmarul paeuda] the Korean language to learn (조선말 - noun 을 - accusative ending 배우다 - verb)

조선말 + 을 배우 + 기 + 가 (기 - exchanging ending 가 - nominative ending)

조선말을 배우기가 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 배우기가, which comes at the end of the word combination 조선말을 배우기가, has the nominative ending 가.

Therefore, the word combination 조선말을 배우기가 is the expanded subject.

225 3. The expanded object

This is similar to complex object in English.

for example:

나는	그가	돌아오기를*	I waited for him to come back.
[nanun	kuga	toraogirul	
I	he	to come back	

기다렸다.
kidaryotda]
waited

explanation:

* 그+가 돌아오다 [kuga toraoda] he+to come back (그 -
pronoun 가 -nominative ending 돌아오다 - verb)

그 + 가 돌아오 + 기 + 를 (기 -exchanging end-
ing 를 - accusative ending)

그가 돌아오기를 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 돌아오기를, which comes at the end of the word combination 그가 돌아오기를, has the accusative ending 를.

Therefore, the word combination 그가 돌아오기를 is the expanded object.

226 4. The expanded quotation:

for example:

그는 저녁식사전에
[kunun chonyoksiksajone
he supper before
집에 가야 하므로
chibe kaya hamuro
the house to had to go as
돌아가겠다고* 나에게
toragagetdago na · ege
go back would that me to

말했다.
malhaeta]
said

He said to me that he would go back because he had to go home before supper.

explanation:

* 저녁식사전에 집에 가야 하므로 돌아가겠다고 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

This expanded part of the sentence answers the question "how does a person?"

Therefore, this expanded part of the sentence is the expanded quotation.

227 5. The expanded adverbial modifier

for example:

강물이	눈이	The river glitters daz- zlingly.
[kangmuri	nuni	
the river water	the eye	
부시게*	번쩍거린다.	
pusige	ponjjokgorinda]	
dazzlingly	glitters	

explanation:

* 눈 + 이 부시다 [nun i pusida] the eye dazzling
(눈-noun 이-nominative ending 부시다-adjective)

눈이 부시 + 게 (게-ending of the adverbial modifier)

눈이 부시게 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 부시게, which comes at the end of the word combination 눈이 부시게, has the ending of the adverbial modifier 게.

Therefore, the word combination 눈이 부시게 is the expanded adverbial modifier.

228 6. The expanded attribute

for example:

나라와	인민의	The noble character of loving and setting sto- re by the property of the country and people	
[narawa	inminui		
the country	and the people of		
재산을	아끼고		
chaesanul	aggigo		
the property	sparing		
사랑하는*	고상한		품성
saranghanun	kosanghan		pumsong]
and loving	noble	character	

explanation:

* 사랑하 + 다 [sarangha da] love
 stem ending

사랑하 + 는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.

The word 사랑하는, which lies at the end of the word combination 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는, is the attributive form of the adjective 사랑하다.

Therefore, the word combination 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is the expanded attribute.

LESSON 15

THE AGREEMENT OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

229 The agreement of parts of sentence means that a part of sentence agrees with another part of sentence in an expression.

for example:

○ 선생님이	오 십 니 다.*	The teacher is coming.
[sonsaengnimi	osimnida]	
the teacher	comes	

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
 stem ending

오+시+ㅁ니다 (시-*ending of respect* ㅁ니다-*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

오십니다 (*after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅁ*)

The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오십니다 because the subject 선생님 is respected.

○ 선생님이	주 무 신 다.*	The teacher sleeps.
[sonsaengnimi	chumusinda]	
the teacher	sleeps	

explanation:

* 주무시 + 다 [chumusi da] sleep (in the meaning of respect)
stem ending

주무시 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The predicate 주무신다 has the meaning of respect of "sleep".

The predicate 주무신다 which has the meaning of respect of "sleep" is used in order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

There are agreement in the expressions of respect and courtesy as well as agreement in the expressions of the adverbial modifier, the question and the forms of address.

230 1. The agreement in expressions of respect and courtesy

1) The agreement in an expression of respect

When a respected person is the subject, the ending of respect 시 [si] is used in the predicate.

for example:

선생님이	오신다.*
[sonsaengnimi	osinda]
the teacher	comes

The teacher is coming.

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 시 + ㄴ다 (시 - ending of respect ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오신다 in order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

2) The agreement in an expression of courtesy

The agreement in an expression of courtesy is agreement in which the final ending in the final predicate is changed corresponding to the attitude of the speaker toward the person addressed.

(1) Agreement in the most deferential form

When the speaker respects the person addressed, the most deferential form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:

교장 선생님이 오십니다*		The principal teacher is coming.
[kyojangsonsaengnimi osimnida]		
the principal teacher comes		

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오+시+ㅁ니다 (시-*ending of respect* ㅁ니다-*most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)
오십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅁ)

The most deferential form of the final ending ㅁ니다 lies in the final predicate 오십니다 in order to show respect to the person addressed.

(2) When the speaker and the person addressed are equals, the middle form of the final ending comes in the final predicate.

for example:

선생님이 오시오*.		The teacher is coming.
[sonsaengnimi osio]		
the teacher comes		

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오+시+오 (시-*ending of respect* 오-*middle declarative*)

form of the final ending of the verb)

The middle form of the final ending 오 lies in the final predicate 오시오 in order to express that the person addressed is on equal terms with the speaker.

(3) The agreement in the low form

When the person addressed is in a lower position to the speaker, the low form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:

어머님이 오신다*.
[omonimi osinda]
the mother comes

The mother is coming.

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오+시+ㄴ다 (시—ending of respect ㄴ다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㄴ)

The low form of the final ending ㄴ다 lies in the final predicate 오신다 in order to express that the person addressed is on a lower level than the speaker.

3) The agreement in words which have the meaning of respect

Korean has words which have the meaning of respect in themselves. Therefore, one must use such words when he speaks to a superior.

for example:

이 책을 아버님에게 올려라*!
[i chaegul abonimege ollyora]
this book the father to give!

Give this book
to the father!

explanation:

* 올리 + 다 [olli da] give (in the meaning of respect).
stem ending

우리 + 여라 (여라 - *low imperative form of the final ending of the verb*)

올려라 (*after contracting the syllables 리 and 여*)

The predicate 올려라 is used here in order to show respect to "father".

231 2. The agreement in the adverbial modifier and other parts of the sentence

for example:

우 리 는 전 쟁 을	바 라 지	않 지 만	We don't
[urinun chonjaeng.ul	paraji	anchiman	
we the war	want	not but	want the
결 코 전 쟁 을	두 려 워 하 지	않 는 다.*	war, but
kyolko chonjaeng.ul	turyowohaji	annunda]	
never the war	fear	not	never fe-
			ar it.

explanation:

* 두려워하 + 다 [turyowoha da] fear
stem ending

두려워하 + 지 않다 (지 - *connecting ending of negation* 않다
- *verb which is used as an auxiliary*)

두려워하 + 지 않 + 는다 (는다 - *low declarative form of the final ending of the verb*)

The low declarative form of the final ending of the verb *않는다* in the final predicate 두려워하지 않는다, which expresses negation, is in agreement with the adverbial modifier 결코.

232 3. The agreement in interrogative words and other parts of the sentence

for example:

무 슨	말 을	그 령 게	What an interesting
[musun	marul	kuroke	
which	word	so	
			story are you telling?

재미 있게 하는가*?
 chemitge hanunga]
 interestingly do?

explanation:

* 하 + 다 [ha da] do
 stem ending

하+는가 (는가—middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

The final predicate of interrogation 하는가 is in agreement with the interrogative word 무슨, which lies at the beginning.

233 4. The agreement in the forms of address and other parts of the sentence

This is the agreement in which the final predicate in the low form of courtesy follows after the forms of address with the vocative ending 아[a] / 야[ya].

for example:

너 백두야*!
 [no paekduya
 you Paekdu!
 조선의 산아*!
 chosonui sana
 Korea of the mountain!
 말하라*!
 malhara
 say!

어떻게 떨어졌던
 oddoke ddorojyotdon
 how fallen
 태양이 이 나라에
 taeyang.i i narae
 sun this country in
 다시 솟았더냐!
 tasi sosatdonya]
 again went up!

You Paekdu!
 The mountain of Korea!
 Speak out!
 How has the sun, which
 had sunk, risen again
 in this country?

explanation:

*₁ 백 두 + 야
noun vocative ending

*₂ 산 + 아
noun vocative ending

*₃ 말하 + 다 [malha da] say
stem ending

말하+라 (라-low imperative form of the final ending
of the verb)

The final predicate 말하라 in the low form of courtesy
follows after the vocative words 백두야 and 산아.

THE ORDER OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

234 1. The position of the predicate

The predicate usually comes at the end of the
sentence.

for example:

기 차 가 온 다.*

[kichaga onda]

the train comes

The train comes.

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come

stem ending

오+ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final end-
ing of the verb)

온다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound
ㄴ)

The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence and
closes the sentence.

235 2. The position of the subject

The subject usually comes at the beginning of the
sentence.

So long as the speaker doesn't emphasize a certain part of the sentence, the subject always comes first.

for example:

버스	가*	저기	에	온다.	A bus comes there.
[bbosuga	chogie	onda]			
a bus	that place to	comes			

explanation:

* 버스 + 가

noun nominative ending

The subject 버스가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

236 3. The position of the object

The object often lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

○ 그는	새로운	기계를*	He made a new machine.
[kunun	saeroun	kigyerul	
he	new	machine	
만들었다.			
[mandurotda]			
made			

explanation:

* 기계 + 를

noun accusative ending

The object 기계를 comes between the subject 그는 and the predicate 만들었다.

○ 우리는	평화를*	원한다.	We want peace!
[urinun	pyonghwarul	wonhanda]	
we	the peace	want	

explanation:

* 평화 + 를

noun accusative ending

The object 평화를 comes between the subject 우리는 and the predicate 원한다.

When a sentence has many objects, the object to which the action of the predicate of the transitive verb directly goes over always lies nearer to the predicate than other objects.

for example:

나는	그에게	
[nanun	kuege	
I	him	
그 책을*	주었다.	
ku chaegul	chuotda]	
that book	gave	

I gave him the book.

explanation:

* 그 책 + 을
pronoun noun accusative ending

The object 그 책을 which the action of the predicate 주었다 directly influences comes nearer to the predicate 주었다 than the object 그에게.

The expanded object comes before other objects.

for example:

나는	일을	
[nanun	irul	
I	the work	
끝 냈다는 것을*		
ggunnaetdanungosul		
finished that		
그에게	보고하였다.	
kuege	pogohayotda]	
him	reported	

I reported to him that
 I had finished the
 work.

explanation:

* 끝 내 + 다 [ggunnae da] finish
stem ending

끝내+였+다+는+것+을 (였—ending of the past tense
 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the
 verb 는—auxiliary ending 것—incomplete noun 을
 —accusative ending)

끝냈다는것을 (after contracting the syllables 내 and 였)
The expanded object 일을 끝냈다는것을 comes before another object 그에게.

The objects expressing time and place usually come at the beginning of the sentence.

When there are objects expressing time and place, the time comes first.

for example:

오늘 저녁에
[onul chonyoge
today evening in
구락부에서
kurakbueso
the club in

모임이 있다.
[moimi itda]
a meeting is

This evening there is
a meeting in the club.

explanation:

The object expressing time 오늘 저녁에 comes before the object expressing place 구락부에서.

237 4. The position of the quotation

The quotation usually comes between the object and the predicate.

for example:

전사는 자기 이름을
[chonsanun chagi irumul
the soldier own name
박철수라고* 보고하였다.
pakcholsurago pogohayotda]
Pak Chol Su as reported

The soldier reported
his own name as Pak
Chol Su.

explanation:

* 박철수+라+고 (박철수-noun 라-low declarative form of

the final ending of the verbal form 고—copulative connecting ending)

The quotation 박철수라고 comes between the object 자기 이름을 and the predicate 보고하였다.

The expanded quotation comes before the object in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:

그 는 저녁식사전에 집에
[kunun chonyoksiksajone chibe
he supper before the house to
가야하므로 돌아가겠다고*
kayahamuro toragagetdago
has to go as would go back that
나에게 말했다.
naege malhaetda]
me to said

He said to me that he would go back because he had to go home before supper.

explanation:

* The expanded quotation 저녁식사전에 집에 가야하므로 돌아가겠다고 comes before the object 나에게 in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

238 5. The position of the adverbial modifier

The adverbial modifier usually comes after the subject, object and quotation.

for example:

만경봉에 아침노을이
[mangyongbong.e achimnouri
Mangyong Hill on the morning glow
아름답게* 비치였다.
arumdapge pichiyotda]
beautifully shone

The morning glow beautifully shone on Mangyong Hill.

explanation:

* 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful stem ending

아름답 + 게 (게—ending of the adverbial modifier)

The adverbial modifier 아름답게 comes after the object 만경봉에 and the subject 아침노을이.

At the beginning of the sentence come the modal adverbial modifiers such as 아마 [ama] "perhaps" 글썸 [kulsse] "perhaps", 결코 [kyolko] "never", 비록 [pirok] "even if", 아무리 [amuri] "however", 실로 [sillo] "really" and 물론 [mullon] "of course".

for example:

물론*	그도	옵니다.	Of course, he's coming, too.
[mullon	kudo	omnida]	
of course	he also	comes	

explanation:

*The modal adverbial modifier 물론 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

When two adverbial modifiers lie side by side before the predicate, the positions of the two adverbial modifiers are interchangeable.

for example:

○ 그는 말없이*	조용히	He hurried up the work in silence.
[kunun maropsi	choyong.i]	
he without word	still	
일을	다그쳤다.	
irul	taguchotda.]	
the work	hurried up	

explanation:

* 말 + 없이
noun adverb

○ 그는	조용히	He hurried up the work in silence.
[kunun	choyong.i]	
he	still	
말없이	일을	
maropsi	irul	
without word	the work	

다 그 쳤 다.
taguchotda]
hurried up

explanation:

The positions of the two adverbial modifiers 말없이 and 조용히 are interchangeable.

The adverbial modifier -적으로 [-joguro] usually comes before another adverbial modifier.

for example:

그 는 부모 에 게
[kunun pumoege
he the parents to
편 지 를
pyonjirul
the letter
정 상 적 으 로*
chongsangjoguro
a regular way in
꼭 쓴 다.
ggok ssunda]
surely writes

He regularly writes
the letter to his
parents without fail.

explanation:

*The adverbial modifier 정상적으로 comes before another adverbial modifier 꼭.

239 6. The position of the attribute

The attribute always comes before the part of sentence which it qualifies.

for example:

이 애 가 저 의*딸 입 니 다.
[i aega choui ddarimnida]
this child my daughter is

This child is my daughter.

explanation:

*The attribute 저의 lies before the verbal form 딸입니다 of the noun 딸.

When two attributes lie side by side, their positions are in-

terchangeable in consideration of their syntactic relations to the part of sentence which lies after them.

for example:

<p>○ 인민경제* [inmin.gyongje national economy of 모든 부문 modun pumun] all branch</p>	<p>all branches of the national economy</p>
---	---

explanation:

* The attribute 인민경제 is in the form of absolute case of genitive 인민경제의 of the noun 인민경제.

<p>○ 모든 [modun all 인민경제 부문 inmin.gyongje pumun] the national economy of the branch</p>	<p>all branches of the national economy</p>
--	---

explanation:

The positions of the attributes 인민경제 and 모든 are interchangeable.

When there are a verbal attribute and an adjectival attribute side by side, the verbal attribute comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

<p>잠자는*1 귀여운*2 애기 [chamjanun kwiyoun aegi] sleeping lovely baby</p>	<p>sleeping lovely baby</p>
---	-----------------------------

explanation:

*1 잠자 + 다[chamja da] sleep
stem ending

잠자+는 (는-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

*₂ 귀엽 + 다 [kwi-yop da] *lovely stem ending*

귀여+우+ㄴ [(ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*) after exchanging the sound ㅂ for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

귀여운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound ㄴ)
The verbal attribute 잠자는 comes before the adjectival attribute 귀여운.

When an attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive goes side by side with an adjectival attribute, the attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

당원 의* ₁	고귀한* ₂ 영예	the noble honour of a party member
[tang-wonui	kogwihan yong-e]	
a party member of noble	honour	

explanation:

*₁ 당원 + 의
noun genitive ending

*₂ 고귀하+다 [kogwiha da] *noble stem ending*

고귀하+ㄴ (ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*)

고귀한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

The attribute 당원의 in the form of the genitive of the noun 당원 comes before the adjectival attribute 고귀한.

When an adjectival attribute lies side by side with an attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal pronoun, the adjectival attribute comes before the attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal

pronoun.

for example:

영 광 스 러 운*₁
 [yong.gwangsuroun
 glorious
 우 리*₂ 조 국
 uri choguk]
 our fatherland

our glorious fatherland

explanation:

*₁ 영광스럽+다 [yong.gwangsurop da] glorious
 stem ending

영광스러+우+ㄴ [(ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*) after exchanging the sound ㅅ for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

영광스러운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound ㄴ)

*₂ The attribute 우리 is in the form of the absolute case of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리. The adjectival attribute 영광스러운 lies before the attribute 우리 in the form of the absolute case of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리.

The expanded attribute comes before another attribute in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:

나 라 와 인 민 의
 [narawa inminui
 the country and the people of
 재 산 을 아 끼 고
 chaesanul aggigo
 the property sparing and
 사 랑 하 는*₁ 고 상 한*₂ 품 성
 saranghanun kosanghan pumsong]
 loving noble character

the noble character of
 loving and setting sto-
 re by the property of
 the country and people

explanation:

*₁ 사랑하+다 [sarangha da] love
 stem ending

사랑하+는 (은-*attributive ending of the verb in its present tense*)

*₂ 교상하+다 [kosangha da] noble stem ending

교상하+ㄴ (ㄴ-*attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense*)

교상한 (*after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ*)

The expanded attribute 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하
는 comes before another attribute 교상한.

240 7. The position of the form of address, exclamatory word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended modifier
The form of address, exclamatory word, conjunctive or appended modifier usually comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

어머니* 아버지가
[omoni abojiga
mother father
돌아오십니다.
toraosimnida]
comes back

Mother! Father is back.

explanation:

* The form of address 어머니 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

The form of address or an exclamatory word comes also at the end of the sentence.

for example:

○ 아버지가
[abojiga
father
돌아오십니다. 어머니*
toraosimnida omoni]
comes back mother

Father is back, mother!

explanation:

* The exclamatory word 어머니 comes at the end of the sentence.

○ 우리 기어이 그대 품으로
[uri kioi kudae pumuro
we surely your bosom to
돌아가리라,
toragarira
go back will

We will surely go back
to your bosom,
our motherland!

어머니 조국이여*!
[omonijogugiyol
mother fatherland!

explanation:

* 어머니 + 조국 + 이여
noun noun vocative ending

The form of address 어머니조국이여 comes at the end of the sentence.

When the conjunctive performs its function of connecting two parts of sentence, it comes between them.

for example:

너와 나 그리고* 그는
[nowa na kurigo kunun
you and I and he
함께 간다.
hamgge kanda]
together go

You and I as well as
he go together.

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그리고 comes between the subject 나 and the subject 그.

LESSON 16

THE KINDS OF SENTENCES

241 Korean sentences are classified into five kinds ac-

ording to the state of things and the viewpoint of the speaker — declarative, interrogative, suggestive, imperative and exclamatory.

242 1. The declarative sentence

A declarative sentence expresses some statement in the affirmative or negative form.

for example:

저는 대학생입니다.
[chonun taehaksaeng·imnida]
I a student am

I am a student.

- 1) The declarative sentence contains the following contents of statement:

- (1) Some phenomenon, result or fact:

for example:

어린이들은 앞날의
[orinidurun amnarui
the children the future of
주인들이 다.
chuindurida]
the masters are

The children are
masters of the future.

- (2) Some work or action to be done obligatorily:

for example:

우리는
[urinun
we
로동안전규정을
rodong·anjon·gyujong·ul
the labour safety regulation
지켜야 한다.
chikyoya handa]
keep must

We must keep the
labour safety regula-
tions.

- (3) The estimation of some fact:

for example:

너는 공부를 잘 하였다.		You have studied well.
[nonun kongburul chal hayotda]		
you the study well did		

(4) The determination or intention of the speaker:

for example:

래일 저는 영국으로		Tomorrow I will return
[raeil chonun yong.guguro		to England.
tomorrow I England to		
돌아가겠습니다.		
[toragagetsumnida]		
go back will		

(5) The promise of the speaker to the person addressed:

for example:

래일 다시 오마*		Tomorrow I will come
[raeil tasi oma]		again.
tomorrow again come will		

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오+마(마-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 마 expresses the promise of an action foreseen in the future.

(6) The affirmation or negation of some fact or the word of some person:

① When the interrogator is superior to the person addressed:

for example:

○ 동무는 가오?		Are you going?
[tongmunun kao]		
comrade go?		

○ 너 는 가 니 ?
[nonun kani]
you go?

| Are you going?

예. [ye] Yes.

explanation:

예 is the answer that one will go.

아니요. [aniyo] No.

explanation:

아 니 + 요

(아니—adverb of negation 요—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

아니요 is the answer that one will not go.

○ 동 무 는 안 가 오 * ?
[tongmunun an.gao]
comrade not go?

| Aren't you going?

explanation:

* 안 + 가다 [an.gada] not go

(안—adverb of negation 가다—verb)

안+가+오(오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 너 는 안 가 니 * ?
[nonun an.gani]
you not go?

| Aren't you going?

explanation:

* 안 + 가 다

안 + 가 + 니(니—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

예.[ye] yes.

explanation:

예 is the answer that one will not go.

The answer 예 is the affirmation of "not go?".

In this case the answer in English would be "no".

아니요. [aniyo] No.

explanation:

아니요 is the answer that one will go.

The answer 아니요 is the negation of "not go?"

In this case the answer in English would be "yes"

② When the interrogator and the person addressed are on an equal footing:

for example:

○ (between friends)

동무 는 가 나 ?
[tongmunun kana]
you go?

Are you going?

○ (between children)

너 는 가 니 ?
[nonun kani]
you go?

Are you going?

응. [ung] yes.

explanation:

응 is the answer of one who will go.

아니. [ani] No.

explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

○ (between friends)

동무 는 안 가 나*?
[tongmunun an·gana]
you not go

Aren't you going?

explanation:

* 안+가다 [an gada] not go

(안—adverb of negation 가다—verb)

안+가+나

(나—middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ (between children)

너는 안가니*?

[nonun angani]

you not go?

Aren't you going?

explanation:

* 안+가다

안+가+니 (니 -low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

응[ung] Yes.

explanation:

응 is the answer of one who will not go.

The answer 응 is the affirmation of "not go?".

In this case the answer in English would be "no".

아니. [a ni] No.

explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will go.

The answer 아니 is the negation of "not go?".

In this case the answer in English would be "yes".

③ When the interrogator is inferior to the person addressed:

for example:

○ 당신은 가십니까?

[tangsinun kasimnigga]

you go?

Are you going?

○ 아버지는 가십니까?

[abojinun kasimnigga]

father goes?

Are you going, father?

응. [ung] Yes.

explanation:

응 is the answer of one who will go.

아니. [ani] No.

explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

- 당신 은
[tangsinun
you
안 가 십 니 까 *?
an. gasimnigga]
not go?

Aren't you going?

explanation:

* 안+가다

안+가+시+ㅂ니다

(시—ending of respect ㅂ니다—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

안가십니까(after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

- 아버지 는 안 가 십 니 까 ?
[abojinun an.gasimnigga]
father does not go?

Aren't you going, father?

응. [ung] Yes.

explanation:

응 is the answer of one who will not go.

The answer 응 is the affirmation of "not go? "

In this case the answer in English would be "no".

아니. [ani] No.

explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will go.

The answer 아니 is the negation of "not go? "

In this case the answer in English would be "yes".

(7) The declarative sentence only shows that there is a certain object.

for example:

군 중 의 물 결,
[kunjung·ui mulgyol
the masses of the wave

the streams of the
masses, the cheers of
joy

기쁨의	환호.
kibbumui	hwanho]
joy of	the cheer

- 2) The characteristics of the declarative sentence
The final predicate of the declarative sentence is usually expressed in the declarative form.

for example:

나는	조국으로
[nanun	choguguro
I	the fatherland to
돌아간다.*	
toraganda]	
go back	

I go back to the fatherland.

explanation:

* 돌아가 + 다 [toraga da] go back
stem ending

돌아가 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

돌아간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

돌아간다 is the declarative form of the verb 돌아가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the declarative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:

저녁	8시부터
[chonyok	yodolsibuto
evening	8 o'clock from
회의가	있음*.
hoeuiga	issum]
the meeting to be	

There is a meeting at 8 o'clock in the evening.

explanation:

* 있 + 다 [it da] be
stem ending

있+으+ㅁ (으-link-vowel ㅁ-exchanging ending)

있음(after contracting the syllable 으 and the sound ㅁ)

The final predicate 있음 is the substantive form of the verb 있다.

243 2. The interrogative sentence

The interrogative sentence means that the speaker asks another person something.

for example:

언 제 당 신 은
[onje tangsinun
when you
조 국 으 로
choguguro
the fatherland to
돌 아 가 십 니 까 ?
toragasimnigga]
return?

When do you return to
the fatherland?

1) The interrogative sentences are classified as follows according to their function and contents:

(1) The interrogative sentence which requires an answer from the person addressed

① The affirmation of some fact:

for example:

당 신 은 통 역 원 입 니 까 ?
[tangsinun tong.yogwon imnigga]
you an interpreter are?

Are you an inter-
preter?

예.
[ye]
yes

Yes.

② The answer to a concrete fact:

for example:

몇 시 입 니 까 ?
[myotsiimnigga]
how much time is?

What time is it?

5 시 입니다.
[tasotsiimnida]
five o'clock is

It is five o'clock.

(2) The interrogative sentence which doesn't require an answer from the person addressed

① It is required that the person addressed does some action.

for example:

애들아, 왜들* 아직
[aedura waedul ajik
children! why yet
학교에 안가니?
hakgyo·e an·gani]
school to not go?

Children! Why haven't you gone to school yet?

explanation:

* 왜 + 들
adverb plural ending

The plural ending 들 is attached to the adverb 왜 in order to emphasize the plural of "children".

The interrogative sentence has the instruction that the children should quickly go to school.

② A strong affirmation or negation for some fact is expressed.

for example:

너는 갈수 없단말이나*?
[nonun kalsu opdanmarinya]
you go can not?

Can't you go?

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

가+르+수 없다.

(르-*attributive ending of the verb in its future tense* 수-*incomplete noun* 없다-*adjective*)

갈+수 없+다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄹ)

갈+수 없+다+ㄴ 말+이+냐

(ㄴ - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense 말 - noun which is used as an auxiliary 이 - exchanging ending 냐 - low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

갈수 없단 말이냐 (after contracting the syllable 다 and the sound ㄴ)

말이냐 is a strong affirmation of 갈수 없다.

- 2) The characteristics of the interrogative sentence
The final predicate of the interrogative sentence is usually expressed in the interrogative form.

for example:

당신은 영국사람입니까*?	Are you an English?
[tangsinun yong 'guksaramimnigga]	
you an English are?	

explanation:

* 영국사람+이+ㅂ니까

(이 - exchanging ending ㅂ니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

영국사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound ㅂ)

영국사람입니까 is the interrogative form of the verbal form of the noun 영국사람.

But in some cases the final predicate of the interrogative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:

《네가 나의 친구의	As you are the son of my friend, I am very glad.
[nega naui chin·gu·ui	
you my friend of	
아들이라니*?	
adurirani]	
son are as ?	

정말 반갑다.》
 chongmal pangapda]
 really glad

explanation:

* 아들 + 이 + 라 + 니

(아들 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 니 - connecting ending of cause)

The final predicate 아들이라니 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 아들

244 3. The suggestive sentence

The suggestive sentence means that the speaker requires the person addressed to do some action together with him.

for example:

동무들 갑시다.
 [tongmudul kapsida]
 comrades let us go

Comrades, let us go!

1) The suggestive sentence contains the following:

(1) It is required to do some action together.

for example:

동무들 춤을 춥시다.
 [tongmudul chumul chupsida]
 comrades a dance let us dance

Comrades, let us dance!

(2) The person addressed is required to do some action.

for example:

박동무 줌
 [pakdongmu chom]
 Pak comrade a little

Comrade Pak, read a little slowly!

천천히 읽시다.
 chonchoni ilgupsida]
 slowly let us read

(3) One's own determination or one's own aim is expressed.

for example:

과학자가 되자!
 [kwahakjaga toeja
 scientist let us become
 이것이 나의 결심이었다.
 igosi naui kyolsimiyotda]
 it my determination was

To become a scientist!
 It was my determination.

2) The characteristics of the suggestive sentence
 The final predicate of the suggestive sentence is expressed in the suggestive form.

for example:

동무들, 노래합시다*
 [tongmudul noraehapsida]
 comrades let us sing

Comrades, let us sing!

explanation:

* 노래하+다[noraeha da] sing
 stem ending

노래하+ㅂ시다

(ㅂ시다—most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

노래합시다(after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅂ)

노래합시다 is the suggestive form of the verb 노래하다.

The suggestive sentence has its particular accent.

(1) The tone is even at the end of the sentence.

for example:

→
 가자!
 [kaja]
 let us go!

Let us go!

(2) The tone is even and short at the end of the sentence when a determination or aim is expressed.

for example:

동무들, 혁명을
[tongmudul hyongmyong-ul
comrades the revolution
위하여 우리와
uihayo uriwa
for us with
함께 싸웁시다.
hamgge ssaupsida]
together let us fight

Comrades, let us
fight together for the
revolution!

(3) When high requirements are expressed, the tone is loud and strong at the end of the sentence.

for example:

○ 자주성을 옹호하자.
[chajusong-ul onghohaja]
Chajusong let us defend

Let us defend
Chajusong!

○ 원수를 소멸하자.
[wonssurul somyolhaja]
the enemy let us annihilate

Let us smash the
enemy!

(4) When a recommendation or the request is expressed, the tone is relatively low and soft at the end of the sentence.

for example:

여기에서
[yogieso
this place in
이야기를 하자.
iyagirul haja]
the talk let us do

Let us talk here!

The imperative sentence means that the speaker makes the person addressed do a certain action.

for example:

곧 떠나시오.
[kot ddonasio]
at once leave!

Leave at once!

1) The imperative sentence contains the following:

(1) An order, instruction, prohibition or appeal is expressed.

for example:

자 세.
[chage]
sleep!

Sleep!

explanation:

자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending

자 + 세

(세 - middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

(2) Congratulations, a wish or a hope is expressed.

for example:

안녕히 가십시오.
[annyong-i kasipsio]
well go!

Good-bye!

(3) A request, recommendation or permission is expressed.

for example:

그렇게 하시오.
[kuroke hasio]
so do!

Do so!

2) The characteristics of the imperative sentence

The final predicate of the imperative sentence is usually expressed in the imperative form.

for example:

빨리	가라.*	Go quickly!
[bballi	kara]	
quickly	go!	

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 라

(라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

가라 is the imperative form of the verb 가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the imperative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

(1) In the form of 근것 [lgot]

for example:

모두	모일것.*	All should gather!
[modu	moilgot]	
all	gather!	

explanation:

* 모이 + 다 [moi da] gather
stem ending

모이 + 근 + 것

(근 - attributive ending of the verb in its future tense
것 - incomplete noun)

모일것 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 근)

The final predicate 모일것 is in the form of 근것.

(2) Without ending

for example:

빨리 빨리*
[bballi bballi]
quickly quickly

Hurry up!

explanation:

*The final predicate 빨리 is without ending.

(3) In the form of the instrumental of the noun

for example:

분대, 나를
[pundae narul
squad me
따라 앞으로*!
ddara apuro]
following forward!

Squad! Forward after me!

explanation:

* 앞 + 으 + 로

noun link-vowel instrumental ending

The final predicate 앞으로 is in the form of the instrumental of the noun 앞.

(4) By attaching ㅅ [s] to the connecting form of the verb ㅏ [a]/ ㅑ [o]/ ㅓ [yo]

for example:

ㅅ.
[sot]
stop!

Stop!

explanation:

ㅅ + 다 [so da] stop
stem ending

ㅅ + ㅏ

ㅅ(after contracting the syllable ㅅ and the sound ㅏ)

The final predicate ㅅ is formed by attaching ㅅ to the connecting form ㅅ of the verb ㅅ다.

246 5. The exclamatory sentence

The exclamatory sentence expresses some kind of emo-

tion or feeling.

for example:

오, 조국의	바다여!	Oh, the sea of the
[o chogugui	padayo]	fatherland!
oh the fatherland of the sea		

1) The exclamatory sentence contains the following:

(1) An emotion is expressed differently.

for example:

아, 동해가	보인다!	Ah, we see the East
[a tonghaega	poinda]	Sea!
ah the East Sea is seen!		

The sentence which contains 만세[manse] "hurrah" also belongs to the exclamatory sentence.

for example:

○ 만세!	Hurrah!
[manse]	
hurrah!	

○ 조선민주주의인민	Long live the Demo-
[choson·minjujuui·inmin·	cratic People's
the Democratic People's	Republic of Korea!
공화국 만세!	
[gonghwaguk manse]	
Republic of Korea long live!	

(2) Feelings such as respect, pride, congratulations, conviction and determination are expressed.

for example:

우리의 평양은	Our Pyongyang is
[uriui pyongyang·un	truly magnificent.
our Pyongyang	
참으로 웅장하구나*!	
[chamuro ungjanghaguna]	
truly magnificent!	

explanation:

* 웅장하+다 [ungjangha da] magnificent
stem ending

웅장하+구나

(구나—low declarative form of the final
ending of the adjective)

- 2) The characteristics of the exclamatory sentence
The exclamatory sentence has the emotional
accent.

for example:

동무들 ! 백두산이
[tongmudul paekdusani
comrades! Mt. Paekdu
보입니다 !
poimnida]
is in sight !

Comrades!
Here is Mt. Paekdu!

In many cases the exclamatory word is in the exclama-
tory sentence, too.

for example:

오, 조국이여 !
[o chogugiyo
oh fatherland!
영원히 번영하여라*!
yong-woni ponyonghayora]
forever prosper!

Oh, fatherland!
Prosper forever!

explanation:

* 번영하+다 [ponyongha da] prosper
stem ending

번영하+여라

(여라—low imperative form of the final ending
of the verb)

SIMPLE, COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

247 Sentences are classified into simple, compound and complex sentences according to the structure.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

248 The simple sentence has only one declarative unit.

for example:

저는 기사입니다.
[chonun kisaimnida]
I an engineer am

I am an engineer.

explanation:

There is only one declarative unit in the sentence 저는 기사입니다.

The simple sentences are classified as follows:

1. The common simple sentence

The common simple sentence consists of the parts of sentence in agreement.

for example:

우리는 평양으로
[urinun pyongyang.uro
we Pyongyang to
갑니다.
kamnida]
go

We go to Pyongyang.

explanation:

우리는, 평양으로 and 갑니다 are the parts of sentence in agreement.

2. The one-member sentence

The one-member sentence consists of one word.

for example:

당신은 갑니까?		Are you going?
[tangsinun kamnigga]		
you go?		
예.		Yes.
[ye]		
yes		

explanation:

예 is the one-member sentence.

3. The sentence of denomination

This is a sentence in which the object, the phenomenon or state is denominated and affirmed.

for example:

○ 조선로동당		the Workers' Party of
[chosonrodongdang]		Korea
○ 제 13 차 세계 청년 학생 축전		
[chesipsamcha.segye.chongnyonhaksaeng.chukjon]		
the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students		

4. The elliptical sentence

for example:

《우리는 래일		
[urinun raeil		
“we tomorrow		“... to Pyongyang by
밤 차로 평양으로...》		night train tomorrow.”
pamcharo pyongyang.uro		
night train by Pyongyang to...”		

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE AND COMPLEX SENTENCE

249 The compound sentence and complex sentence have two

or more declarative units in the sentence.

1. The compound sentence

The compound sentence consists of two or more coordinated simple sentences.

for example:

그는	어제	도착	하고		He arrived yesterday, and I arrived today.
[kunun	oje	tochakago			
he	yesterday	arrived and			
저는	오늘	도착	했습니다.		
chonun onul	tochakaetsumnida]				
I	today	arrived			

explanation:

The declarative units, 그는 어제 도착하고 and 저는 오늘 도착했습니다, in the sentence 그는 어제 도착하고 저는 오늘 도착했습니다 are connected to each other by the copulative connecting ending 고. But they have the same qualification.

2. The complex sentence

The complex sentence consists of a main declarative unit and one or more subordinate declarative units.

for example:

래일	날씨	가		If the weather is fine tomorrow, I will leave.	
[raeil	nalssiga				
tomorrow	the weather				
좋으면	나는	떠나			겠다.
choumyon	nanun	ddonagetda]			
good when	I	leave will			

explanation:

The declarative units, 래일 날씨가 좋으면 and 나는 떠나겠다, in the sentence 래일 날씨가 좋으면 나는 떠나겠다 are connected to each other by the connecting ending 면.

THE ORDER OF THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE AND THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

250 In Korean the subordinate clause always lies before the principal clause.

for example:

래 일	날 씨 가	좋 으 면	When the weather is fine tomorrow, we will leave.
[raeil	nalssiga	choumyon	
tomorrow	the weather	good when	
우 리 는	떠 나 겠 습 니 다.		
urinun	ddonagetsumnida]		
we	leave will		

explanation:

The subordinate clause 래일 날씨가 좋으면 lies before the principal clause 우리는 떠나겠습니다 in the sentence 래일 날씨가 좋으면 우리는 떠나겠습니다.

DIRECT SPEECH

251 Direct speech conveys the original speaker's exact words.

for example:

《가자!》	코* 그는 말 하 였 다.	He said: "Let us go!"
[kaja	ko kunun malhayotda]	
"let us go!"	he said	

explanation:

*코 is the copulative connecting ending.

The original speaker's words in direct speech are connected to the principal clause as follows:

1. The endings such as ㅁ [ko], 라고[rago] and 라[ra] come after the original speaker's words.

for example:

《가자!》고 그는 말하였다.		He said:
[kaja ko kunun malhayotda]		“Let us go!”
“let us go!” he said		

2. The word such as 하고[hago] and 이렇게[iroke] “so” comes after the original speaker’s words.

for example:

《가자!》 그는		He said:
[kaja kunun		“Let us go!”
“let us go!” he		
이렇게 말하였다.		
iroke malhayotda]		
so said		

3. The original speaker’s words are connected to the principal clause without any means.

for example:

《가자!》 그는 말하였다.		He said:
[kaja kunun malhayotda]		“Let us go!”
“let us go!” he said		

THE ORDER OF THE ORIGINAL SPEAKER’S WORDS IN DIRECT SPEECH

- 252 The original speaker’s words can lie before the principal clause, in the middle of the principal clause or after the principal clause.

1. The original speaker’s words come before the principal clause.

for example:

《너는 어디에 가니?》		He asked me:
[nonun odie kani		“Where are you going?”
you which place to go?		

라고	그는	나에게	물었다.
rago	kunun	na·ege	murotda]
	he	me to	asked

explanation:

The original speaker's words 《너는 어디에 가니?》 come before the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다 in the sentence 《너는 어디에 가니?》라고 그는 나에게 물었다.

2. The original speaker's words come in the middle of the principal clause.

for example:

그는	나에게	《너는
[kunun	na·ege	nonun
he	me to	"you
어디에		가니?》
odie		kani
which place to		go?"
라고	물었다.	
rago	murotda]	
	asked	

He asked me: "Where are you going?"

explanation:

The original speaker's words 《너는 어디에 가니?》 lie in the middle of the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다 in the sentence 그는 나에게 《너는 어디에 가니?》라고 물었다.

3. The original speaker's words lie after the principal clause.

for example:

그는	나에게	물었다.
[kunun	na·ege	murotda
he	me to	asked
《너는	어디에	가니?》
nonun	odie	kani]
"you	which place to	go?"

He asked me:
"Where are you going?"

explanation:

The original speaker's words 《너는 어디에 가니?》 lie

after the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다.

INDIRECT SPEECH

253 Indirect speech reports in one's own words what somebody has said.

for example:

그는	오겠다*	말	하였다.
[kunun	ogetdago	mal	hayotda]
he	come would that	said	

He said that he would come.

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending

오 + 겠 + 다 + 고

(*겠*-ending of the future tense *다*-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb *고*-copulative connecting ending)

THE CHANGING OF DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT SPEECH

254 Direct speech is changed into indirect speech according to the following rules:

1. Person, time, place and direction of the direct speech are changed in conformity with the reporter's point of view.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그는	《저도*1	래일*2
[kunun	chodo	raeil
he	“I also	tomorrow

He said: “I will also go to the library tomorrow.”

도서관에 가겠습니다*3》
 tosogwane kagetsumnida
 the library to go will”

라고 말하였다.
 rago malhayotda]
 said

○ Indirect speech

그는 자기도*1
 [kunun chagido
 he own also
 다음날*2 도서관에
 daumnal tosogwane
 next day the library to
 오겠다*3고
 ogetdago
 come would that
 말하였다.
 malhayotda]
 said

He said that he would
 also come to the
 library the next day.

explanation:

- *₁ 저도 in direct speech is changed into 자기도 in indirect speech.
- *₂ 래일 in direct speech is changed into 다음날 in indirect speech.
- *₃ 가겠습니다 indirect speech is changed into 오겠다 in indirect speech.

2. The different forms of courtesy in direct speech are changed into the low form of courtesy in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그는 《저도 래일
 [kunun chodo raeil
 he “I also tomorrow

He said: “I will also
 go to the library
 tomorrow.”

도서관에 가겠습니다*》
 dosogwane kagetsumnida
 the library to go will”
 라고 말하였다.
 rago malhayotda]
 said

○ Indirect speech

그는 자기도
 [kunun chagido
 he own also
 다음날 도서관에
 daumnal dosogwane
 next day the library to
 오겠다고* 말하였다.
 ogetdago malhayotda]
 come would that said

He said that he would
 also come to the library
 the next day.

explanation:

* 가겠습니다 in direct speech is the most deferential form of courtesy. 오겠다고 in indirect speech is the low form of courtesy.

3. The forms of address, exclamatory words and some other expressions in direct speech are changed into other expressions.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그는 《아*, 우리
 [kunun a uri
 he “ah our
 조국은 얼마나
 chogugun olmana
 fatherland how
 아름다운가!》라고
 arumdaun·ga rago
 beautiful!”
 말하였다.
 malhayotda]
 said

He said: “Ah, how
 beautiful our father-
 land is!”

○ Indirect speech

그 는 우리 조 국 은
 [kunun uri chogugun
 he our fatherland
 참으로* 아름답다고
 chamuro arumdapdago
 truly beautiful that
 말하였다.
 malhayotda]
 said

He said that our fatherland was truly beautiful.

explanation:

* The exclamatory word 아 in the direct speech is changed into the adverbial modifier 참으로 in the indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

그 는 《박동무*
 [kunun pakdongmu
 he "Pak comrade
 모 임 이 끝났습니까?》
 moimi ggunnatsumnigga
 the meeting finished?"
 라고 물었다.
 rago murotda]
 asked

He asked: "Comrade Pak, is the meeting over?"

○ Indirect speech

그 는 박동무에게*
 [kunun pakdongmuege
 he Pak comrade to
 모 임 이
 moimi
 the meeting
 끝났는가고 물었다.
 ggunnannun·gago murotda]
 finished whether asked

He asked Comrade Pak whether the meeting was over.

explanation:

* 박동무 in direct speech is changed into 박동무에게 in indirect speech.

4. The original speaker's words in more than one sentence in direct speech are changed into one quotation in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

《늦었다. 빨리가라*》 고
 [nujotda bballikara ko
 "late is fast go!"
 그는 말하였다.
 kunun malhayotda]
 he said

He said:
 "It is late. Hurry up!"

○ Indirect speech

늦었으니 빨리 가라고*
 [nujossuni bballi karago
 late is as fast go! that
 그는 말하였다.
 kunun malhayotda]
 he said

He said that I had to
 hurry up as it was
 late.

explanation:

* The original speaker's words in two sentences, 늦었다 and 빨리 가라 in direct speech are changed into one quotation phrase 늦었으니 빨리 가라고 in indirect speech.

5. The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech. 하고[hago] or 이렇게[iroke] "so" which are used as means of connecting the original speaker's words and the principal clause are also omitted.

for example:

○ Direct speech

《비가 온다.》 그는
 [piga onda kunun
 "rain comes " he
 이렇게 말하였다.
 iroke malhayotda]
 so said

He said:
 "It's raining"

○ Indirect speech

그는 비가 온다고
 [kunun piga ondago
 he the rain came that
 말하였다.
 malhayotda]
 said

He said that
 it was raining.

explanation:

The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech.

The word 이렇게 in direct speech is omitted in indirect speech.

TABLES OF ENDINGS

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE NOUN

number of the word to be declined case	singular	plural
nominative	께서 [ggeso], 가 [ga] / 이 [i]	께서 [ggeso], 이 [i]
accusative	를 [rul] (은) [i] / 을 [ul]	을 [ul]
genitive	의 [ui]	의 [ui]
dative	께 [gge], 에게 [ege], 에 [e]	께 [gge], 에게 [ege], 에 [e]

locative	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]	에게서[egeso], 에서[eso]
instrumental	로[ro]	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]/과[gwa]	과[gwa]
vocative	이시여[isiyo], 여[yo]/이여[iyo], 야[ya]/아[a]	이시여[isiyo], 이여[iyo], 아[a]

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF
THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

number of the word to be declined case	singular	plural
nominative	가[ga]	가[ga]/이[i]
accusative	를[rul](ㄹ)[l]	를[rul](ㄹ)[l]/ 을[ul]
genitive	의[ui]	의[ui]
dative	에게[ege]	에게[ege]
locative	에게서[egeso]	에게서[egeso]
instrumental	로[ro]	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]	와[wa]/과[gwa]
vocative	여[yo]	여[yo]/이여[iyo]

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN WHICH INDICATES PLACE

number of the word to be declined case	singular
nominative	가[ga]
accusative	를[rul] (르[l])
genitive	의[ui]
dative	에[e]
locative	에서[eso]
instrumental	로[ro]
coordinative case	와[wa]
vocative	여[yo], 야[ya]

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

ending case	ending which is used as the case ending
nominative	란[ran]/이란[iran]
dative	더러[doro], 한데[hante]
coordinative case	랑[rang]/이랑[irang], 하고[hago]
others	보다 [boda], 처럼[chorom], 마냥 [manyang], 마다[mada]

TABLE OF THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS

courtesy for	the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	1) 습니다[sum nida]/ 받니다 [mnida] 2) 답니다 [damnida] 3) 습디다[sup tida]/ 받디다 [ptida] 4) 답디다 [daptida] 5) 아요 [ayo]/ 어요 [oyo]/ 여요 [yoyo]	1) 오[o]/ 소 [so] 2) 다오[dao] 3) 네 [ne], 다네 [dane] 4) 데[de], 습데 [supte]/ 받데 [pte] 5) 군 [gun], 구려[guryo], 구만[guman], 더군[dogun], 더구만[dogu- man] 6) 지 [ji] 7) 아[a]/어[o] /여[yo] 8) 는걸 [nun- gol], 던걸[don·gol], 르걸 [lkol] 9) 는데 [nunde], 던데 [donde] 10) 더니 [doni], 더라니 [dora ni],	1) 다 [da], 단다[danda] 2) 도다[doda], 아라[ara]/ 어라[ora]/ 여라[yora] 3) 구나[guna], 더구나 [doguna] 4) 노라[nora], 더라[dora]

		더라니까 [doranigga] 11) 거던 [godon] 12) 리 [ri], 리라 [rira], 리다 [rida] 13) 다구야 [daguya]	
the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral		1) L결 [n·gol] 2) L데 [nde]	
the verb		1) 누만 [numan] 2) 르게 [lge], 르래 [llae]	1) 누나 [nuna] 2) 르라 [lla] 3) 마 [ma]
the adjective		르시고 [lsgo]	
the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	1) 랍니다 [ramnida] 2) 랍디다 [raptida] 3) 야요 [yayo]	1) 요 [yo] 2) 라오 [rao] 3) 라네 [rane] 4) 로군 [rogun], 로구만 [roguman] 5) 야 [ya] 6) 라구야 [raguya]	1) 라 [ra], 란다 [randa] 2) 로다 [roda] 3) 로구나 [roguna]

TABLE OF THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS

courtesy for	the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	1) 습니까 [sum nigga]/ ㅁ니까[mnigga] 2) 답니까 [damnigga] 3) 습디까 [suptigga]/ ㅁ디까 [ptigga] 4) 답디까 [daptigga] 5) 리까 [rigga]	1) 나 [na] 2) 는가 [nun·ga], 던가[don·ga], 르가[lga] 3) 다지 [daji] 4) 는지 [nunji], 던지 [donji], 르지 [lji], 르는지[lunji]	1) 느냐 [nunya] 더냐 [donya] 르소냐 [lsonya] 2) 라 [rya] 3) 니 [ni]
the adject- ive and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral		1) 니가 [n·ga] 2) 니지 [nji]	냐 [nya]
the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	랍니까 [ramnigga], 랍디까 [raptigga]	라지 [raji]	

TABLE OF THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE VERB

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
1) ㅂ시다 [psida] 2) 자구요 [jaguyo], 자요 [jayo]	1) 세 [se] 2) ㅂ세 [pse] 3) 자구 [jagu]	1) 자 [ja] 2) 자구나 [jaguna]

TABLE OF THE IMPERATIVE FINAL
ENDINGS OF THE VERB

the most deferential form	middle form of courtesy	low form of courtesy
1) 십시오 [sipsio], 세요 [seyo] 2) 라구요 [raguyo], 라요 [rayo]	1) 시오 [sio] 2) 게 [ge] 3) 구려 [guryo], 라구 [ragu]	1) 라 [ra] 2) 아라 [ara]/ 어라 [ora]/ 여라 [yora] 3) 려무나 [ryomuna] 4) 렴 [ryom], 렴아 [ryoma]

TABLE OF THE CONNECTING ENDINGS OF THE
VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE
NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

classification		connecting ending
coordinative	copulative	(1) 고 [go] (2) 며 [myo], 면서 [myonso] (3) 르뿐더러 [lbundoro] (4) 거니와 [goniwa], 려니와 [ryoniwa]

	adversative	<p>(1) 나[na], 되[doe]</p> <p>(2) 지만[jiman], 지마는[jimanun], 건만[gonman], 건마는[gonmanun], 련만[ryonman], 련마는[ryonmanun]</p> <p>(3) ㄴ데[nde], 는데[nunde], 던데[donde]</p> <p>(4) ㄴ바[nba], 는바[nunba]</p>
	disjunctive	<p>(1) 나[na], 건[gon], 든[dun]</p> <p>(2) 거나[gona], 든지[dunji], 든가[dun·ga]</p> <p>(3) 거니[goni], ㄹ라[lla]</p>
subordinative	condition	<p>(1) 면[myon], 거든[godun], 느라면[nuramyon], 더라면[doramyon], ㄹ라면[llamyon], 자면[jamyon]</p> <p>(2) 아도[ado]/어도[odo]/여도[yodo], 더라도[dorado]</p> <p>(3) ㄹ 망정[lmangjong], ㄹ 지연정[ljionjong], ㄹ 지라도[ljirado]</p> <p>(4) 기로[giro], 기로서니[girosoni]</p> <p>(5) ㄴ들[ndul], 던들[dondul]</p> <p>(6) 나마[nama]</p> <p>(7) 아야[aya]/어야[oya]/여야[yoya]</p>
	cause	<p>(1) 므로[muro]</p> <p>(2) 니[ni], 니까[nigga], 느라니[nurani], 느라니까[nuranigga]</p>

		(3) 더니[doni] (4) ㄴ만큼[nmankum], ㄴ즉[njuk], ㄴ만큼[nunmankum], ㄴ니만큼[nunimankum], 던만큼[donmankum] (5) 기에[gie], 길래[gillae], 거늘[gonul]
	order	(1) 다[da], 다가[daga] (2) 자[ja] (3) 고서[goso]
	method or means	아[a]/어[o]/여[yo]
	purpose or intention	(1) 려[ryol], 려고[ryogo], 자고[jago], 고서[gojo], 느라고[nurago] (2) 러[ro]
	negation	지[ji]

TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE VERB

attributive ending of the verb	tense
ㄴ[nun]	present
ㄴ[n]	past
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF
THE ADJECTIVE

attributive ending of the adjective	tense
ㄴ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE
VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN
OR NUMERAL

attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral	tense
ㄴ[n]	present
던[don]	past continuous
ㄹ[l]	future

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE ADVERBIAL
MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective
1. 게 [ge], 도록[dorok] 2. 듯[dut], 듯이[dusi] 3. ㄹ수록[lsurok]

TABLE OF THE TENSE ENDINGS

tense / name	present	past	future
tense ending	zero ending	았[at], 었[ot], 였[jot]	겠[get]

TABLE OF THE ENDING OF RESPECT

ending of respect	시[si]
-------------------	-------

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE VOICE

ending / form	passive form	causative form
ending of the voice	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 기우[giu], 히우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu]	이[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 구[gu] 추[chu], 우[u], 기우[giu], 히우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu], 으키[uki], 이키[iki]

TABLE OF THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

ending / for	verbal form	substantive
exchanging ending	이[i]	ㅁ[m], 기[gi]

TABLE OF THE AUXILIARY ENDINGS

meaning \ ending	auxiliary ending
relation of inclusion	도[do] also, 마저[majo] also, 조차 [jocha] also
relation of restriction	만[man] only
relation of limitation	부터[buto] from, 까지[ggaji] till
relation of indication	는[nun](L [n])/은[un]
relation of emphasis	야[ya]/이야[iya]
relation of concession	나[na]/이나[ina], 나마[nama]/이나마[inama], 라도[rado]/이라도[irado]
relation of negation	커녕[konyong]

SUBJECT INDEX

The numerals indicate the paragraphs and others indicate the pages.

- absolute tenses 162 216
- accusative 18 80
- active voice 175 230
- adjective 76 124
- adverb 126 175
- adverbial modifier 209 286
- adversative connecting endings 131 181
- agreement of parts of sentence 229 303
- agreement in expressions of respect and
courtesy 230 304
- agreement in the adverbial modifier and other
parts of sentence 231 307
- agreement in interrogative words and other
parts of sentence 232 307
- agreement in the forms of address and other
parts of sentence 233 308
- appended modifier 221 298
- attribute 211 289
- attributive form of the verb 147 202
- attributive form of the adjective 149 206
- attributive form of the verbal form of the
noun, pronoun or numeral 151 208
- auxiliary endings 185 242
- cardinal numbers 115 162
- causative form 177 233
- change of sounds 12 24
- changing of direct speech into indirect
speech 254 345

● classification of the predicates 202	269
● compound sentence and complex sentence 249	340
● conjunctive 219	296
● connecting endings of condition 134	184
● connecting endings of cause 135	186
● connecting endings of order 136	188
● connecting endings of method or means 137	189
● connecting endings of purpose or intention 138	190
● connecting ending of negation 139	191
● connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 128	178
● consonants 8	16
● coordinative case 23	85
● coordinative connecting endings 129	178
● copulative connecting endings 130	179
● counting words 117	166
● courtesy 168	223
● courtesy of the final ending of the verb 74	122
● courtesy of the final ending of the adjective 81	129
● courtesy of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 88	136
● dative 20	81
● declarative final endings to the verb 90	137
● declarative final endings to the adjective 92	141
● declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 94	143
● declarative sentence 242	321
● declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given 25	87

● declension of a word which ends in a vowel 26	87
● declension of a word which ends in a consonant 27	88
● declension of a noun in the plural 28	89
● declension of a word in the plural to which a sense of respect is given 29	90
● declension of a word in the plural which indicates an animate being 30	90
● declension of a word in the plural which indicates an inanimate being 31	91
● declension of the personal pronoun 40	98
● declension of the personal pronoun 저[cho] "I" 41	98
● declension of the personal pronoun 나[na] "I" 42	99
● declension of the personal pronoun 저희[chohui] "we" 43	99
● declension of the personal pronoun 우리[uri] "we" 44	100
● declension of the personal pronoun 너[no] "you" 45	101
● declension of the personal pronoun 너희[nohui] "you" 46	102
● declension of the noun 당신[tangsin] "you" 47	103
● declension of 그[ku] "he" 48	104
● declension of 그 여자[ku nyoja] "she" 49	105
● declension of 그것[kugot] "it" 50	105
● declension of 그들[kudul] "they" 51	105
● declension of 그 녀자들[ku nyojadul] "they" 52	106

● declension of 그것들[kugotdul] "they" 53	106
● declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object isn't 60	111
● declension of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] "he" 61	112
● declension of 그들[kudul] "they" 62	112
● declension of 이들[idul] "these men" 63	113
● declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates the place 64	113
● declension of the interrogative pronoun 101	151
● demonstrative pronoun 57	109
● difference between the auxiliary endings and the case endings 186	243
● diphthongs 5	13
● direct speech 251	342
● disjunctive connecting endings 132	183
● division of the demonstrative pronouns 58	110
● division of the verbal forms of the noun, pronoun or numeral 84	132
● division of the pre-nouns 144	201
● division of the auxiliary endings 187	244
● endings are attached one by one 192	254
● endings which are used as case endings 189	248
● exchange of sounds 196	260
● exchanging ending 180	237
● exchanging ending ㅇ[i] 181	237
● exchanging endings □[m], 기[gi] 182	238
● exclamatory word 217	295
● exclamatory sentence 246	336
● expanded part of sentence 200	268
● expanded part of sentence 222	299
● expanded predicate 223	299

● expanded subject 224	300
● expanded object 225	300
● expanded quotation 226	301
● expanded adverbial modifier 227	302
● expanded attribute 228	302
● expression of the voice in another way 178	234
● expression of the object 206	282
● expression of the quotation 208	284
● expression of the adverbial modifier 210	286
● expression of the attribute 212	290
● expression of the form of address 214	293
● expression of the parenthesis 216	294
● expression of the exclamatory word 218	295
● expression of the conjunctive 220	297
● final ending of the verb 72	120
● final ending of the adjective 79	128
● final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 86	134
● final form of the verb 71	120
● final form of the adjective 78	127
● final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 85	133
● form of address 213	292
● form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 153	211
● formation of the adverb from the adjective 127	177
● forms of the verb 70	117
● forms of the adjective 77	124
● gender and article aren't 14	78
● genitive 19	80
● genitive of the personal pronoun 54	107

● he, she, it, they 39	97
● imperative final endings of the verb 121	172
● imperative sentence 245	333
● incomplete noun 118	168
● indirect speech 253	345
● infinitive 69	117
● instrumental 22	83
● interjection 146	202
● interrogative final endings to the verb 102	151
● interrogative final endings to the adjective 104	153
● interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 106	156
● interrogative pronoun 99	147
● interrogative sentence 243	328
● intonation of a sentence 13	31
● kinds of sentences 241	320
● Korean alphabet 2	12
● Korean alphabet table 1	10
● link-vowels ㅏ [i] and ㅜ [u] 194	256
● locative 21	82
● mood of the final ending of the verb 73	121
● mood of the final ending of the adjective 80	128
● mood of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 87	135
● nominative 17	79
● numeral 114	162
● object 205	279
● order of the predicate 33	93
● order of the subject 34	93
● order of the genitive 35	94
● order of the object 36	94

• order of the genitive of the personal pronoun 56	108
• order of the adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 66	115
• order of the attribute 67	116
• order of the adverbial modifier 68	116
• order of the declarative final form of the verb in the sentence 96	145
• order of the declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence 97	146
• order of the declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence 98	146
• order of the interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence 108	158
• order of the interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence 109	159
• order of the interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence 110	159
• order of the form of address in the sentence 112	161
• order of the interjection in the sentence 113	161
• order of the suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence 123	173
• order of the imperative final form of the verb in the sentence 124	174
• order of the adjectival cardinal number 125	174
• order of the connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 141	194
• order of the attributive form of the verb 155	213

• order of the attributive form of the adjective 156	213
• order of the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 157	214
• order of the form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 158	214
• order of the pre-noun 159	215
• order of the interjection in the sentence 160	215
• order of the ending of the tense 172	228
• order of the ending of respect 173	229
• order of the principal clause and the subordinate clause 250	342
• order of the original speaker's words in direct speech 252	343
• ordinal numbers 116	164
• pairs of endings 193	254
• parenthesis 215	293
• parts of sentence 197	266
• passive voice 176	231
• personal pronouns 37	95
• plural of the noun 15	78
• plural ending 16	78
• position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence 111	160
• position of the adverb 142	194
• position of the predicate 234	309
• position of the subject 235	309
• position of the object 236	310
• position of the quotation 237	312
• position of the adverbial modifier 238	313
• position of the attribute 239	315
• position of the form of address, exclamatory	

word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended	
modifier 240	319
● predicate 201	269
● pre-noun 143	200
● pronunciation of vowels 6	13
● pronunciation of consonants 9	16
● quotation 207	283
● relation between respect and courtesy 169	225
● relation in the meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate 203	273
● relative tenses 163	218
● respect 167	223
● simple vowels 4	13
● simple part of sentence and expanded part of sentence 198	267
● simple part of sentence 199	267
● simple, compound and complex sentences 247	339
● simple sentence 248	339
● stem and ending 191	251
● subdivision of the final endings of the verb 75	123
● subdivision of the final endings of the adjective 82	130
● subdivision of the final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 89	137
● subject 204	276
● subordinative connecting endings 133	184
● suggestive final endings of the verb 119	170
● suggestive sentence 244	331
● syllables 11	22

● table of the endings of the case of the noun 32	92
● table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun 55	108
● table of the demonstrative pronouns 59	111
● table of the endings of the case of the demon- strative pronoun which indicates place 65	115
● table of the declarative final endings of the verb 91	140
● table of the declarative final endings of the adjective 93	143
● table of the declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 95	145
● table of the interrogative pronouns 100	150
● table of the interrogative final endings of the verb 103	153
● table of the interrogative final endings of the adjective 105	155
● table of the interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 107	158
● table of the suggestive final endings of the verb 120	171
● table of the imperative final endings of the verb 122	173
● table of the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 140	192
● table of the attributive endings of the verb 148	206
● table of the attributive endings of the	

adjective 150	208
● table of the attributive endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 152	210
● table of the endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 154	213
● table of the tense endings 166	222
● table of the ending of respect 171	228
● table of endings of the voice 179	236
● table of the exchanging endings 184	242
● table of auxiliary endings 188	248
● table of the endings which are used as case endings 190	251
● tenses 161	216
● tenses which are expressed by other methods 165	221
● use of the pre-noun 145	201
● use of the exchanging endings 183	240
● using tense endings 164	219
● verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 83	130
● vocal harmony 195	258
● vocative 24	85
● voice 174	230
● vowels 3	13
● words which have the meaning of respect 170	226
● writing of vowels 7	16
● writing of consonants 10	22
● you 당신[tangsin] 38	97

ABBREVIATIONS:

<i>a</i> adjective	<i>int</i> interjection
<i>ad</i> adverb	<i>loc</i> locative
<i>ad fo</i> adverbial form	<i>n</i> noun
<i>att fo</i> attributive form	<i>num</i> numeral
<i>aux end</i> auxiliary ending	<i>pass</i> passive
<i>causat v</i> causative verb	<i>pl</i> plural
<i>con fo</i> connecting form	<i>pre-n</i> pre-noun
<i>dat</i> dative	<i>pron</i> pronoun
<i>end</i> ending	<i>sg</i> singular
<i>gen</i> genitive	<i>v</i> verb
<i>imp fo</i> imperative form	<i>vi</i> intransitive verb
<i>incomp n</i> incomplete noun	<i>vt</i> transitive verb
<i>inst</i> instrumental	

KOREAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

ㄱ [k]

가극 [kaguk] <i>n</i> opera	가족 [kajok] <i>n</i> family
가늘다 [kanulda] <i>a</i> thin	가지 [kaji] <i>n</i> branch
가능성 [kanungsong] <i>n</i> possibility	가지다 [kajida] <i>vt</i> have
가다 [kada] <i>vi</i> go	가제 [kaje] <i>n</i> gauze
가다 [kada] <i>vi</i> go	[bage]
가두배추 [kadubaechu] <i>n</i> cab-	가치담배 [kachidambae] <i>n</i> ciga-
가득하다 [kadukada] <i>a</i> full	가책 [kachaek] <i>n</i> remorse
가령 [karyong] <i>ad</i> if	가까이 [kaggai] <i>ad</i> near
가르치다 [karuchida] <i>vt</i> teach	가을 [kaul] <i>n</i> autumn
가르침 [karuchim] <i>n</i> teaching	각서 [kakso] <i>n</i> note
가방 [kabang] <i>n</i> bag	각서교환 [kaksogyohwan] <i>n</i> ex-
가볍다 [kabyopda] <i>a</i> light	change of notes
가수 [kasu] <i>n</i> singer	간고하다 [kan·gohada] <i>a</i> arduous
가슴 [kasum] <i>n</i> breast	간장 [kanjang] <i>n</i> soy
가장 [kajang] <i>ad</i> most	간판 [kanpan] <i>n</i> sign
가져다주다 [kajyodajuda] <i>vt</i> bring	간호원 [kanhowon] <i>n</i> nurse
가져오다 [kajyooda] <i>vt</i> bring; fetch	간이식당 [kanisikdang] <i>n</i> snack

bar
 갈다 [kalda] *vt* till
 갈라지다 [kallajida] *vi* divide
 갈림길 [kallimgil] *n* forked road
 감기 [kamgi] *n* cold
 감기 들다 [kamgi dulda] *phrase*
 catch cold
 감다 [kamda] *vt* wind
 감사 [kamsa] *n* thank
 감탄하다 [kamtanhada] *vi* admire
 값 [kap] *n* price
 강 [kang] *n* river
 강냉이 [kangnaeng·i] *n* maize
 강령 [kangryong] *n* programme
 강물 [kangmul] *n* water of river
 강좌 [kangjwa] *n* chair
 강철 [kangchol] *n* steel
 강토 [kangto] *n* territory
 강연 [kang·yon] *n* lecture
 같다 [katda] *a* same
 같이 [kachi] *ad* as
 거기 [kogi] *pron* that place
 거기에 [kogie] *pron dat* there
 거대하다 [kodaehada] *a* great
 거리 [kori] *n* street
 거절하다 [kojohlada] *vt* refuse
 거주지 [kojuji] *n* place of resid-
 거주하다 [kojuhada] *vt* live [ence
 거의 [kou] *ad* almost
 건강 [kon·gang] *n* health
 건강하다 [kon·ganghada] *a* healthy
 건너가는곳 [konnoganun·got] *n*
 crossing
 건넌다 [konnuda] *vi, vt* cross
 건능길 [konnumgil] *n* crosswalk
 건설 [konsol] *n* construction
 건설되다 [konsoldoeda] *vi* be built

건설하다 [konsolhada] *vt* build
 걷다 [kotda] *vi* walk
 걸다 [kolda] *vt* hang
 걸리다 [kollida] *vi* take, need
 걸상 [kolsang] *n* chair
 검다 [komda] *a* black
 것 [kot] *incomp n* thing
 겨우 [kyou] *ad* barely, hardly
 겨울 [kyoul] *n* winter
 견학 [kyonhak] *n* observation-
 study
 견해 [kyonhae] *n* view
 결과 [kyolgwa] *n* result
 결심하다 [kyolsimhada] *vi, vt*
 determine
 결정적 [kyoljongjok] *n* decisive
 결정하다 [kyoljonghada] *vt* decide
 결코 [kyolko] *ad* never
 결합 [kyolhap] *n* combination
 겸 [kyom] *ad* concurrently
 겸손하다 [kyomsonhada] *a* modest
 경공업 [kyong·gong·op] *n* light
 industry
 경기장 [kyong·gijang] *n* stadium
 경제 [kyongje] *n* economy
 경제적 [kyongjejok] *n* economic
 경축하다 [kyongchukada] *vt* con-
 gratulate
 경치 [kyongchi] *n* scenery
 경험 [kyonghom] *n* experience
 경음악 [kyong·umak] *n* light
 music [respect
 경애하다 [kyong·aehada] *vi, vt*
 겪다 [kyokda] *vt* experience
 고기 [kogi] *n* meat
 고귀하다 [kogwihada] *a* precious
 고동치다 [kodongchida] *vi* pulsate

고르다 [koruda] *vt* assort
 고맙다 [komapda] *a* thankful
 고상하다 [kosanghada] *a* lofty
 고전음악 [kojonumak] *n* classical music
 고치다 [kochida] *vt* repair
 고향 [kohyang] *n* native place
 고요하다 [koyohada] *a* still
 곧 [kot] *ad* immediately; namely
 곧다 [kotda] *a* straight
 곧바로 [kotbaro] *ad* straight
 골 [kol] *n* valley
 골동품 [koldongpum] *n* curio
 골짜기 [koljjagi] *n* valley
 곱다 [kopda] *a* beautiful
 곳 [kot] *n* place
 공 [kong] *n* ball
 공기 [kong.gi] *n* air
 공개적 [kong.gaejok] *n* open
 공민 [kongmin] *n* citizen
 공부 [kongbu] *n* study
 공부하다 [kongbuhada] *vt* study
 공산주의 [kongsanjuui] *n* communism
 [munist
 공산주의자 [kongsanjuuija] *n* communist
 공산주의적 [kongsanjuuijok] *n* communist
 공식적 [kongsikjok] *n* official
 공장 [kongjang] *n* factory
 공장대학 [kongjangdaehak] *n* university-level factory college
 공장대학생 [kongjangdaehaksae
 ng] *n* student at a university-level factory college
 공포 [kongpo] *n* fear
 공화국 [konghwaguk] *n* republic
 공업 [kong.op] *n* industry

공업국가 [kong.opgukga] *n* industrial state
 공업화 [kong.opwa] *n* industrialization
 공연 [kong.yon] *n* performance
 공연순서 [kong.yonsunso] *n* programme
 [form
 공연하다 [kong.yonhada] *vt* perform
 공원 [kong.won] *n* park
 교과서 [kyogwaso] *n* textbook
 교시 [kyosi] *n* instruction, teaching
 교실 [kyosil] *n* classroom
 교장 [kyojang] *n* principal
 교조주의 [kyojojuui] *n* dogmatism
 교통 [kyotong] *n* communication
 교훈 [kyohun] *n* lesson
 교환 [kyohwan] *n* exchange
 교환수 [kyohwansu] *n* telephone operator
 [change
 교환하다 [kyohwanhada] *vt* exchange
 교양 [kyoyang] *n* education
 교양자 [kyoyangja] *n* educator
 교양하다 [kyoyanghada] *vt* educate
 교육 [kyoyuk] *n* education
 교육하다 [kyoyukada] *vt* educate
 교육학 [kyoyukak] *n* pedagogy
 교예 [kyoye] *n* circus
 교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] *n* circus
 교원 [kyowon] *n* teacher
 구 [ku] *num* nine
 구강과의사 [kugang.gwauisa] *n* dentist
 구경 [kugyong] *n* sightseeing
 구경하다 [kugyonghada] *vt* see
 구라파 [kurapa] *n* Europe

구라파음식 [kurapaumsik] *n* European food
 구락부 [kurakbu] *n* club (house)
 구름 [kurum] *n* cloud 「guish
 구별하다 [kubyolhada] *vt* distin-
 구십 [kusip] *num* ninety
 구호 [kuho] *n* slogan
 구월 [kuwol] *n* September
 국 [kuk] *n* soup
 국가 [kukga] *n* state, country
 국기 [kukgi] *n* national flag
 국방 [kukbang] *n* national de-
 국수 [kuksu] *n* noodle 「fence
 국적 [kukjok] *n* nationality
 국제적 [kukjejok] *n* interna-
 tional 「tionalism
 국제주의 [kukjejuui] *n* interna-
 국제주의적 [kukjejuuijok] *n* in-
 ternational
 국제친선전람관 [kukje.chinson.
 jollamgwang] *n* International
 Friendship Exhibition
 국제우편국 [kukje.upyon.guk] *n*
 International Post Office
 군 [kun] *n* county
 군국주의 [kun.gukjuui] *n* milit-
 arism 「litarist
 군국주의자 [kun.gukjuuija] *n* mi-
 군관 [kun.gwan] *n* officer
 군대 [kundae] *n* army
 군사적 [kunsajok] *n* military
 군중 [kunjung] *n* masses
 군중대회 [kunjungdaehoe] *n*
 mass meeting
 군빵 [kunbbang] *n* toast
 군인 [kunin] *n* army man
 굳게 [kutge] *a ad fo* firmly
 굳다 [kutda] *a* hard, firm

굴 [kul] *n* oyster
 굴다 [kulda] *vi* roll
 굴복하다 [kulbokada] *vi* submit
 굴하다 [kulhada] *vi* submit
 굵다 [kukda] *a* thick
 궁전 [kungjon] *n* palace
 규률 [kyuyul] *n* discipline
 규정 [kyujong] *n* rules
 귤 [kyul] *n* orange
 그 [ku] *pron* he; that
 그것 [kugot] *incomp n* with
pron it, that 「she
 그 여자 [kunyolja] *n* with *pron*
 그들 [kudul] *pron* they
 그대 [kudae] *pron* you
 그러나 [kurona] *ad* but
 그러니까 [kuronigga] *a con fo*
 therefore
 그런데 [kuronde] *a con fo* but
 그렇게 [kuroke] *a ad fo* so
 그렇다 [kurota] *a* so 「but
 그렇지만 [kurochiman] *a con fo*
 그리고 [kurigo] *v con fo* and
 그림 [kurim] *n* picture 「book
 그림책 [kurimchaek] *n* picture
 그림엽서 [kurimyopso] *n* picture
 postcard
 그저께 [kujogge] *n* the day be-
 fore yesterday
 그뿐아니라 [kubbunanira] *phrase*
 besides
 극장 [kukjang] *n* theatre
 근로자 [kulloja] *n* working people
 근본 [kunbon] *n* foundation
 글 [kul] *n* letter; sentence
 글자 [kulja] *n* letter
 글씨 [kulssi] *n* handwriting.

글썸 [kulsse] *int* perhaps
 금 [kum] *n* gold
 금강산 [kumgangsán] *n* Mt. Kumgang
 금요일 [kumyoil] *n* Friday
 급행열차 [kupaengryolcha] *n* ex-
 기계 [kigye] *n* machine [press
 기계화하다 [kigyehwahada] *vt*
 mechanize
 기관 [kigwan] *n* organ
 기념 [kinyom] *n* commemoration
 기념관 [kinyomgwán] *n* memori-
 al house
 기념비 [kinyombi] *n* monument
 기념품 [kinyompum] *n* souvenir
 기능 [kinung] *n* function
 기다 [kida] *vi* crawl
 기다리다 [kidarida] *vt* wait
 기다림칸 [kidarimkan] *n* waiting
 room
 기록 [kirok] *n* record
 기름 [kirum] *n* oil
 기발 [kibbal] *n* flag
 기본 [kibon] *n* basis
 기사 [kisa] *n* engineer; article
 기술 [kisul] *n* technique
 기술자 [kisulja] *n* technician
 기술혁명 [kisulhyongmyong] *n*
 technical revolution
 기자 [kija] *n* journalist
 기적 [kijok] *n* wonder
 기지 [kiji] *n* base
 기차 [kicha] *n* train
 기초 [kicho] *n* foundation, basis
 기치 [kichi] *n* flag
 기침 [kichim] *n* cough
 기침하다 [kichimhada] *vi* cough
 기후 [kihu] *n* climate

기꺼이 [kiggoi] *ad* with pleasure
 기쁘다 [kibbuda] *a* joyful; glad
 기쁨 [kibbum] *n* joy
 기어이 [kioi] *ad* at any cost
 기업소 [kiopso] *n* enterprise
 기원 [kiwon] *n* era
 긴양말 [kinyangmal] *n* stockings
 길 [kil] *n* road
 길다 [kilda] *a* long
 길이 [kiri] *n* length
 김 [kim] *n* steam
 김일성경기장 [Kim Il Sung gyong
 .gijang] *n* Kim Il Sung
 Stadium
 깊다 [kipda] *a* deep
 깊이¹ [kipi] *n* depth
 깊이² [kipi] *ad* deeply
 개¹ [kae] *incomp n* piece
 개² [kae] *n* dog
 개다 [kaeda] *vi* clear up
 개선문 [kaesonmun] *n* Arch of
 Triumph
 개이다 [kaeida] *vi* clear up
 개인 [kaein] *n* individual
 개인용품 [kaeinyongpum] *n* per-
 sonal effects
 계급 [kyegup] *n* class
 계단 [kyedan] *n* stairs
 계단식 승강기 [kyedansik sung-
 gang·gi] *n* escalator
 계산대 [kyesandae] *n* counter
 계산서 [kyesanso] *n* account,
 bill
 계산하다 [kyesanhada] *vt* count
 계속 [kyesok] *n* continuation
 계속하다 [kyesokada] *vt* continue
 계승자 [kyesungja] *n* successor
 계시다 [kyesida] *vi* there be,

be (in the meaning of respect)
계절 [kyejol] *n* season
계획 [kyehoek] *n* plan
계약 [kyeyak] *n* contract
괴뢰 [koeroe] *n* puppet [army
괴뢰군 [koeroegun] *n* puppet
괴뢰정권 [koeroejong·gwon] *n*
puppet regime [gnificent
굉장하다 [koengjanghada] *a* ma-
귀 [kwi] *n* ear
귀국 [kwiguk] *n* repatriation
귀중품 [kwijungpum] *n* jewelry
귀중하다 [kwijunghada] *a* pre-
cious
귀엽다 [kwiypoda] *a* precious
과수원 [kwasuwon] *n* orchard
과자 [kwaja] *n* cake
과학 [kwahak] *n* science
과학자 [kwahakja] *n* scientist
과학원 [kwahagwon] *n* academy
of sciences
과업 [kwaop] *n* task
과일 [kwail] *n* fruit
과일즙 [kwailjup] *n* fruit juice
과일청량음료 [kwail·chongryang·

umryo] *n* sherbet
관개 [kwan·gae] *n* irrigation
관계 [kwan·gye] *n* relation
관광객 [kwan·gwang·gaek] *n*
tourist
관광지 [kwan·gwangji] *n* tourist
resort
관광안내소 [kwan·gwang·annaeso]
n tourist information of-
fice
관람자 [kwallamja] *n* spectator
관리위원회 [kwalliwihonhoe] *n*
management board
관세 [kwanse] *n* customs
관찰하다 [kwanchalhada] *vt*
observe [about
관하여 [kwanhayo] *v* *con fo*
광고 [kwang·go] *n* announcement
광부 [kwangbu] *n* miner
광산 [kwangsan] *n* mine
광장 [kwangjang] *n* square
권 [kwon] *n* book
권리 [kwolli] *n* right
권위 [kwonwi] *n* authority

L [n]

나 [na] *pron* I
나가는곳 [naganun·got] *n* exit
나가다 [nagada] *vi* go out, go
나누다 [nanuda] *vt* divide
나라 [nara] *n* country
나르다 [naruda] *vt* carry
나무 [namu] *n* tree
나타나다 [natanada] *vi* appear
나팔 [napal] *n* trumpet

나쁘다 [nabbuda] *a* bad
나아가다 [naagada] *vi* advance
나이 [nai] *n* age
난곳 [nan·got] *n* birthplace
난날 [nannal] *n* date of birth
날 [nal] *n* day
날다 [nalda] *vi* fly
날리다¹ [nallida] *causat v* let fly
날리다² [nallida] *pass* be flown

날자 [nalja] *n* date
 날씨 [nalssi] *n* weather
 남 [nam] *n* another person
 남다 [namda] *vi* remain
 남새 [namsae] *n* vegetables
 남자 [namja] *n* man, male

 남편 [nampyon] *n* husband [boy
 남학생 [namhaksaeng] *n* school
 남(쪽) [nam(jjok)] *n* south
 낫다¹ [natda] *vi* recover
 낫다² [natda] *a* better
 낮 [nat] *n* daytime; midday
 낮다 [natda] *a* low
 낮차 [natcha] *n* day train
 너 [no] *pron* you
 너희 [nohui] *pron* you
 널리 [nolli] *ad* widely
 넓게 [nolge] *a ad fo* widely
 넓다 [nopda] *a* wide [over
 넘겨주다 [nomgyojuda] *vt* hand
 넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyosuhaengha
 da] *v with con fo* overfulfil
 넘치다 [nomchida] *vi* overflow
 넓적다리 [nopjokdari] *n* thigh
 녀가수 [nyogasu] *n* songstress
 녀성 [nyosong] *n* woman
 녀자 [nyoja] *n* woman, female
 녀자접대원 [nyojajopdaewon] *n*
 waitress, stewardess
 녀자음악가 [nyojaumakga] *n* wo-
 man musician [girl
 녀학생 [nyohaksaeng] *n* school
 년 [nyon] *n* year
 년간 [nyon.gan] *n* year
 년간계획 [nyon.gan.gyehoek] *n*
 annual plan

념원하다 [nyomwonhada] *vt* wish
 노랗다 [norata] *a* yellow
 노래 [noraе] *n* song
 녹다 [nokda] *vi* melt
 논 [non] *n* rice-field
 놀다 [nolda] *vi* play
 놀음 [norum] *n* play
 놀이감 [noriggam] *n* toy
 놈 [nom] *n* rogue
 농막 [nongmak] *n* farmer's hut
 농막집 [nongmakjip] *n* farmer's
 hut
 농민 [nongmin] *n* farmer
 농사 [nongsa] *n* agriculture
 농장 [nongjang] *n* farm
 농촌 [nongchon] *n* village
 농촌경리 [nongchon.gyongri] *n*
 rural economy
 높다 [nopda] *a* high
 높이 [nopi] *ad* high [ten
 높이다 [nopida] *vt* elevate, heigh-
 놓다 [nota] *vt* put, lay
 누구 [nugu] *pron* who
 누나 [nuna] *n* sister
 누르다 [nuruda] *a* yellow
 누리다 [nurida] *vt* enjoy
 누이 [nui] *n* sister
 눅다 [nukda] *a* cheap
 눈¹ [nun] *n* eye
 눈² [nun] *n* snow
 눈물 [nunmul] *n* tear
 눈보라 [nunbora] *n* snowstorm
 눈부시다 [nunbusida] *a* dazzling
 눈썹 [nunsop] *n* eyebrow
 눕다 [nupda] *vi* lie
 눕히다 [nupida] *causat v* lay
 뉴대 [nyudae] *n* bond

느끼다 [nuggida] *vt* feel
 늘 [nul] *ad* always
 늙다 [nukda] *vi* grow old
 늦다 [nutda] *a* late
 님 [nim] *suffix* Mr.; Mrs.
 내 [nae] *pron* I; my
 내과의사 [naeggwauisa] *n* physician

내리다 [naerida] *vi* get down
 내쫓다 [naejjotda] *vt* drive out
 네¹ [ne] *pron* you; your
 네² [ne] *num* four
 네번째 [nebonjjae] *num* fourth
 넥타이 [nektai] *n* necktie
 넷 [net] *num* four
 넷째 [netjjae] *num* fourth

ㄷ [t]

다 [ta] *ad* all
 다그치다 [taguchida] *vt* hasten
 다르다 [taruda] *a* different
 다리¹ [tari] *n* leg
 다리² [tari] *n* bridge
 다리다 [tarida] *vt* iron
 다만 [taman] *ad* only
 다섯 [tasot] *num* five
 다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae] *num*
 다시 [tasi] *ad* again [fifth
 다시다 [tajida] *vt* harden; strengthen; confirm
 다음 [taum] *n* next
 단 [tan] *pre-n* only
 단결 [tan.gyol] *n* solidarity
 단계 [tan.gye] *n* stage
 단련 [tallyon] *n* training
 단어 [tano] *n* word
 닫다 [tatda] *vt* shut
 달¹ [tal] *n* moon
 달² [tal] *n* month
 달다 [talda] *a* sweet
 달력 [tallyok] *n* calendar

달리 [talli] *ad* differently
 달리기 [talligi] *n* run [ner
 달리기선수 [talligisonsu] *n* runner
 달리다 [tallida] *vi* run
 달성하다 [talsonghada] *vt* achieve, attain
 닭 [tak] *n* hen
 닭고기 [takgogi] *n* chicken
 달걀 [talgal] *n* egg
 담배 [tambae] *n* cigarette
 담화 [tamhwa] *n* talk
 답례 [tamrye] *n* return salute
 답례방문 [tamryebangmun] *n* return visit
 답전 [tapjon] *n* reply telegram
 당 [tang] *n* party [gress
 당대회 [tangdaehoe] *n* party congress
 당신 [tangsin] *n* you
 당적 [tangjok] *n* party
 당정책 [tangjongchaek] *n* party policy
 당하다 [tanghada] *vt* suffer
 당원 [tang.won] *n* party member

닿다 [tata] *vi* reach
 닦다 [takda] *vt* wipe
 더 [to] *ad* more
 더럽다 [toropda] *a* dirty
 더럽히다 [toropida] *vt* soil
 더욱 [touk] *ad* more
 덜 [tol] *ad* less
 덮다 [topda] *vt* cover
 도 [to] *n* province
 도덕 [todok] *n* morals, morality
 도덕적 [todokjok] *n* moral
 도대체 [todaeche] *ad* on earth
 도마도 [tomado] *n* tomato
 도무지 [tomuji] *ad* quite
 도서관 [tosogwan] *n* library
 도시 [tosi] *n* city
 도착 [tochak] *n* arrival
 도착하다 [tochakada] *vi* arrive
 도끼 [toggi] *n* ax
 독 [tok] *n* earthenware jar
 독립 [tongrip] *n* independence
 독재 [tokjae] *n* dictatorship
 독창 [tokchang] *n* solo
 돈 [ton] *n* money [exchange
 돈바꾸기 [tonbaggugi] *n* money
 돈받는곳 [tonbannun·got] *n* ca-
 sh-desk
 돌다 [tolda] *vi* turn [back
 돌려주다 [tollyojuda] *vt* give
 돌진하다 [toljinhada] *vi* rush
 돌아가다 [toragada] *vi, vt* go
 back [back
 돌아오다 [toraoda] *vi, vt* come
 back
 톨 [tol] *n* anniversary
 돕다 [topda] *vt* help
 동무 [tongmu] *n* comrade
 동물 [tongmul] *n* animal

동물원 [tongmurwon] *n* zoo
 동맹 [tongmaeng] *n* alliance
 동상 [tongsang] *n* statue
 동시 [tongsi] *n* same time
 동지 [tongji] *n* comrade
 동트다 [tong tuda] *phrase* dawn
 동(쪽) [tong(jjok)] *n* east
 동안 [tong·an] *n* time
 동요 [tongyo] *n* vacillation
 돛대 [totdae] *n* mast
 두 [tu] *num* two
 두려워하다 [turyowohada] *vt* fear
 두번째 [tubonjjae] *num* second
 둘 [tul] *num* two
 둘째 [tuljjae] *num* second
 둥글다 [tung·gulda] *a* round
 둥지 [tungji] *n* nest
 드리다 [turida] *vt* give (in the
 meaning of respect)
 드물다 [tumulda] *a* seldom
 듣다 [tutda] *vt* hear
 들 [tul] *n* field
 들다¹ [tulda] *vi* come in
 들다² [tulda] *vt* take
 들리다 [tullida] *vi* drop in
 들어가는곳 [turoganun·got] *n*
 entrance
 들어서다 [turossoda] *vi* step in
 들어오다 [tuhooda] *vi* come in
 등 [tung] *n* back
 등기편지 [tung·gipyonji] *n* reg-
 istered letter
 등대 [tungdae] *n* lighthouse
 등록장 [tungrokjang] *n* hotel
 register
 대¹ [tae] *n* generation
 대² [tae] *incomp* *n* piece
 대³ [tae] *prefix* large, big

대극장 [taegukjang] *n* Grand Theatre
 대낮 [taenat] *n* broad daylight
 대다 [taeda] *vt* make an call
 대단히 [taedani] *ad* very
 대담하다 [taedamhada] *a* bold
 대답 [taedap] *n* answer
 대답하다 [taedapada] *vi* answer
 대동강 [taedong-gang] *n* Taedong River 「Gate
 대동문 [taedongmun] *n* Taedong
 대대적 [taedaejok] *n* large-scale
 대략 [taeryak] *n* about, approximately
 대로 [taero] *incomp n* "as"
 대리인 [taeriin] *n* deputy
 대문 [taemun] *n* front gate
 대사 [taesa] *n* ambassador
 대사관 [taesagwan] *n* embassy
 대성산혁명렬사릉 [taesongsanhyongmyongryolsanung] *n* Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery
 대자연 [taejayon] *n* great nature
 대접하다 [taejopada] *vt* entertain, serve
 대주다 [taejuda] *vt* show
 대중 [taejung] *n* masses

대통령 [taetongryong] *n* president
 대포 [taepo] *n* gun
 대표 [taepyo] *n* delegate
 대표단 [taepyodan] *n* delegation
 대표단단장 [taepyodandanjang] *n* head of a delegation
 대풍 [taepung] *n* rich harvest
 대하다 [taehada] *vt* confront
 대하여 [taehayo] *v con fo* for
 대학 [taehak] *n* university: college
 대학생 [taehaksaeng] *n* student
 대외무역 [taeoemuyok] *n* foreign trade
 대외적 [taeoejok] *n* foreign
 대의원 [taeuiwon] *n* deputy
 대원 [taewon] *n* member of troops
 대 [te] *incomp n* place; case
 되다¹ [toeda] *a* hard
 되다² [toeda] *vi* become
 뒤 [twi] *n* back
 뒤떨어지다 [twiddorojida] *vi* drop behind
 뒤에 [twie] *n dat* behind
 돼지 [twaeji] *n* pig
 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] *n* pork

ㄹ [r]

라디오 [rajio] *n* radio
 라틴아메리카 [ratinamerika] *n* Latin America
 낙원 [ragwon] *n* paradise
 약탈하다 [ryaktalhada] *vt* plunder

량 [ryang] *n* quantity
 런던 [london] *n* London
 려객차 [ryogaekcha] *n* passenger train
 려관 [ryogwan] *n* hotel
 려권 [ryoggwon] *n* passport

려권검열 [ryoggwon·gomyol] *n*
 inspection of passports
 려권번호 [ryoggwonbonho] *n*
 passport number
 여행 [ryohaeng] *n* travel
 여행목적 [ryohaengmokjok] *n*
 purpose of the journey
 여행목적지 [ryohaengmokjokji]
n destination of the journey
 여행사 [ryohaengsa] *n* travel
 bureau
 려사 [ryoksa] *n* history
 연결 [ryon·gyol] *n* connection
 연대 [ryondae] *n* regiment
 연대성 [ryondaessong] *n* solida-
 rity
 연합 [ryonhap] *n* alliance
 연이어 [ryonio] *ad* continuously
 열차 [ryolcha] *n* train
 열차식당 [ryolchasikdang] *n* din-
 ing car
 령도 [ryongdo] *n* leadership
 령도하다 [ryongdohada] *vt* lead
 령사 [ryongsa] *n* consul [late
 령사관 [ryongsagwan] *n* consu-
 령수증 [ryongsujjung] *n* receipt
 령토 [ryongto] *n* territory
 령역 [ryongyok] *n* sphere
 로동 [rodong] *n* labour
 로동계급 [rodong·gyegup] *n*
 working class
 로동당 [rodongdang] *n* Workers'
 Party

로동자 [rodongja] *n* worker
 로동안전 [rodong·anjon] *n* la-
 bour safety
 로력 [roryok] *n* labour
 로력영웅 [roryok·yongung] *n*
 labour hero
 론설 [ronsol] *n* article
 론쟁 [ronjaeng] *n* debate
 론쟁하다 [ronjaenghada] *vt* de-
 bate
 료리 [ryori] *n* dish, food
 루블 [rubul] *n* ruble
 류월 [ryuwol] *n* June
 륙 [ryuk] *num* six
 륙십 [ryuksip] *num* sixty
 룡성 [ryungsong] *n* prosperity
 리론 [riron] *n* theory
 리륙 [riryuk] *n* take-off
 리발사 [ribalsa] *n* barber
 리발소 [ribalso] *n* barber's shop
 리발하다 [ribalhada] *vi* have
 one's hair cut [rectors
 리사회 [risahoe] *n* board of di-
 리해 [rihae] *n* understanding
 리해하다 [rihaehada] *vt* under-
 stand
 리용하다 [riyonghada] *vt* use
 리익 [riik] *n* interests
 립장 [ripjang] *n* stand-point
 래달 [raedal] *n* next month
 래일 [raeil] *n* tomorrow
 레몬수 [remonsu] *n* lemonade

□ [m]

- 마당 [madang] *n* yard, garden; place
 마디 [madi] *n* joint; word
 마라손 [marason] *n* marathon
 마라손선수 [marasonsonsu] *n* marathon runner
 마르다 [maruda] *vi* dry
 마시다 [masida] *vt* drink
 마치¹ [machi] *n* hammer
 마치² [machi] *ad* just as
 마흔 [mahun] *num* forty
 마을 [maul] *n* village
 마음 [maum] *n* heart
 막다 [makda] *vt* stop
 만 [man] *num* ten thousands
 만경대 [mangyongdae] *n* Mangyongdae
 만경봉 [mangyongbong] *n* Mangyong Hill
 만나다 [mannada] *vt* meet
 만년필 [mannyonpil] *n* fountainpen
 만들다 [mandulda] *vt* make, manufacture
 만수대예술극장 [mansudaeyesulgukjang] *n* Mansudae Art Theatre
 만수무강 [mansumugang] *n* long life and good health
 만세 [manse] *int* hurrah
 만족하다 [manjokada] *a* be satisfied
 만행 [manhaeng] *n* barbarity
 만약 [manyak] *n* if
 만일 [manil] *n* if
 많다 [manta] *a* many, much
 많이 [mani] *ad* much
 맏누이 [mannui] *n* eldest sister
 말¹ [mal] *n* horse
 말² [mal] *n* word, language
 말다¹ [malda] *vt* roll
 말다² [malda] *verb* which is used as an auxiliary "not"
 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt* say, speak, tell
 말하자면 [malhajamyon] *v con* fo so to speak
 말씀 [malssum] *n* word (in the meaning of respect)
 말씀하다 [malssumhada] *vt* say (in the meaning of respect)
 맑다 [makda] *a* clear
 맑아지다 [malgajida] *v with con* fo clear up
 맛 [mat] *n* taste
 맛보다 [matboda] *v with n* taste
 맞다¹ [matda] *vi* fit
 맞다² [matda] *vt* be struck, be exposed
 맞추다 [matchuda] *vt* make fit
 맞이하다 [majihada] *vt* receive
 맡겨지다 [matgyojida] *pass* be entrusted
 맡기다 [matgida] *causat v* entrust
 머리 [mori] *n* head
 머리말 [morimal] *n* foreword
 머리수건 [morisugon] *n* kerchief

머리칼 [morikal] *n* hair
 머리아픔 [moriapum] *n* headache
 먹다 [mokda] *vt* eat
 먹이다 [mogida] *causat v* let eat
 먼저 [monjo] *ad* first
 멀다 [molda] *a* far
 멀리 [molli] *ad* far away
 멎다 [motda] *vi* stop [days
 며칠 [myochil] *n* how many
 면도 [myondo] *n* shaving
 면도칼 [myondokal] *n* razor
 명 [myong] *incomp n* person
 명년 [myongnyon] *n* next year
 명령 [myongryong] *n* order
 명승지 [myongsungji] *n* famous spots
 명절 [myongjol] *n* festival day
 명예칭호 [myongyechingho] *n* honorary title
 몇 [myot] *pron* how many
 모두 [modu] *ad* all
 모든 [modun] *pre-n* all
 모르다 [moruda] *vt* do not know
 모래 [mora] *n* sand
 모레 [more] *n* the day after tomorrow
 모범 [mobom] *n* model
 모자 [moja] *n* hat, cap
 모자라다 [mojarada] *vi* be short
 모이다 [moida] *pass* come together
 모임 [moim] *n* meeting
 목 [mok] *n* neck
 목란꽃 [mongran-ggot] *n* magnolia
 목적 [mokjok] *n* purpose, aim
 목적지 [mokjokjji] *n* destination

목표 [mokpyo] *n* goal, target
 목요일 [mogyoil] *n* Thursday
 목욕 *n* [mog yok] *n* bathing
 목욕실 [mogyoksil] *n* bathroom
 목욕칸 [mog yokkan] *n* bathroom
 목욕탕 [mog yoktang] *n* bath
 목욕하다 [mog yokhada] *vi* bathe
 몰아내다 [moranaeda] *vt* drive out
 몸 [mom] *n* body
 몸소 [momso] *ad* personally
 몹시 [mopsi] *ad* very
 못 [mot] *ad* not
 못내 [monnae] *ad* very
 못하다¹ [motada] *a* not
 못하다² [motada] *vt* cannot
 무기 [mugi] *n* weapon
 무겁다 [mugopda] *a* heavy
 무게 [muge] *n* weight
 무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] *n* trolley bus
 무덤다 [mudopda] *a* sultry
 무대 [mudae] *n* stage
 무릎 [murup] *n* knee
 무슨 [musun] *pron* what
 무장 [mujang] *n* armaments
 무장시키다 [mujangsikida] *causat v* make arm
 무장하다 [mujanghada] *vi, vt* arm
 무조건 [mujogon] *n* unconditionally
 무지개 [mujigae] *n* rainbow
 무엇 [muot] *pron* what
 무역 [muyok] *n* trade
 무역협정 [muyokhyopjong] *n* trade agreement
 무용가 [muyong-ga] *n* dancer
 문 [mun] *n* door, gate
 문법 [munbop] *n* grammar

문제 [munje] *n* question, problem
 문학 [munhak] *n* literature
 문화 [munhwa] *n* culture
 문화궁전 [munhwagung·jon] *n*
 cultural palace
 문화혁명 [munhwahyongmyong]
n cultural revolution
 문화회관 [munhwahoegwan] *n*
 cultural clubhouse
 묻다 [mutda] *vi, vt* ask
 물 [mul] *n* water
 물건 [mulgon] *n* goods
 물건사기 [mulgonsagi] *n* pur-
 chases
 물결 [mulgyol] *n* wave
 물고기요리 [mulgogiryori] *n* fish
 foods
 물다 [mulda] *vt* pay
 물론 [mullon] *ad* of course
 물품 [mulpum] *n* goods
 물어보기 [murobogi] *n* inquiring
 물음칸 [murumkan] *n* informa-
 tion office
 뭉치다 [mungchida] *vi* unite
 묶다 [mukda] *vt* bind
 미리 [miri] *ad* beforehand
 미래 [mirae] *n* future
 미술박물관 [misulbangmulgwan]
n picture gallery
 미제 [mije] *n* US imperialism;

US imperialists
 미제국주의자 [mijegukjuuija] *n*
 US imperialist
 미안하다 [mianhada] *a* sorry
 민족 [minjok] *n* nation
 민족무용 [minjongmuyong] *n*
 folk dance [ity
 민족별 [minjokbyol] *n* national-
 민족적 [minjokjok] *n* national
 민족주의 [minjokjuui] *n* nation-
 alism [tionalistic
 민족주의적 [minjokjuuijok] *n* na-
 민주주의 [minjujuui] *n* democ-
 racy [mocratic
 민주주의적 [minjujuuijok] *n* de-
 민요 [minyoy] *n* folk song
 믿음직하다 [midumjikada] *a* re-
 liable
 밀 [mil] *n* wheat
 밀가루 [milgaru] *n* wheat flour
 밀영 [miryong] *n* secret camp
 및 [mit] *ad* and
 매 [mae] *pre-n* every
 매국노 [maegungno] *n* traitor
 (to one's country)
 매우 [maeu] *ad* very
 매일 [maeil] *n* every day
 맥박 [maekbak] *n* pulse
 맥주 [maekju] *n* beer
 맺다 [maetda] *vt* conclude

ㅂ [p]

바나나 [panana] *n* banana
 바다 [pada] *n* sea
 바닥 [padak] *n* floor
 바람 [param] *n* wind

바로 [paro] *ad* straight
 바라다 [paraeda] *vt* see (a per-
 son) off
 바레무용 [paremuyong] *n* ballet

바지 [paji] *n* trousers
 바치다 [pachida] *vt* devote
 바퀴 [pakwi] *n* wheel
 바꾸다 [pagguda] *vt* exchange
 바쁘게 [pabbuge] *a ad* fo busily
 바쁘다 [pabbuda] *a* busy
 바빠 [pabbi] *ad* busily
 박다 [pakda] *vt* strike in
 박물관 [pangmulgwan] *n* museum
 박수 [paksu] *n* hand clapping
 박히다 [pakida] *pass* be struck
 in [gladly
 반가이 [pan·gai] *ad* joyfully,
 반갑다 [pan·gapda] *a* joyful,
 glad
 반도 [pando] *n* peninsula
 반드시 [pandusi] *ad* certainly,
 surely
 반대하다 [pandaehada] *vt* oppose
 반면 [panmyon] *n* contrary
 반미 [panmi] *n* anti-US (impe-
 rialist)
 반복하다 [panbokada] *vt* repeat
 반숙한 달걀 [pansukan dalgall] *n*
 with att fo soft boiled egg
 반주하다 [panjuhada] *vt* play a
 person's accompaniment
 반제 [panje] *n* anti-imperialism;
 anti-imperialist
 반제련대성 [panjeryondaessong]
n anti-imperialist solidarity
 반제적 [panjejok] *n* anti-imperi-
 alist [tape
 반창고 [panchang·go] *n* adhesive
 받는 사람 [pannun saram] *n* with
 att fo receiver; addressee
 받다 [patda] *vt* receive [ept
 받아들이다 [padadurida] *vt* acc-

발 [pal] *n* foot
 발가락 [palgarak] *n* toe
 발랄하다 [pallalhada] *a* lively
 발바닥 [palbadak] *n* sole
 발송 [palsong] *n* sending
 발신인 [palsinin] *n* sender
 발전 [paljon] *n* development
 발전되다 [paljondoeda] *vi* be de-
 veloped
 발전시키다 [paljonsikida] *causat*
v develop
 밝다 [pakda] *a* bright; dawn,
 break
 밟다 [papda] *vt* step on
 밤¹ [pam] *n* night
 밤² [pam] *n* chestnut
 밤차 [pamcha] *n* night train
 밥 [pap] *n* boiled rice
 방 [pang] *n* room
 방문 [panmun] *n* visit
 방문하다 [pangmunhada] *vt* visit
 방법 [pangbop] *n* method
 방송 [pangsong] *n* broadcasting
 방송하다 [pangsonghada] *vt* bro-
 방조 [pangjo] *n* help [adcast
 방침 [pangchim] *n* line
 방향 [panghyang] *n* direction
 밭 [pat] *n* field [eld
 발머리 [panmori] *n* edge of fi-
 밖으로 [pagguro] *n* inst to out-
 side
 번 [pon] *incomp* *n* time
 번개 [pon·gae] *n* lightning
 번호 [ponho] *n* number
 번쩍거리다 [ponjjokgorida] *vi*,
vt glitter
 번역 [ponyok] *n* translation
 번역하다 [ponyokada] *vt* trans

late
 번역원 [ponyogwon] *n* translator
 번영 [ponyong] *n* prosperity
 번영하다 [ponyonghada] *vi* prosper
 벌¹ [pol] *n* bee [clothes]
 벌² [pol] *incomp n* a suit (of
 벌써 [polsso] *ad* already
 범 [pom] *n* tiger
 법 [pop] *n* law
 법령 [pomryong] *n* law
 벗 [pot] *n* friend
 벗다 [potda] *vt* take off
 벼 [pyo] *n* rice plant : unhulled
 벽 [pyok] *n* wall [rice
 변소 [pyonso] *n* toilet
 변하다 [pyonhada] *vi, vt* change
 별 [pyol] *n* star
 병¹ [pyong] *n* bottle
 병² [pyong] *n* illness
 병사 [pyongsa] *n* soldier
 병원 [pyong.won] *n* hospital
 보고하다 [pogohada] *vt* report
 보금자리 [pogumjari] *n* nest
 보내는 사람 [ponaenun saram] *n*
with att fo sender
 보내다 [ponaeda] *vt* send
 보다 [poda] *vt* see
 보증 [pojung] *n* guarantee
 보통강려관 [potong.gangrye
 gwan] *n* Potonggang Hotel
 보험 [pohom] *n* insurance
 보여주다 [poyojuda] *v with con
 fo show*
 보이다¹ [poida] *pass* be seen
 보이다² [poida] *causat v* let see
 복도 [pokdo] *n* corridor
 복무하다 [pongmuhada] *vi* serve

복숭아 [poksung.a] *n* peach
 복잡하다 [pokjapada] *a* complic-
 품 [pom] *n* spring [ated
 봄날 [pomnal] *n* spring day
 봄바람 [pombaram] *n* spring
 breeze
 봉투 [pongto] *n* envelope
 부¹ [pu] *n* department, minis-
 부² [pu] *n* copy [try
 부닥치다 [pudakchida] *vi* run a-
 gainst; encounter with
 부드럽다 [puduropda] *a* soft
 부디 [pudi] *ad* surely
 부르다 [puruda] *vt* call; sing
 부모 [pumo] *n* parents
 부문 [pumun] *n* branch
 부부 [pubu] *n* husband and wife
 부분 [pubun] *n* part
 부장 [pujang] *n* minister
 부지런하다 [pujironhada] *a* di-
 ligent
 부지런히 [pujironi] *ad* diligent-
 ly
 부치다 [puchida] *vt* send
 부탁하다 [putakada] *vt* request
 부터 [puto] *aux end* from
 부엌 [puok] *n* kitchen
 부엌문 [puongmun] *n* door of
 kitchen [work
 부엌일 [puongnil] *n* kitchen
 북(쪽) [puk(jjok)] *n* north
 분¹ [pun] *n* minute
 분² [pun] *incomp n* person
 분계선 [pun.gyeson] *n* demarca-
 tion line
 분대 [pundae] *n* squad
 분수 [punsu] *n* fountain
 불 [pul] *n* fire

불다 [pulda] *vi* blow
 불라다 [pultada] *vi* burn
 불편하다 [pulpyonhada] *a* inconvenient
 붉다 [pukda] *a* red
 붉은기 [pulgung·gi] *n* red flag
 붕대 [pungdae] *n* bandage
 뚝뚝 [pungbung] *ad* buzz
 비 [pi] *n* rain
 비겁한자 [pigopanja] *n* coward
 비닐론 [pinallon] *n* vinalon
 비누 [pinu] *n* soap
 비다 [pida] *a* vacant, empty
 비단 [pidan] *n* silk
 비로소 [piroso] *ad* for the first time
 비록 [pirok] *ad* even if
 비료 [piryo] *n* fertilizer
 비서 [piso] *n* secretary
 비치다 [pichida] *vi* shine
 비행기 [pihaeng·gi] *n* aeroplane
 비행기시간표 [pihaeng·gisigan·pyo] *n* time table
 비행기표 [pihaeng·gipyo] *n* airline ticket
 비행사 [pihaengsa] *n* airman
 비행장 [pihaengjang] *n* airport
 비행장관세 [pihaengjang·gwanse] *n* airport tax

비싸다 [pissada] *a* expensive
 비어있음 [piyoissum] *n* vacant
 비옷 [piot] *n* raincoat
 빗 [pit] *n* comb
 빗다 [pitda] *vt* comb
 빙상관 [pingsang·gwan] *n* Ice Rink
 빚 [pit] *n* debt
 빛 [pit] *n* light
 빛나다 [pinnada] *vi* shine
 배¹ [pae] *n* belly
 배² [pae] *n* ship
 배³ [pae] *n* pear
 배⁴ [pae] *n* times
 배구 [paegu] *n* volleyball
 배다 [paeda] *a* thick
 배려 [paeryo] *n* solicitude, care
 배우 [paeu] *n* actor
 배우기 [paeugi] *n* learning
 배우다 [paeuda] *vt* learn
 백 [paek] *num* hundred [du
 백두산 [paekdusan] *n* Mt. Paek-
 백만 [paengman] *num* million
 백화점 [paekwajom] *n* department store
 베개 [pegae] *n* pillow
 베다 [peda] *vt* cut
 보다 [poeda] *vt* see (in the meaning of respect)

人 [s]

사 [sa] *num* four
 사귀다 [sagwida] *vi, vt* make friends with
 사과 [sagwa] *n* apple
 사다 [sada] *vt* buy

사라지다 [sarajida] *vi* disappear
 사람 [saram] *n* man
 사랑 [sarang] *n* love
 사랑하다 [saranghada] *vt* love
 사명 [samyeong] *n* mission

- 사무원 [samuwon] *n* office worker
- 사상 [sasang] *n* idea
- 사상적 [sasangjok] *n* ideological
- 사상혁명 [sasanghyongmyong] *n* ideological revolution
- 사실 [sasil] *n* fact
- 사십 [sasip] *num* forty
- 사적지 [sajokji] *n* historical places
- 사전 [sajon] *n* dictionary
- 사절 [sajol] *n* delegate
- 사증 [sajjung] *n* visa
- 사증번호 [sajjungbonho] *n* visa number
- 사진 [sajin] *n* photo
- 사진기 [sajin·gi] *n* camera
- 사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi] *n* photographing
- 사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom] *n* camera shop
- 사탕 [satang] *n* sugar
- 사탕가루 [satang·garu] *n* soft sugar
- 사회 [sahoe] *n* society
- 사회적 [sahoejok] *n* social
- 사회주의 [sahoejuui] *n* socialism
- 사회주의적 [sahoejuuijok] *n* socialist
- 사업 [saop] *n* work
- 사용하다 [sayonghada] *vt* use
- 사이다 [saida] *n* fizzy drink
- 사월 [sawol] *n* April
- 산 [san] *n* mountain
- 산보하다 [sanbohada] *vi* take a walk
- 산부인과 의사 [sanbuin·gwauisa] *n* gynaecologist
- 산원 [sanwon] *n* maternity hospital
- 살¹ [sal] *n* flesh
- 살² [sal] *n* age
- 살가죽 [salgajuk] *n* skin
- 살다 [salda] *vi* live
- 살림집 [sallimjip] *n* dwelling
- 삶다 [samda] *vt* boil
- 삶은 달걀 [salmun dalgal] *n* with att fo boiled egg
- 삼 [sam] *num* three
- 삼가 [samga] *ad* respectfully
- 삼십 [samsip] *num* thirty
- 삼월 [samwol] *n* March
- 삽 [sap] *n* spade, shovel
- 상 [sang] *n* prize [ably
- 상당히 [sangdangi] *ad* considerably
- 상봉 [sangbong] *n* meeting
- 상상 [sangsang] *n* imagination
- 상상하다 [sangsanghada] *vt* imagine
- 상수건 [sangsugon] *n* napkin
- 상점 [sangjom] *n* shop
- 상업 [sang·op] *n* commerce
- 상영하다 [sang·yonghada] *vt* give a performance
- 샴팡주 [syampangju] *n* champagne
- 서기 [sogi] *n* secretary
- 서늘하다 [sonulhada] *a* cool
- 서다 [soda] *vi* stand
- 서로 [soro] *ad* each other
- 서른 [sorun] *num* thirty
- 서명하다 [somyonghada] *vi* sign one's name
- 서해감문 [sohaegammun] *n* West Sea Barrage

서(쪽) [sc(jjok)] *n* west
 석탄 [soktan] *n* coal
 선거 [son-go] *n* election
 선거권 [son-goggwon] *n* voting rights
 선거하다 [son-gohada] *vt* elect
 선물 [sonmul] *n* present
 선물상점 [sonmulsangjom] *n* souvenir shop
 선생 [sonsaeng] *n* teacher
 선장 [sonjang] *n* captain
 선택 [sontaek] *n* selection
 설날 [sollal] *n* New Year's Day
 설사 [solsa] *n* diarrhoea
 섬유 [somyu] *n* fibre
 섯 [sot] *imp* for stop!
 성¹ [song] *n* sex
 성² [song] *n* family name
 성격 [song-gyok] *n* character
 성공하다 [song-gonghada] *vt* succeed
 성과 [song-gwa] *n* success
 성냥 [songnyang] *n* match
 성명 [songmyong] *n* statement
 성별 [songbyol] *n* sex distinction
 성스럽다 [songsuropda] *a* sacred
 성원 [songwon] *n* member
 소 [so] *n* cow, bull
 소고기 [sogogi] *n* beef
 소금 [sogum] *n* salt
 소개 [sogae] *n* introduction
 소개하다 [sogaehada] *vt* introduce
 소나무 [sonamu] *n* pine
 소녀 [sonyo] *n* girl
 소년 [sonyon] *n* boy
 소년단원 [sonyondanwon] *n* Child-

dren's Union member
 소리 [sori] *n* sound
 소리치다 [sorichida] *v* with *n* cry
 소멸하다 [somyolhada] *vt* wipe out
 소설가 [sosolga] *n* novelist
 소식 [sosik] *n* news
 소젖 [sojot] *n* milk
 소포 [sopo] *n* parcel
 소환장 [sohwanjang] *n* letter of recall
 소아과 의사 [soaggwauisa] *n* child specialist, paediatrician
 속 [sok] *n* inside
 속내의 [songnaeui] *n* underwear
 속도 [sokdo] *n* speed
 손 [son] *n* hand
 손가락 [son-garak] *n* finger
 손님 [sonnim] *n* guest
 손바닥 [sonbadak] *n* palm (of the hand) [ief
 손수건 [sonsugon] *n* handkerch-
 손짐 [sonjim] *n* hand baggage
 손짐맡기논곳 [sonjimmatginungot] *n* cloakroom
 손톱 [sontop] *n* fingernail
 수 [su] *n* number
 수고하다 [sugohada] *vi* take trouble, do a service
 수단 [sudan] *n* means
 수도¹ [sudo] *n* water-works
 수도² [sudo] *n* capital
 수량 [suryang] *n* quantity
 수령 [suryong] *n* leader
 수리하다 [surihada] *vt* repair
 수속하다 [susokada] *vt* go through the formalities

- 수송 [susong] *n* transport
수자 [sujja] *n* figure [ism
수정주의 [sujongjuui] *n* revision-
수족관 [sujokgwan] *n* aquarium
수준 [sujun] *n* level
수출 [suchul] *n* export
수출품 [suchulpum] *n* export
goods
수출하다 [suchulhada] *vt* export
수표 [supyo] *n* signature
수표하다 [supyohada] *vi* sign
수행하다 [suhaenghada] *vt* carry
out
수업 [suop] *n* lessons
수요일 [suyoil] *n* Wednesday
수입 [suip] *n* import
수입하다 [suipada] *vt* import
숙영지 [sugyongji] *n* billeting
area
순간 [sun·gan] *n* moment
순대 [sundae] *n* sausage
술가락 [sutgarak] *n* spoon
술 [sul] *n* wine
스물 [sumul] *num* twenty
스스로 [susuro] *ad* for oneself
슬기롭다 [sulgiropda] *a* wise
슬프다 [sulpuda] *a* sad
승강기 [sung·gang·gi] *n* elevator,
lift
승냥이 [sungnyang·i] *n* wolf
승리 [sungri] *n* victory
승용차 [sung·yongcha] *n* pas-
senger car
시 [si] *n* o' clock
시간 [sigan] *n* time
시간차이 [siganchai] *n* differen-
ce in time
시간표 [siganpyo] *n* timetable
시계 [sigye] *n* watch
시계상점 [sigyesangjom] *n* watch
shop
 시내 [sinae] *n* city centre
 시내구경 [sinaegugyong] *n* city
sightseeing
 시내관광버스 [sinaegwan·gwang
bbosu] *n* city sightseeing bus
 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] *n* city bus
시다 [sida] *a* sour
시대 [sidae] *n* era
시련 [siryon] *n* trial
시작 [sijak] *n* beginning
시작하다 [sijakada] *vt* begin
시장 [sijang] *n* market
시합 [sihap] *n* match
시험 [sihom] *n* examination
시인 [siin] *n* poet
시외버스 [sioebbosu] *n* long-dis-
tance bus
시월 [siwol] *n* October
식당 [sikdang] *n* dining room;
restaurant
식료품 [singnyopum] *n* foodstuff
식료품상점 [singnyopumsangjom]
n grocer's shop, grocery
식물 [singmul] *n* plant
식물원 [singmulwon] *n* botani-
cal garden
식사 [siksa] *n* meal
식사하다 [siksahada] *vi* have a
meal
식사안내표 [siksaannaepyo] *n* m-
enu
식초 [sikcho] *n* vinegar
식후다과 [sikudagwa] *n* dessert
식욕 [sigyok] *n* appetite
신 [sin] *n* shoes

신경과의사 [sin·gyong·gwauisa] *n* neurologist
 신고하다 [sin·gohada] *vt* declare
 신다 [sinda] *vt* put on
 신문 [simnun] *n* newspaper
 신발 [sinbal] *n* shoes
 신발상점 [sinbalsangjom] *n* shoe store
 신청하다 [sinchonghada] *vt* request
 신임장 [sinimjang] *n* credentials
 실로 [sillo] *ad* really
 실제로 [siljejoguro] *n inst* really [ize
 실현하다 [silhyonhada] *vt* real-
 심각하다 [simgakada] *a* serious
 심장 [simjang] *n* heart
 십 [sip] *num* ten
 십자로 [sipjaro] *n* crossroad
 십이 [sibi] *num* twelve
 십이월 [sibiwol] *n* December
 십일 [sibil] *num* eleven
 십일월 [sibirwol] *n* November
 싶다 [sipda] *verb* which is used
 as an auxiliary want
 새¹ [sae] *n* bird
 새² [sae] *pre-n* new
 새롭다 [saeropda] *a* new
 새해 [saehae] *n* new year
 색 [saek] *n* colour
 색깔 [saekgal] *n* colour
 생각 [saeng·gak] *n* thought
 생각하다 [saeng·gakada] *vi, vt*
 think

생과자 [saeng·gwaja] *n* cake
 생닭알 [saengdalgal] *n* fresh
 egg
 생명 [saengmyong] *n* life
 생산 [saengsan] *n* production
 생산하다 [saengsanhada] *vi, vt*
 produce
 생선국 [saengson·guk] *n* fish
 soup
 생채 [saengchae] *n* salad
 생활 [saenghwal] *n* life
 생일 [saeng·il] *n* birthday
 세 [se] *num* three
 세금 [segum] *n* tax
 세계 [segye] *n* world
 세계적 [segyejok] *n* world-wide
 세관 [segwan] *n* customs
 세다¹ [seda] *a* strong
 세다² [seda] *vt* count
 세대 [sedae] *n* generation
 세번째 [sebonjjae] *num* third
 세상 [sesang] *n* world
 세탁소 [setakso] *n* laundry
 세우다 [seuda] *causat v* make
 stand, set up
 셋 [set] *num* three
 셋째 [setjjae] *num* third
 쇠 [soe] *n* iron
 쇠다 [soeda] *vt* celebrate
 쉬는날 [swinun nal] *n* with
 att fo holiday, off day
 쉬다 [swida] *vi, vt* rest from
 one's work
 쉰 [swin] *num* fifty
 쉽다 [swipda] *a* easy

ㅈ [ch]

자 [cha] *int* well
 자기 [chagi] *pron* self, oneself
 자네 [chane] *pron* you
 자다 [chada] *vi* sleep
 자동차 [chadongcha] *n* car
 자동차운전수 [chadongchaunjonsu]
 n driver
 자동차 [chadonghwa] *n* automa-
 [*tion*
 자라다 [charada] *vi* grow
 자랑하다 [charanghada] *vi, vt* be
 proud of
 자료 [charyo] *n* materials
 자르다 [charuda] *vt* cut
 자리 [chari] *n* place
 자리번호 [charibonho] *n* seat
 number
 자리표 [charipyo] *n* boarding c-
 [*ard*
 자립 [charip] *n* self-sustenance
 자본가 [chabon-ga] *n* capitalist
 자본주의 [chabonjuui] *n* capita-
 lism
 자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] *n*
 capitalist
 자신 [chasin] *n* self, oneself
 자전거 [chajon-go] *n* bicycle
 자주¹ [chaju] *n* independence
 자주² [chaju] *ad* often [ng
 자주성 [hajussong] *n* Chajuso-
 자주적 [hajujok] *n* independent
 자재 [hajae] *n* material
 자연 [chayon] *n* nature
 자욱하다 [chaukada] *a* thick
 자위 [hawwi] *n* self-defence
 작가 [chakga] *n* writer
 작곡가 [chakgokga] *n* composer

작다 [chakda] *a* small, little
 작전 [chakjon] *n* (military)
 operations
 작업 [chagop] *n* work
 작업반 [chagopban] *n* work-team
 잔 [chan] *n* cup, glass
 잔돈 [chandon] *n* small change
 잘 [chal] *ad* well; skillfully
 잠 [cham] *n* sleep
 잠깐 [chamgan] *n* short time;
 for a while
 잠들다 [chamdulda] *vi* fall as-
 [*leep*
 잠시 [chamsi] *n* for a while
 잠자다 [chamjada] *vi* sleep
 잡다 [chapda] *vt* catch
 잡수시다 [chapsusida] *vt* eat
 (in the meaning of respect)
 잡지 [chapji] *n* magazine
 잣나무 [channamu] *n* pine-nut
 장 [chang] *n* sheet [tree
 장갑 [chang-gap] *n* gloves
 장기 [chang-gi] *n* chess
 장령 [changryong] *n* general
 장마 [changma] *n* long (spell
 of) rain [rose
 장미(꽃) [changmi(ggot)] *n*
 장비 [changbi] *n* equipment
 장딴지 [changddanji] *n* calf
 저¹ [cho] *pron* that
 저² [cho] *pron* I
 저가락 [choggarak] *n* chopsticks
 저기 [chogi] *pron* that place
 저기에 [chogie] *pron* *dat* there
 저녁 [chonyok] *n* evening
 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] *n* supper

- 저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] *n* supper
 저녁에 [chonyoge] *n dat* in the evening
 저절로 [chojollo] *ad* of itself, of oneself
 저희 [chohui] *pron* we
 적 [chok] *n* enemy
 적극적 [chokgukjok] *n* active
 적극적으로 [chokgukjoguro] *n inst* actively
 적다 [chokda] *a* few, little, small
 적용하다 [chogyonghada] *vt* apply
 전¹ [chon] *n* before
 전² [chon] *n* jon (unit of Korean coin)
 전기 [chon·gi] *n* electricity
 전기차 [chon·gicha] *n* electric train
 전람관 [chollamgwan] *n* exhibition hall
 전람회 [chollamhoe] *n* exhibition
 전보 [chonbo] *n* telegram
 전보용지 [chonboyongji] *n* telegram form
 전부 [chonbu] *n* all
 전사 [chonsa] *n* soldier
 전선 [chonson] *n* (battle) front
 전진하다 [chonjinhada] *vi* advance
 전쟁 [chonjaeng] *n* war
 전차 [choncha] *n* streetcar, tram car
 전체 [chonche] *n* whole, all
 전취물 [chonchwimul] *n* gains
 전통 [chontong] *n* tradition
 전투 [chontu] *n* battle
 전투적 [chontujok] *n* militant
 전하다 [chonhada] *vt* inform
 전화 [chonhwa] *n* telephone
 전우 [chonu] *n* comrade-in-arms
 전에 [chone] *n dat* before
 젊다 [chomda] *a* young
 점 [chom] *n* point
 점수 [chomsu] *n* mark
 점심 [chomsim] *n* lunch
 점심밥 [chomsimbap] *n* lunch
 점심시간 [chomsimsigan] *n* dinner hour [ch
 점심식사 [chomsimsiksa] *n* lun-
 접견 [chopgyon] *n* interview, reception [waiter
 접대원 [chopdaewon] *n* steward,
 접수 [chopsu] *n* front desk
 접수하다 [chopsuhada] *vt* rece-
 접시 [chopsi] *n* plate [live
 정거장 [chong·gojang] *n* (rail-
 way) station [power
 정권 [chong·gwon] *n* political
 정류소 [chongryuso] *n* stop
 정말 [chongmal] *ad* truly
 정상적으로 [chongsangjoguro] *n*
ad in a regular way
 정식 [chongsik] *n* table d'hôte
 정신 [chongsin] *n* spirit
 정전 [chongjon] *n* ceasefire
 정전협정 [chongjonhyopjong] *n*
 armistice agreement
 정지 [chongji] *n* stop
 정치 [chongchi] *n* politics
 정책 [chongchaek] *n* policy
 정책적 [chongchaekjok] *n* of
 policy

젓다 [chotda] *vi* be wet
 젓먹이 [chonmogi] *n* suckling
 조 [cho] *n* set l child
 조건 [choggon] *n* condition
 조국 [choguk] *n* fatherland
 조사하다 [chosahada] *vi, vt*
 investigate
 조선 [choson] *n* Korea
 조선로동당 [chosonrodongdang]
n the Workers' Party of
 Korea
 조선로동당원 [chosonrodongdang
 won] *n* member of the Work-
 ers' Party of Korea
 조선말 [chosonmal] *n* Korean,
 the Korean language
 조선민주주의인민공화국 [choson
 minjujuuinmin-gonghwaguk] *n*
 the Democratic People's Re-
 public of Korea, the DPRK
 조선반도 [chosonbando] *n* the
 Korean Peninsula 「ean
 조선사람 [chosonsaram] *n* Kor-
 조선혁명 [chosonhyongmyong] *n*
 the Korean revolution
 조선혁명박물관 [chosonhyong
 myongbangmulgwan] *n* Korean
 Revolution Museum
 조선어 [chosono] *n* Korean, the
 Korean language
 조선음식 [chosonumsik] *n*
 Korean food
 조선인민 [chosoninmin] *n* the
 Korean people
 조선인민군 [chosoninmin-gun] *n*
 the Korean People's Army
 조심하다 [chosimhada] *vi, vt*
 be careful

조직 [chojik] *n* organization
 조직생활 [chojiksaenghwal] *n*
 organizational life
 조직하다 [chojikada] *vt* organize
 조영사전 [choyongsajon] *n*
 Korean-English dictionary
 조용하다 [choyonghada] *a* quiet,
 silent, still
 조용히 [choyong-i] *ad* still
 존경 [chon-gyong] *n* respect
 존재 [chonjae] *n* existence
 졸업하다 [choropada] *vt* gradu-
 ate
 좀 [chom] *ad* a little
 좁다 [chopda] *a* narrow
 종합대학 [chonghap-daehak] *n*
 university 「yee
 종업원 [chong-obwon] *n* emplo-
 종이 [chong-i] *n* paper
 좋다 [chota] *a* good
 주 [chu] *n* week
 주권 [chugwon] *n* sovereignty
 주년 [chunyon] *n* anniversary
 주다 [chuda] *vt* give
 주무시다 [chumusida] *vi* sleep
 (in the meaning of respect)
 주문하다 [chumunhada] *vt* order
 주민 [chumin] *n* inhabitants
 주사 [chusa] *n* injection
 주식 [chusok] *n* president
 주소 [chuso] *n* address
 주체 [chuche] *n* Juche 「Idea
 주체사상 [chuchesasang] *n* Juche
 주체사상탑 [chuchesasangtap] *n*
 the Tower of Juche Idea
 주체적 [chuchejok] *n* Juche
 주택 [chutaek] *n* dwelling
 (house)

- 주인 [chuin] *n* master
 주인공 [chuin-gong] *n* hero, heroine
 주일 [chuil] *n* weekday, week
 주의 [chuui] *n* attention
 주의하다 [chuuihada] *vi* pay attention to
 죽 [chuk] *n* gruel
 죽다 [chukda] *vi* die
 죽음 [chugum] *n* death
 준비 [chunbi] *n* preparation
 준비하다 [chunbihada] *vi, vt* prepare
 [industry
 중공업 [chung-gong-op] *n* heavy
 중심 [chungsim] *n* centre
 중지하다 [chungjihada] *vt* stop
 중학교 [chunghakgyo] *n* middle school
 중앙 [chung-ang] *n* centre
 중요하다 [chung.yohada] *a* important
 즐겁다 [chulgopda] *a* merry
 즐기다 [chulgida] *vt* like
 증기 [chung-gi] *n* steam
 증명서 [chungmyongso] *n* certificate
 증오하다 [chung-ohada] *vt* hate
 지구 [chigu] *n* earth
 지금 [chigum] *n* now
 지급전보 [chigupjonbo] *n* urgent telegram
 지난날 [chinannal] *n* past (days)
 지난해 [chinanhae] *n* last year
 지내다 [chinaeda] *vi* live
 지다 [chida] *vi* lose
 지당하다 [chidanghada] *a* right
 지도¹ [chido] *n* map
 지도² [chido] *n* leading
 지도자 [chidoja] *n* leader
 시대 [chidae] *n* zone
 지배하다 [chibaehada] *vt* govern
 지배인 [chibaein] *n* director, manager
 지식 [chisik] *n* knowledge
 지지하다 [chijihada] *vt* support
 지진 물고기 [chijin mulgogi] *n*
with att fo boiled fish
 지키다 [chikida] *vt* defend
 지하철도 [chihacholdo] *n* underground (railway), subway
 직장 [chikjang] *n* work place, workshop
 직업 [chigop] *n* occupation
 진달래 [chindallae] *n* azalea
 진리 [chilli] *n* truth
 질 [chil] *n* quality
 질서 [chilso] *n* order
 짐 [chim] *n* baggage
 짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun sam] *n*
with att fo porter
 짐차 [chimcha] *n* truck
 짐표 [chimpyo] *n* claim tag
 집 [chip] *n* house
 집다 [chipda] *vt* pick (up)
 집단 [chipdan] *n* collective
 집단체조 [chipdanchejo] *n* mass gymnastic display
 집짐승 [chipjimsung] *n* domestic animal
 재다 [chaeda] *vt* measure
 재료 [chaeryo] *n* material
 재미 [chaemi] *n* interest
 재산 [chaesan] *n* property
 재털이 [chaetori] *n* ashtray
 제¹ [che] *pron* I; my
 제² [che] *prefix* "order"

제국주의 [chegukjuui] *n* imperialism
 제국주의자 [chegukjuuija] *n* imperialist
 제기하다 [chegihada] *vt* propose

제도 [chedo] *n* system
 제철 [chechol] *n* suitable time
 제의하다 [cheuihada] *vt* propose
 쥐 [chwi] *n* rat

大 [ch]

차¹ [cha] *n* car
 차² [cha] *n* tea
 차³ [cha] *incomp n* order
 차다 [chada] *a* cold
 차례 [charye] *n* order
 차장 [chajang] *n* conductor
 차표 [chapyo] *n* ticket
 차이 [chai] *n* difference
 착륙 [changryuk] *n* landing [ploit
 착취하다 [chakchwihada] *vt* ex-
 찬성 [chansong] *n* approval [ant
 찬연하다 [chanyonhada] *a* brilli-
 찬음식 [chanumsik] *n* entrée
 참가하다 [chamgahada] *vi* take
 part in
 참관 [chamgwan] *n* visit [isit
 참관하다 [chamgwanhada] *vt* v-
 참으로 [chamuro] *ad* really
 참외 [chamoe] *n* melon
 창광산려관 [chang·gwangsanryo
 gwan] *n* Changgwangsan Ho-
 창문 [changmun] *n* window [tel
 창조하다 [changjohada] *vi, vt*
 찾다 [chatda] *vt* seek [create
 처방 [chobang] *n* prescription
 처음 [choum] *n* first
 천¹ [chon] *n* cloth
 천² [chon] *num* thousand
 천리 [cholli] *n* one thousand *ri*
 천리마 [chollima] *n* Chollima

천리마동상 [chollimadongsang] *n*
 Chollima Statue
 천만에 [chanmane] *num dat* you
 are welcome
 천천히 [chonchoni] *ad* slowly
 철 [chol] *n* iron [way
 철길 [cholgil] *n* railroad, rail-
 철천지원수 [cholchonjiwonssu] *n*
 sworn enemy
 철폐 [cholpe] *n* abolish
 첫(번)째 [chot(bon)jjae] *num*
 first
 청년 [chongnyon] *n* youth
 청산하다 [chongsanhada] *vt* set-
 tle an account
 초 [cho] *n* second [exceed
 초과하다 [chogwahada] *vi, vt*
 초대장 [chodaejjang] *n* invita-
 tion card
 초대하다 [chodaehada] *vt* invite
 초상화 [chosanghwa] *n* portrait
 초소 [choso] *n* post
 총 [chong] *n* gun
 총리 [chongri] *n* premier
 총비서 [chongbiso] *n* General
 Secretary; general secretary
 총체로 [chongchero] *n inst* tot-
 ally
 초콜레트 [chyokolletu] *n* chocolate
 추다 [chuda] *vt* dance
 추동하다 [chudonghada] *vt* pro-

mote
 축구 [chukgu] *n* football
 축구선수 [chukgusonsu] *n* foot-
 ball player
 축구팀 [chukgutim] *n* football
 team
 축배 [chukbae] *n* toast
 축전 [chukjon] *n* festival; con-
 gratulatory telegram
 축하 [chuka] *n* congratulation
 축하하다 [chukahada] *vt* congra-
 tulate
 축원하다 [chugwonhada] *vt* wish
 출구 [chulgu] *n* exit, gateway
 출국 [chulguk] *n* departure, exit
 출국수속 [chulguk·susok] *n* dep-
 arture procedures
 출발 [chulbal] *n* departure
 출발하다 [chulbalhada] *vi, vt*
 leave, start
 출생하다 [chulsaenghada] *vi* be
 born [house
 출판사 [chulpansa] *n* publishing
 춤 [chum] *n* dance
 춥다 [chupda] *a* cold [gh
 충분하다 [chungbunhada] *a* enou-
 충성 [chungsong] *n* loyalty
 충심으로 [chungsimuro] *n inst*
 from (the bottom of) one's
 heart [ful
 충직하다 [chungjikada] *a* faith-
 층 [chung] *n* floor
 층층대 [chungchungdae] *n* stairs
 치다 [chida] *vt* beat [ment
 치료 [chiryo] *n* medical treat-
 치료하다 [chiryohada] *vt* treat
 치르다 [chiruda] *vt* pay
 치솔 [chisol] *n* toothbrush

치즈 [chiju] *n* cheese
 치약 [chiyak] *n* toothpaste
 친구 [chin·gu] *n* friend
 친선 [chinson] *n* friendship
 친척 [chinchok] *n* relative
 친애하다 [chinaehada] *vi* love
 칠 [chil] *num* seven
 칠십 [chilsip] *num* seventy
 칠월 [chirwol] *n* July
 침대 [chimdae] *n* bed
 침대차 [chimdaecha] *n* sleeping
 carriage
 침대칸 [chimdaekan] *n* compart-
 ment
 침략 [chimryak] *n* aggression
 침략자 [chimryakja] *n* aggressor
 침실 [chimsil] *n* bedroom
 채¹ [chae] *incomp n* "house"
 채² [chae] *incomp n* "just as
 it is"
 책 [chaek] *n* book
 책방 [chaekbang] *n* bookshop
 책상 [chaeksang] *n* desk
 책임비행사 [chagimbihaengsa] *n*
 captain
 체결 [chegyol] *n* conclusion
 체계 [chegye] *n* system
 체류 [cheryu] *n* stay
 체류예정기간 [cheryuyejong·gigan]
n intended length of stay
 체조 [chejo] *n* gymnastics
 체험 [chehom] *n* experience
 체육 [cheyuk] *n* physical culture,
 gymnastics [sium
 체육관 [cheyukgwang] *n* gymna-
 최우등생 [choeudungsaeng] *n*
 top student

취급하다 [chwigupada] *vi, vt* treat
 취소하다 [chwisohada] *vi, vt* cancel
 취사원 [chwisawon] *n* cook

ㄱ [k]

칼 [kal] *n* knife
 커피 [kopi] *n* coffee
 칼레 [kolle] *n* pair
 코 [ko] *n* nose
 코코아 [kokoa] *n* cocoa
 커뮤니케 [kommyunike] *n* com-
 munique
 콩 [kong] *n* bean
 쿡 [kung] *ad* plump
 크다 [kuda] *a* big, large
 키로미터 [kirometo] *n* kilometre
 광 [kwang] *ad* bang

ㄷ [t]

타고가다 [tagogada] *v with con*
 fo go (by vehicles)
 타다 [tada] *vt* get on [row
 타도하다 [tadohada] *vt* overth-
 타산하다 [tasanhada] *vt* take
 into consideration
 타자기 [tajagi] *n* typewriter
 타오르다 [taoruda] *vi* burn up
 탁구 [takgu] *n* ping-pong; table-
 tennis
 탁아소 [tagaso] *n* nursery
 탄부 [tanbu] *n* coal-miner
 탄산물 [tansanmul] *n* soda wa-
 ter [born
 탄생하다 [tansaenghada] *vi* be
 탈지면 [taljimyon] *n* absorbent
 cotton
 탑 [tap] *n* tower
 터지다 [tojida] *vi* burst
 턱 [tok] *n* jaw, chin
 토론 [toron] *n* debate
 토론자 [toronja] *n* debater
 토론하다 [toronhada] *vi, vt* debate
 토요일 [toyoil] *n* Saturday
 토의하다 [touihada] *vt* discuss
 톱 [top] *n* saw
 통 [tong] *n* barrel
 통과사증 [tong·gwasajjung] *n*
 transit visa
 통졸임 [tongjorim] *n* tinned
 goods
 통지하다 [tongjihada] *vt* inform
 통역 [tong·yok] *n* interpreta-
 tion; interpreter
 통역하다 [tong·yokada] *vi, vt*
 interpret
 통역원 [tong.yogwon] *n* interp-
 reter
 통일 [tong·il] *n* unification
 통일전선 [tong·iljonson] *n* unit-
 ed front
 통일하다 [tong·ilhada] *vt* unify
 투사 [tusa] *n* fighter
 투쟁 [tujaeng] *n* struggle
 트렁크 [turongku] *n* trunk
 특별하다 [tukbyolhada] *a* special

특별히 [tukbyori] *ad* especially
 특히 [tuki] *ad* especially
 틀리다 [tullida] *vi* be mistaken
 태도 [taedo] *n* attitude
 태양 [taeyang] *n* sun
 태어나다 [taeyonada] *vi* be born

태우다 [taeuda] *causat v* take in
 택시 [taeksi] *n* taxi
 택시정류소 [taeksijongryuso] *n*
 taxi stand
 레제 [teje] *n* thesis [sion
 텔레비죤 [tellebijyon] *n* televi-

ㅍ [p]

파괴 [pago] *n* destruction
 파괴하다 [pagoehada] *vt* destroy
 파도 [pado] *n* wave
 파마 [pama] *n* permanent wave
 파시즘 [pasijum] *n* fascism
 파운드 [paundu] *n* pound
 판매원 [panmaewon] *n* seller
 팔¹ [pal] *n* arm
 팔² [pal] *num* eight
 팔다 [palda] *vt* sell
 팔다리 [paldari] *n* limb
 팔십 [palsip] *num* eighty
 팔꿈치 [palggumchi] *n* elbow
 팔월 [parwol] *n* August
 퍼지다 [pojida] *vi* spread [ent
 편리하다 [pyollihada] *a* conveni-
 편지 [pyonji] *n* letter
 평화 [pyonghwa] *n* peace [ful
 평화롭다 [pyonghwaropda] *a* peace-
 평화적 [pyonghwajok] *n* peaceful
 평화시대 [pyonghwajidae] *n*
 peace zone
 평양 [pyongyang] *n* Pyongyang
 평양국제문화회관 [pyongyang-guk
 jemunhwahaegwan] *n* Pyong-
 yang International House of
 Culture

평양대극장 [pyongyangdaeguk
 jang] *n* Pyongyang
 Grand Theatre
 평양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] *n*
 Pyongyang Maternity Hospi-
 tal
 평양지하철도 [pyongyangjihachol
 do] *n* Pyongyang Metro
 평양체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgw
 an] *n* Pyongyang Indoor
 Stadium
 포도 [podo] *n* grapes
 포도술 [podosul] *n* grape wine
 포크 [poku] *n* fork
 포위 [powi] *n* encirclement
 폭격 [pokgyok] *n* bombing
 폭력 [pongryok] *n* violence
 표 [pyo] *n* ticket
 표값 [pyogap] *n* fare
 표과는곳 [pyopanun-got] *n* ticket
 office [press
 표현하다 [pyohyonhada] *vt* ex-
 푸르다 [puruda] *a* blue
 풀 [pul] *n* grass
 품 [pum] *n* breast, bosom
 품성 [pumsong] *n* character
 풍부하다 [pungbuhada] *a* rich
 풍습 [pungsup] *n* custom

프로레타리아 [puroretaria] *n*
 proletarian [form
 프래트홈 [puraetuhom] *n* plat-
 피 [pi] *n* blood
 피곤하다 [pigonhada] *a* get tired
 피다 [pida] *vi* bloom
 피부 [pibu] *n* skin
 피부과 의사 [pibuggwauisa] *n*
 dermatologist

피아노 [piano] *n* piano
 피압박민족 [piapbakminjok] *n*
 oppressed nation
 필름 [pillim] *n* film [sary
 필요하다 [piryohada] *a* neces-
 폐 [pe] *n* lung
 페이지 [peji] *n* page
 펜 [pen] *n* pen

ㅎ [h]

하나 [hana] *num* one
 하늘 [hanul] *n* sky
 하다 [hada] *vt* do [ly
 하마트면 [hamatumyon] *ad* near-
 학교 [hakgyo] *n* school
 학습 [haksup] *n* study [house
 학습당 [haksupdang] *n* study
 학습장 [haksupjang] *n* notebook
 학습하다 [haksupada] *vt* study
 학생 [haksaeng] *n* pupil
 학생소년궁전 [haksaengsonyon·g
 ungjon] *n* students and childr-
 en's palace
 한 [han] *num* one
 한결같이 [han·gyolgachi] *adv*
 unanimously
 한계 [han·gye] *n* limit
 한없이 [hanopsi] *ad* limitlessly
 할머니 [halmoni] *n* grandmother
 할아버지 [haraboji] *n* grand-
 father
 함께 [hamgge] *ad* together
 합격하다 [hapgyokada] *vi, vt*
 pass
 합창 [hapchang] *n* chorus
 항공 [hang·gong] *n* aviation

항공편 [hang·gongpyon] *n* by air
 mail
 항공편지 [hang·gongpyonji] *n*
 air letter
 항공우편 [hang·gong·upyon] *n*
 aerial post, air mail
 항구 [hang·gu] *n* harbour
 항로번호 [hangrobonho] *n* flight
 number
 항상 [hangsang] *ad* always
 항일 [hang·il] *n* anti-Japan(ese)
 항일투사 [hang·iltusa] *n* anti-
 Japanese fighter
 향도자 [hyangdoja] *n* leader
 허리 [hori] *n* waist
 혀 [hyo] *n* tongue
 혁명 [hyongmyong] *n* revolution
 혁명가 [hyongmyong·ga] *n* revolu-
 tionary
 혁명렬사릉 [hyongmyongryolsa
 nung] *n* revolutionary marty-
 rs' cemetery
 혁명박물관 [hyongmyongbangmul
 gwan] *n* revolutionary museum
 혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] *n*
 revolutionary ideas

혁명적 [hyongmyongjok] *n* revolutionary
 혁명하다 [hyongmyonghada] *vi* make revolution
 혁신 [hyoksin] *n* innovation
 현관 [hyon.gwan] *n* front door, entrance
 현대적 [hyondaejok] *n* modern
 현명하다 [hyonmyonghada] *a* wise [velop
 현상하다 [hyonsanghada] *vt* de-
 현실적 [hyonsiljok] *n* real
 현저하다 [hyonjohada] *a* remarkable
 혈압 [hyorap] *n* blood pressure
 협동농민 [hyopdongnongmin] *n* co-operative peasant
 협동화 [hyopdonghwa] *n* co-operativization
 협정 [hyopjong] *n* agreement
 형 [hyong] *n* elder brother
 형제 [hyongje] *n* brother
 형제국가 [hyongjegukga] *n* fraternal country
 형제당 [hyongjedang] *n* fraternal party [al
 형제적 [hyongjejok] *n* fraternal
 호 [ho] *n* number
 호수 [hosu] *n* lake
 호실 [hosil] *n* room
 호실관리원 [hosilgwaliwon] *n* chambermaid
 혹은 [hogun] *ad* or
 혼자 [honja] *n* alone
 후계자 [hugyeja] *n* successor
 후대 [hudae] *n* coming generation

후추가루 [huchuggaru] *n* pepper
 후에 [hue] *n dat* after
 훌륭하다 [hullyunghada] *a* fine
 휴게실 [hyugyesil] *n* lounge
 휴식 [hyusik] *n* rest; interval
 흐르다 [huruda] *vi* flow
 흐리다 [hurida] *a* cloudy
 흥미 [hungmi] *n* interest
 힘 [him] *n* power, might
 힘살 [himsal] *n* muscles
 힘껏 [himggot] *ad* with all one's strength
 해¹ [hae] *n* sun
 해² [hae] *n* year
 해돋이 [haedoji] *n* sunrise
 해방 [haebang] *n* liberation
 해방되다 [haebangdoeda] *vi* be liberated [rate
 해방하다 [haebanghada] *vt* liberate
 햇빛 [haetbbit] *n* sunshine
 핵무기 [haengmugi] *n* nuclear
 햄 [haem] *n* ham [weapons
 행복 [haengbok] *n* happiness
 행복하다 [haengbokada] *a* happy
 행성 [haengsong] *n* planet
 행진하다 [haengjinhada] *vi* march
 헤어지다 [heyojida] *vi* part from
 회견 [hoegyong] *n* interview
 회담 [hoedam] *n* talk
 회복되다 [hoebokdoeda] *vi* be recovered
 회복하다 [hoebokada] *vt* recover
 회화 [hoehwa] *n* conversation
 회의 [hoeui] *n* meeting
 희다 [huida] *a* white
 화장품 [hwajangpum] *n* cosmetic

화학 [hwahak] *a* chemistry
 화환 [hwahwan] *n* wreath
 화요일 [hwayoil] *n* Tuesday
 환호 [hwanho] *n* cheer
 환호하다 [hwanhohada] *vi* cheer

환영 [hwanyong] *n* welcome
 환영하다 [hwanyonghada] *vt*
 welcome
 활짝 [hwaljjak] *ad* widely

ㄱ [gg]

깨부시다 [ggabusida] *vt* break
 깎다 [ggakda] *vt* pare, shear,
 shave
 꼬냑 [ggonyaku] *n* cognac
 꼬끼오 [ggoggio] *ad* cock-a-doo-
 dle-doo
 꼭 [ggok] *ad* exactly
 꽃 [ggot] *n* flower
 꽃다발 [ggotdabal] *n* bouquet;
 bunch of flowers 「bud
 꽃망울 [ggonmang.ul] *n* flower
 꽃방 [ggotbang] *n* florist's shop

꿀 [ggul] *n* honey
 꿈 [ggum] *n* dream
 끝 [ggut] *n* end
 끝나다 [ggunnada] *vi* finish
 끝내다 [ggunnaeda] *causat v* fi-
 nish
 끼다 [ggida] *vt* put on
 깨다 [ggaeda] *vt* break
 깨끗하다 [ggaeggutada] *a* clean
 깨우다 [ggaesda] *causat v* wake
 꽤 [ggwae] *ad* pretty

ㄷ [dd]

따라가다 [ddaragada] *vt* follow
 따로 [ddaro] *ad* apart
 따르다 [ddaruda] *vt* follow
 따사롭다 [ddasaropda] *a* warm
 따뜻하다 [ddaddutada] *a* warm
 딸 [ddal] *n* daughter
 딸기 [ddalgi] *n* strawberry
 달러 [ddalla] *n* dollar
 땀 [ddam] *n* sweat
 땅 [ddang] *n* earth
 떠나다 [ddonada] *vi, vt* leave

떠난곳 [ddonangot] *n* place of
 departure
 떠메다 [ddomeda] *vt* shoulder
 떡 [ddok] *n* rice-cake
 떨다 [ddolda] *vi* tremble
 떨어지다 [ddorojida] *vi* fall
 또한 [ddohan] *ad* too, also
 뚜렷하다 [dduryotada] *a* clear
 뜨겁다 [ddugopda] *a* hot
 뜨다 [dduda] *vi* float
 때 [ddae] *n* time
 때문 [ddaemun] *incomp n* reason

ㅂ [bb]

버다 [bbada] *n* butter
빠르다 [bbaruda] *a* quick, fast
빨갈다 [bbalgata] *a* red
빨리 [bballi] *ad* quickly, fast
빨래집 [bballaejjip] *n* laundry
빨찌산 [bbaljjisan] *n* partisan
빵 [bbang] *n* bread
뺨 [bbyam] *n* cheek

버스 [bbosu] *n* bus
버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] *n*
bus stop
뼈 [bbyo] *n* bone
보트 [bbotu] *n* boat
뿐만아니라 [bbunmananira]
phrase not only..., but ...

ㅅ [ss]

싸다¹ [ssada] *a* cheap
싸다² [ssada] *vt* wrap
싸우다 [ssauda] *vi* fight
싸움 [ssaum] *n* fight
쌀 [ssal] *n* rice
쌍 [ssang] *n* pair
쌓다 [ssata] *vt* pile up, heap
up
쌓이다 [ssaida] *pass* be piled
써넣다 [ssonota] *v* with *con fo*

register
쓰다¹ [ssuda] *a* bitter
쓰다² [ssuda] *vt* write
쓰다³ [ssuda] *vt* put on
쓰다⁴ [ssuda] *vt* use
쓰이다 [ssuida] *pass* be written
쓸다 [ssulda] *vt* sweep [ed
씻기다 [ssitgida] *pass* be wash-
씻다 [ssitda] *vt* wash

ㅈ [jj]

짜다 [jjada] *vt* weave
짝 [jjak] *n* pair; piece
짧다 [jjapda] *a* short

짧은양말 [jjalbunyangmal] *n*
찢다 [jjitda] *vt* tear [socks
째 [jjae] *suffix* "order"

ㅇ

아 [a] *int* oh!
아니 [ani] *ad* not
아니다 [anida] *a* not

아니다¹ [anihada] *a* not
아니다² [anihada] *vt* not
아들 [adol] *n* son

어디 [odi] <i>pron</i> what place	없이 [opsi] <i>ad</i> without
어디에 [odie] <i>pron dat</i> where	여기 [yogi] <i>pron</i> this place
어디에서나 [odiesona] <i>pron loc</i> everywhere	여기로 [yogiro] <i>pron inst</i> here, to this place
어렵다 [oryopda] <i>a</i> difficult	여기에 [yogie] <i>pron dat</i> here
어른 [orun] <i>n</i> adult	여덟 [yodol] <i>num</i> eight
어리다 [orida] <i>a</i> young	여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae] <i>num</i> eighth
어린이 [orini] <i>n</i> child	여든 [yo-dun] <i>num</i> eighty
어머니 [omoni] <i>n</i> mother	여러 [yoro] <i>pre-n</i> many
어머님 [omonim] <i>n</i> mother (in the meaning of respect)	여름 [yorum] <i>n</i> summer
어부 [obu] <i>n</i> fisherman	여보십시오 [yobosipsio] <i>int</i> hullo
어서 [oso] <i>ad</i> please	여섯 [yosot] <i>num</i> six [sixth
어지럽다 [ojiropda] <i>a</i> giddy; dirty	여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae] <i>num</i>
어제 [oje] <i>n</i> yesterday	여위다 [yowida] <i>vi</i> become thin
어촌 [ochon] <i>n</i> fishing village	역 [yok] <i>n</i> (railway) station
어깨 [oggae] <i>n</i> shoulder	역할 [yokal] <i>n</i> role
어떻게 [oddoke] <i>a ad fo</i> how	연극 [yon-guk] <i>n</i> performance
어떻다 [oddota] <i>a</i> any	연단 [yondan] <i>n</i> platform
어찌 [ojji] <i>ad</i> how	연설 [yonsol] <i>n</i> speech
억 [ok] <i>num</i> hundred million	연설하다 [yonsolhada] <i>vi</i> make speech
억세게 [oksege] <i>a ad fo</i> firmly	연필 [yonpil] <i>n</i> pencil
억압 [ogap] <i>n</i> oppression	연회 [yonhoe] <i>n</i> banquet [hall
언덕 [ondok] <i>n</i> hill	연회장 [yonhoejang] <i>n</i> banquet
언제 [bnje] <i>pron</i> when	열 ¹ [yol] <i>n</i> heat
언제나 [onjena] <i>ad</i> always	열 ² [yol] <i>num</i> ten
언어 [ono] <i>n</i> language	열다 [yolda] <i>vt</i> open
얼굴 [olgul] <i>n</i> face	열두 [yoldu] <i>num</i> twelve
얼다 [olda] <i>vi</i> freeze	열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae] <i>num</i> twelfth
얼마 [olma] <i>pron</i> how many, how much	열둘 [yoldul] <i>num</i> twelve
얼마나 [olmana] <i>ad</i> how	열리다 [yollida] <i>pass</i> be opened
얼음 [orum] <i>n</i> ice	열심히 [yolsimi] <i>ad</i> diligently
얼음보숭이 [orumbosung-i] <i>n</i> ice-cream	열쇠 [yolsoe] <i>n</i> key
없다 [opda] <i>a</i> there is no ...	열하나 [yolhana] <i>num</i> eleven
	열한 [yolhan] <i>num</i> eleven
	열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]

- num eleventh
 열째 [yoljjae] num tenth
 얇다 [jopda] a thin
 엽서 [jopso] n postcard
 영국 [yong·guk] n England
 영국사람 [yong·guksaram] n Englishman
 영광 [yong·gwang] n glory
 영광스럽다 [yong·gwangsuropda] a glorious
 영-조사전 [yongjosajon] n English-Korean dictionary
 영화 [yonghwa] n film [house
 영화관 [yonghwagwan] n cinema
 영어 [yong·o] n English
 영어판 [yong·opan] n English edition
 영웅하다 [yong·yonghada] a heroic
 영웅 [yong·ung] n hero
 영웅적 [yong·ungjok] n heroic
 영예 [yong·ye] n honour
 영예롭다 [yong·yeropda] a honourable [nal
 영원하다 [yong·wonhada] a eternal
 영원히 [yong·woni] ad forever
 오¹ [o] num five
 오² [o] int oh!, o!
 오늘 [onul] n today
 오다 [oda] vi come
 오르다 [oruda] vi rise; get on
 오른쪽 [orunjok] n right side
 오리불고기 [oribulgogi] n roast duck
 오십 [osip] num fifty
 오전 [ojon] n beforenoon
 오전에 [ojone] n dat in the beforenoon
 오직 [ojik] ad only
 오한 [ohan] n chill
 오후 [ohu] n afternoon
 오후에 [ohue] n dat in the afternoon
 오빠 [obba] n elder brother
 오이 [oi] n cucumber
 오월 [owol] n May
 온 [on] pre-n whole
 올리다 [ollida] causat v raise
 올해 [olhae] n this year
 옳다 [olta] a right
 옷 [ot] n clothes [cloakroom
 옷맡기는곳 [onmatginungot] n
 옹호하다 [onghohada] vt defend
 요구하다 [yoguhada] vt demand
 요드링크 [yodutingku] n iodine
 요람 [yoram] n cradle [tincture
 요일 [yoil] n weekday
 용감하다 [yong·gamhada] a brave
 용감히 [yong·gami] ad bravely
 용기 [yong·gi] n courage
 용무 [yongmu] n business, affair
 용맹 [yongmaeng] n courage
 용서하다 [yongsohada] vt forgive
 우리 [uri] pron we
 우뢰 [uroe] n thunder
 우산 [usan] n umbrella
 우편 [upyon] n post
 우편국 [upyon·guk] post office
 우편요금 [upyonryogum] n postage
 우편함 [upyonham] n letter box
 (우편)엽서 [(upyon)yopso] n postcard
 우표 [upyu] n stamp
 우연히 [uyoni] ad by chance
 위에 [ue] n dat above
 운동 [undong] n movement

운명 [unmyong] *n* destiny
 운전수 [unjonsu] *n* driver
 운하 [unha] *n* canal
 울다 [ulda] *vi* weep [weep
 울리다¹ [ullida] *causat v* make
 울리다² [ullida] *vi* sound
 움직이다 [umjigida] *vi, vt* move
 웃기다 [utgida] *causat v* make
 laugh
 웃다 [utda] *vi, vt* laugh
 웃옷 [udot] *n* coat
 웅대하다 [ungdaehada] *a* grand
 웅장하다 [ung·janghada] *a* grand,
 magnificent
 유감스럽게 [yugamsuropge] *a ad*
fo to one's regret
 유격구 [yugyokgu] *n* guerrilla
 area, partisan area
 유격대원 [yugyokdaewon] *n* guer
 유리 [yuri] *n* glass [rilla
 유명하다 [yumyonghada] *a* fam-
 ous [en
 유치원 [yuchiwon] *n* kindergart-
 유쾌하다 [yukwaehada] *a* pleas-
 ant
 유일적 [yuiljok] *n* undivided
 으뜸 [uddum] *n* first
 은 [un] *n* silver
 은행 [unhaeng] *n* bank
 읊다 [upda] *vt* recite
 음식 [umsik] *n* food
 음악 [umak] *n* music
 음악가 [umakga] *n* musician
 음악회 [umakoe] *n* concert
 응 [ung] *int* yes
 응당 [ungdang] *ad* naturally
 응접실 [ungjopsil] *n* drawing
 room

이¹ [i] *num* two
 이² [i] *pron* this
 이기다 [igida] *vt* win
 이렇게 [iroke] *a ad fo* so
 이렇다 [irota] *a* such
 이르다 [iruda] *vi* arrive
 이름 [irum] *n* name
 이리 [iri] *ad* so
 이마 [ima] *n* forehead
 이미 [imi] *ad* already [tribute.
 이바지하다 [ibajihada] *vi* con-
 이발 [ibbal] *n* tooth
 이상 [isang] *n* more than
 이슬 [isul] *n* dew
 이십 [isip] *num* twenty
 이제 [ije] *n* now
 2층 [ichung] *n* first floor
 이야기 [iyagi] *n* story
 2인용 방 [iinyong bang] *n* twin-
 bedded room
 이월 [iwol] *n* February
 익다 [ikda] *vi* ripen
 인도하다 [indohada] *vt* lead
 인민 [inmin] *n* people
 인민경제 [inmin·gyongje] *n*
 national economy [Army
 인민군 [inmin·gun] *n* People's
 인민군대 [inmin.gundae] *n* Peo-
 ple's Army
 인민대중 [inmindaejung] *n* mas-
 ses of the people
 인민대학습당 [inmindae-haksup
 dang] *n* Grand People's Study
 House
 인민문화궁전 [inminmuhwagung
 jon] *n* People's Palace of
 Culture

인민정권 [inminjong·gwon] <i>n</i> people's power	잃다 [ilta] <i>vt</i> lose
인민학교 [inminhakgyo] <i>n</i> pri- mary school	임무 [immu] <i>n</i> task
인사 [insa] <i>n</i> greeting	입 [ip] <i>n</i> mouth
인사하다 [insahada] <i>vi</i> greet	입구 [ipgu] <i>n</i> entrance
인삼술 [insamsul] <i>n</i> insam wine, ginseng wine	입국 [ipguk] <i>n</i> entry
인상 [insang] <i>n</i> impression	입국수속 [ipguksusok] <i>n</i> entry procedures
인체 [inche] <i>n</i> human body	입다 [ipda] <i>vt</i> put on
인테리 [interi] <i>n</i> intellectual	입술 [ipsul] <i>n</i> lip
인형 [inhyong] <i>n</i> doll	입원하다 [ibwonhada] <i>vi</i> go to hospital
일 ¹ [il] <i>n</i> work	잉크 [ingku] <i>n</i> ink
일 ² [il] <i>num</i> one	잊다 [itda] <i>vt</i> forget
일 ³ [il] <i>n</i> day	잎 [ip] <i>n</i> leaf
일곱 [ilgop] <i>num</i> seven	있다 [itda] <i>vi</i> there is, be
일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae] <i>num</i> seventh	애 [ae] <i>n</i> child
일다 [ilda] <i>vi</i> rise	애국주의 [aegukjuui] <i>n</i> patriotism
일등 [ildung] <i>n</i> first class	애기 [aegi] <i>n</i> baby
1등급 [ildung·gup] <i>n</i> first class	애쓰다 [aessuda] <i>v</i> with <i>n</i> exert oneself
일방 [ilbang] <i>n</i> one side	애 [yae] <i>int</i> hullo
일시적 [ilsijok] <i>n</i> temporary	예 [ye] <i>int</i> yes
일식 [ilsik] <i>n</i> set	예순 [yesun] <i>num</i> sixty
1층 [ilchung] <i>n</i> ground floor	예술 [yesul] <i>n</i> art
일하다 [ilhada] <i>vi</i> work	예술축전 [yesulchukjon] <i>n</i> art festival
일흔 [ilhun] <i>num</i> seventy	외교 [oegyo] <i>n</i> diplomacy
일찌기 [iljjigi] <i>ad</i> early	외교관 [oegyogwan] <i>n</i> diplomat
일찍 [iljjik] <i>ad</i> early	외국 [oeguk] <i>n</i> foreign country
일어나다 [ironada] <i>vi</i> take place; rise	외국어 [oegugo] <i>n</i> foreign lang- uage
일요일 [iryoil] <i>n</i> Sunday	외국인 [oegugin] <i>n</i> foreigner
일요일에 [iryoire] <i>n</i> <i>dat</i> on Sunday	외과의사 [oeggwauisa] <i>n</i> surgeon
1인용 방 [irinyong bang] <i>n</i> sin- gle room	외출하다 [oechulhada] <i>vi</i> go out
일월 [irwol] <i>n</i> January	외투 [oetu] <i>n</i> overcoat
읽다 [ikda] <i>vt</i> read	왼쪽 [oenjjok] <i>n</i> left side
	위 [wi] <i>n</i> stomach
	위대하다 [widaehada] <i>a</i> great

위신 [wisin] *n* dignity
 위생실 [wisaengsil] *n* toilet
 위하다 [wihada] *vt* serve
 위하여 [wihayo] *v con fo* for
 위험 [wihom] *n* danger
 위원장 [wiwonjang] *n* chairman
 위원회 [wiwonhoe] *n* committee
 의견 [uigyon] *n* opinion
 의무 [uimu] *n* duty
 의무적 [uimujok] *n* obligatory
 의사 [uisa] *n* doctor
 의자 [uija] *n* chair
 의정 [uijong] *n* agenda
 의하여 [uihayo] *v con fo* by,
 thanks to.
 의의 [uiui] *n* significance

완수하다 [wansuhada] *vt* fulfil
 완전하다 [wanjonhada] *a* perfect
 왕복차표 [wangbokchapyo] *n*
 round-trip ticket
 원 [won] *n* circle; won (unit
 of Korean currency)
 원수 [wonsu] *n* marshal
 원수 [wonssu] *n* enemy
 원인 [wonin] *n* cause
 월 [wol] *n* month
 월요일 [woryoil] *n* Monday
 왜 [wae] *ad* why
 왜냐하면 [waenyahamyon] *phrase*
 for, because
 웨치다 [wechida] *vi, vt* cry
 웬 [wen] *pre-n* what

ENGLISH-KOREAN VOCABULARY

A

abolish 철폐하다 [cholpehada] *vt*
 abolition 철폐 [cholpe] *n*
 about 관하여 [kwanhayo] *v con*
fo; 대략 [taeryak] *n*; 약 [yak]
pre-n
 above 위에 [ue] *n dat*
 absorbent cotton 탈지면 [talji
 myon] *n*
 academy of sciences 과학원 [kwa
 hagwon] *n*
 accept 받아들이다 [padadurida] *vt*
 account 계산서 [kyesanso] *n*
 achieve 달성하다 [talsonghada] *vt*
 acrobatics 교예 [kyoye] *n*
 actively 적극적으로 [ckokgukjogu
 ro] *n inst*
 actor 배우 [paeu] *n*
 address 주소 [chuso] *n*

addressee 받는 사람 [pannunsaram]
n with att fo
 adhesive tape 반창고 [panchanggo] *n*
 admire 감탄하다 [kamtanhada] *vi*
 adult 어른 [orun] *n*
 advance 나아가다 [naagada] *vi,*
 전진하다 [chonjinhada] *vi*
 aeroplane 비행기 [pihaeng.gi] *n*
 Africa 아프리카 [apurika] *n*
 after 후에 [hue] *n dat*
 afternoon 오후 [ohu] *n*
 again 다시 [tasi] *ad*
 age 나이 [nai] *n*; 살 [sal] *n*
 agenda 의정 [uijong] *n*
 aggression 침략 [chimryak] *n*
 aggressor 침략자 [chimryakja] *n*
 agreement 협정 [hyopjong] *n*
 agricultural 농업의 [nongobui] *n*

gen
agriculture 농사 [nongsa] *n*
ah! 아이고 [aigo] *int*
air 공기 [kong-gi] *n* [onji] *n*
air letter 항공편지 [hang.gongpy
airline ticket 비행기표 [pihaeng.
gipyo] *n*
airman 비행사 [pihaengsa] *n*
airport 비행장 [pihaengjang] *n*
airport tax 비행장관세 [pihaeng.
jang.gwanse] *n*
all 다 [ta] *ad*, 모두 [modu] *ad*;
모든 [modun] *pre-n*; 전부 [chon
bu] *n*
alliance 연합 [ryonhap] *n*; 동맹
[tongmaeng] *n*
almost 거의 [kou] *ad*
alone 혼자 [honja] *n*
always 언제나 [onjena] *ad*; 늘
[nul] *ad*, 항상 [hangsang] *ad*
ambassador 대사 [taesa] *n*
America 아메리카 [amerika] *n*
and 및 [mit] *ad*, 그리고 [kuri
go] *v con fo*
animal 동물 [tongmul] *n*
anniversary 주년 [chunyon] *n*; 퉁
[tol] *n*
announcement 광고 [kwang.go] *n*
annual plan 연간계획 [nyon.gan
gyehoek] *n*
another person 남 [nam] *n*
answer 대답 [taedap] *n*; 대답하
다 [taedapada] *vi*
anti-imperialism 반제 [panje] *n*
anti-imperialist 반제의 [panje
ui] *n gen*, 반제적 [panjejok] *n*
anti-imperialist solidarity 반
제련대성 [panjeryondaessong] *n*

anti-Japan(ese) 항일 [hang.il] *n*
anti-Japanese 반일의 [panirui] *n*
gen, 항일의 [hang.irui] *n gen*
anti-Japanese fighter 항일투
사 [hang.iltusa] *n*
anti-US (imperialist) 반미 [pan
mi] *n*
any 어떤 [oddon] *a att fo*
anyone 아무 [amu] *pron*
apart 따로 [ddaro] *ad*
appear 나타나다 [natanada] *vi*
appetite 식욕 [sigyok] *n*
apple 사과 [sagwa] *n* [*vt*
apply 적용하다 [chogyong.hada]
approval 찬성 [chansong] *n*
April 사월 [sawol] *n*
aquarium 수족관 [sujokgwan] *n*
arbitrarily 함부로 [hamburo] *ad*
Arch of Triumph 개선문 [kae
sonmun] *n*
arduous 잔고한 [kan.gohan] *a*
att fo
arm 팔 [pal] *n*; 무장하다 [mujang.
hada] *vi, vt*
armaments 무장 [mujang] *n*
armistice agreement 정전협정
[chong.jonhyopjong] *n*
army 군대 [kundae] *n*
armyman 군인 [kunin] *n*
arrival 도착 [tochak] *n*
arrive 이르다 [iruda] *vi*, 도착하다
[tochakada] *vi*
art 예술 [yesul] *n*
art festival 예술축전 [yesulchuk
jon] *n*
article 론설 [ronsol] *n*
as 같이 [kachi] *ad*
ashtray 재떨이 [chaetori] *n*

Asia 아세아 [asea] *n*
 ask 묻다 [mutda] *vi, vt*
 assort 고르다 [koruda] *vt*
 at any cost 기어이 [kioi] *ad*
 attention 주의 [chui] *n*
 attitude 태도 [taedo] *n*
 August 팔월 [parwol] *n*

authority 권위 [kwonwi] *n*
 automation 자동화 [chadonghwa] *n*
 autumn 가을 [kaul] *n*
 aviation 항공 [hang-gong] *n*
 ax 도끼 [toggi] *n*
 azalea 진달래 [chindallae] *n*

B

baby 애기 [aegi] *n*
 back 뒤 [twi] *n*; 등 [tung] *n*
 bad 나쁜 [nabbun] *a att fo*
 bag 가방 [kabang] *n*
 baggage 짐 [chim] *n*
 ball 공 [kong] *n*
 ballet 바레무용 [paremuyong] *n*
 banana 바나나 [panana] *n*
 bandage 붕대 [pungdae] *n*
 bank 은행 [unhaeng] *n*
 banquet 연회 [yonhoe] *n*
 banquet hall 연회장 [yonhoejang]
 barbarity 만행 [manhaeng] *n*
 barber 리발사 [ribalsa] *n*
 barber's shop 리발소 [ribalso] *n*
 barely 겨우 [kyou] *ad*
 barrel 통 [tong] *n*
 base 기지 [kiji] *n*
 basis 기본 [kibon] *n*
 bath 목욕탕 [mogyoktang] *n*
 bath-room 목욕실 [mogyoksil] *n*
 bathe 목욕하다 [mogyokada] *vi*
 bathing 목욕 [mogyok] *n*
 battle 전투 [chontu] *n*
 be 이다 [ida] *end*; 있다 [itda] *vi*;
 제시하다 [kyesida] *vi*
 be born 태어나다 [taeyonada] *vi*,
 출생하다 [chulsaenghada] *vi*,

 탄생하다 [tansaenghada] *vi*
 beat 치다 [chida] *vt*
 beautiful 고운 [koun] *a att fo*
 아름다운 [arumdaun] *a att fo*
 beautifully 아름답게 [arumdapge]
 a ad fo
 beauty 아름다움 [arumdaum] *n*
 because 왜냐하면 [waenyahamyon]
 phrase
 become 되다 [toeda] *vi*
 bed 침대 [chimdae] *n*
 bedroom 침실 [chimsil] *n*
 bee 벌 [pol] *n*
 beef 소고기 [sogogi] *n*
 beer 맥주 [maekju] *n*
 before 앞에 [ape] *n dat* ; *앞에*
 [chone] *n dat*
 beforehand 미리 [miri] *ad*
 beforenoon 오전 [ojon] *n*
 begin 시작하다 [sijakada] *vt*
 beginning 시작 [sijak] *n*
 behind 뒤에 [twie] *n dat*
 belly 배 [pae] *n*
 below 아래에 [araee] *n dat*
 besides 그 밖에 [kupagge] *n dat*
 with pron, 그뿐아니라 [kubbuna
 nira] phrase
 best 가장 좋은 [kajangchoun] *a att*

fo with ad
 better 나은 [naun] a att fo
 bicycle 자전거 [chajon-go] n
 bill 계산서 [kyesanso] n
 billeting area 숙영지 [sugyongji] n
 bind 묶다 [mukda] vt
 bird 새 [sae] n
 birthday 생일 [saeng-il] n
 birthplace 난곳 [nan-got] n
 bitter 쓴 [ssun] a att fo
 black 검은 [komun] a att fo
 blood 피 [pi] n
 blood pressure 혈압 [hyorap] n
 bloom 피다 [pida] vi
 blue 푸른 [purun] a att fo, 하늘
 빛의 [hanulbichui] n gen [n
 board of directors 리사회 [risahoe]
 boarding card 탑승권 [tapsung-gwon]
 boat 보트 [bbotu] n [n
 body 몸 [mom] n
 boil 삶다 [samda] vt
 boiled egg 삶은 달걀 [salmun tal
 gal] n with att fo
 boiled fish 지진 물고기 [chijin
 mulgogi] n with att fo
 boiled rice 밥 [pap] n
 bold 대담한 [taedamhan] a att fo
 bombing 폭격 [pokgyok] n
 bond 뉴대 [nyudae] n
 bone 뼈 [bbyo] n
 book 책 [chaek] n; 권 [kwon] n
 bookshop 책방 [chaekbang] n
 bosom 품 [pum] n
 botanical garden 식물원 [singmu
 rwon] n
 both 쌍방의 [ssangbang-ui] n gen
 bottle 병 [pyong] n
 bouquet 꽃다발 [ggotdabal] n

boy 소년 [sonyon] n [n
 branch 가지 [kaji] n, 부문 [pumun]
 brave 용감한 [yong.gamhan] a att
 fo
 bravely 용감히 [yong.gami] ad
 bread 빵 [bbang] n
 break 깨다 [ggaeda] vt; 까부시다
 [ggabusida] vt
 breakfast 아침식사 [achimsiksa]
 n; 아침식사를 하다 [achimsiksa
 rul hada] v with n
 breast 가슴 [kasum] n
 bridge 다리 [tari] n
 bright 밝은 [palgun] a att fo
 brilliant 찬연한 [chanyonhan] a
 att fo
 bring 가져오다 [kajyooda] vt; 가
 져다주다 [kajyodajuda] vt
 broad daylight 대낮 [taenat] n
 broadcast 방송하다 [pangsong .ha
 da] vt
 broadcasting 방송 [pangsong] n
 brother 형제 [hyongje] n
 build 건설하다 [konsolhada] vt
 burn 불타다 [pultada] vi
 burn up 타오르다 [taoruda] vi
 burst 터지다 [tojida] vi
 bus 버스 [bbosu] n [so] n
 bus stop 버스정류소 [bbosujongryu
 busily 바빠 [pabbi] ad; 바쁘게
 [pabbuge] a ad fo
 business 용무 [yongmu] n
 busy 바쁜 [pabbun]; a att fo
 but 그러나 [kurona] ad; 그렇지만
 [kurochiman] a con fo; 그런데
 [kuronde] a con fo
 butter 버터 [bbada] n
 buy 사다 [sada] vt

buzz 붕붕 [pungbung] *ad*
by 의하여 [uihayo] *v con fo*
by air mail 항공편 [hang.gong

pyon] *n*
by chance 우연히 [uyoni] *ad*

C

cabbage 가두배추 [kadubaechu] *n*
cake 과자 [kwaja] *n*; 생과자
[saeng.gwaja] *n*
calendar 달력 [tallyok] *n*
calf 장딴지[changddanji] *n*
call 부르다 [puruda] *vt*
call (a person) on the tele-
phone 전화를 걸다 [chonhwarul
kolda] *v with n*
camera 사진기 [sajin.gi] *n*
camera shop 사진용품상점 [sajin
yongpumsangjom] *n*
canal 운하 [unha] *n* [*vt*
cancel 취소하다 [chwisohada] *vi*,
cannot 못하다 [motada] *vt*
captain 선장 [sonjang] *n*; 책임
비행사 [chaegimbihaengsa] *n*
capital 수도 [sudo] *n*
capitalism 자본주의 [chabonjuui] *n*
capitalist 자본가 [chabon.ga] *n*;
자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] *n*
car 차 [cha] *n*, 자동차 [chadong
cha] *n*
carry 나르다 [naruda] *vt*
carry out 해내다 [haenaeda] *v*
with con fo; 수행하다 [suhaeng.
hada] *vt* [got] *n*
cash-desk 돈받느곳 [tonbannun.
catch 잡다 [chapda] *vt*
catch cold 감기들다 [kamgidulda]
phrase
ceasefire 정전 [chongjon] *n*

celebrate 쇠다 [soeda] *vt*
central 중심의 [chungsimui] *n*
gen; 중앙의 [chung.ang.ui] *n*
gen
centre 중심 [chungsim] *n*; 중앙
[chung.ang] *n*
certainly 반드시 [pandusi] *ad*
certificate 증명서 [chungmyongso] *n*
chair 의자 [uija] *n*; 결상 [kol
sang] *n*; 강좌 [kangjwa] *n*
chairman 위원장 [wiwonjang] *n*
Chajusong 자주성 [chajussong] *n*
chambermaid 호실관리원 [hosilgwai
liwon] *n*
champagne 샴팡주 [syampangju] *n*
change 변하다 [pyonhada] *vi, vt*
Changgwangsan Hotel 창광산려관
[chang.gwangsan ryogwan] *n*
character 성격 [song.gyok] *n*, 품
성 [pumsong] *n*
cheap 낮은 [nugun] *a att fo*, 싼
[ssan] *a att fo*
cheek 뺨 [bbyam] *n*
cheer 환호 [hwanho] *n*; 환호하다
[hwanhohada] *vi*
cheese 치즈 [chiju] *n*
chemistry 화학 [hwahak] *n*
chess 장기 [chang.gi] *n*
chestnut 밤 [pam] *n*
chicken 닭고기 [takgogi] *n*
child 아이 [ai] *n*, 애 [ae] *n*; 어
린이 [orini] *n*

Children's Union member 소년단
 원 [sonyondanwon] *n*
chill 오한 [ohan] *n*
chocolate 초콜레트 [chyokolletu] *n*
Chollima 천리마 [chollima] *n*
Chollima Statue 천리마동상 [chol
 limadongsang] *n*
chopsticks 저가락 [choggarak] *n*
chorus 합창 [hapchang] *n*
cigarette 담배 [tambae] *n*; 가치
 담배 [kachidambae] *n* [gwan] *n*
cinema house 영화관 [yonghwa
 circus] 교예 [kyoye] *n*; 교예극장
 [kyoyegukjang] *n*
citizen 공민 [kongmin] *n*
city 도시 [tosi] *n*
city bus 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] *n*
city centre 시내 [sinae] *n*
city sightseeing 시내구경 [sinae
 gugyong] *n*
city sightseeing bus 시내관광버스
 [sinaegwan · gwangbbosu] *n*
claim tag 짐표 [chimpyo] *n*
class 계급 [kyegup] *n*; 학급 [hak
 gup] *n*
classical music 교전음악 [kojon
 umak] *n*
classroom 교실 [kyosil] *n* [fo
clean 깨끗한 [ggaeggutan] *a att*
clear 맑은 [malgun] *a att fo*
clear up 개다 [kaeda] *vi*, 개이다
 [kaeida] *vi*, 맑아지다 [malgaji
 da] *v with con fo*
climate 기후 [kihu] *n*
cloakroom 옷맡기는곳 [onmatginun
 ·got] *n*, 손집맡기는곳 [sonjim

matginungot] *n*
cloth 천 [chon] *n* [n
clothes 옷 [ot] *n*, 양복 [yangbok]
cloud 구름 [kurum] *n*
cloudy 흐린 [hurin] *a att fo*
clubhouse 구락부 [kurakbu] *n*
coal 석탄 [soktan] *n*
coal-miner 탄부 [tanbu] *n*
coat 옷옷 [udot] *n* [o] *ad*
cock-a-doodle-doo 꼬끼오 [ggoggi
cocoa 코코아 [kokoa] *n*
coffee 커피 [kopi] *n*
cognac 꼬냐크 [ggonyaku] *n*
cold 감기 [kamgi] *n*; 추운 [chuun]
a att fo, 찬 [chan] *a att fo*
collective 집단 [chipdan] *n*
college 대학 [taehak] *n*
colour 색 [saek] *n*; 색깔 [saek
 gal] *n*
comb 빗 [pit] *n*; 빗다 [pitda] *vt*
combination 결합 [kyolhap] *n*
come 오다 [oda] *vi* [vt
come back 돌아오다 [toraoda] *vi*,
come in 들어오다 [turooda] *vi*
come together 모이다 [moida]
pass
coming generation 후대 [hudae] *n*
commemoration 기념 [kinyom] *n*
commerce 상업 [sang.op] *n*
committee 위원회 [wiwonhoe] *n*
communication 교통 [kyotong] *n*
communiqué 콤뮈니케 [kommyuni
 ke] *n* [ui] *n*
communism 공산주의 [kongsanju
 juuija] *n*; 공산주의적 [kongsan
 juuijok] *n* [kan] *n*
compartment 침대칸 [chimdae

complicated 복잡한 [pokjapan] *a*
att fo
composer 작곡가 [chakgokga] *n*
comrade 동무 [tongmu] *n*, 동지
 [tongji] *n*
comrade-in-arms 전우 [chonu] *n*
concert 음악회 [umakoe] *n*
conclude 맺다 [maetda] *vt*
conclusion 체결 [chegyol] *n*
concurrently 겸 [kyom] *ad*
condition 조건 [choggon] *n*
conductor 차장 [chajang] *n*
confront 대하다 [taehada] *vt*
congratulate 축하하다 [chukahada]
vt, 경축하다 [kyongchukada] *vt*
congratulation 축하 [chuka] *n*
congratulatory telegram 축전 [chuk
 jon] *n*
connection 련결 [ryon.gyol] *n*
considerably 상당히 [sangdang.i]
ad
construction 건설 [konsol] *n*
consul 령사 [ryongsa] *n*
consulate 령사관 [ryongsagwan] *n*
continue 계속하다 [kyesokada] *vt*
continuously 련이어 [ryonio] *ad*;
 계속 [kyesok] *n*
contract 계약 [kyeyak] *n*
contribute 이바지하다 [ibajihada]
vi [att fo
convenient 편리한 [pyollihan] *a*
conversation 회화 [hoehwa] *n*
cook 취사원 [chwisawon] *n*
cool 서늘한 [sonulhan] *a att fo*
co-operative peasant 협동농민
 [hyopdongnongmin] *n*
co-operativization 협동화 [hyop
 donghwa] *n*

copy 부 [pu] *n*
corridor 복도 [pokdo] *n*
cosmetic 화장품 [hwajangpum] *n*
cost 값이 들다 [kapsi tulda] *phrase*
cough 기침 [kichim] *n*; 기침하다
 [kichimhada] *vi*
count 세다 [seda] *vt*, 계산하다
 [kyesanhada] *vt*
counter 계산대 [kyesandae] *n*
country 나라 [nara] *n*
county 군 [kun] *n*
courage 용기 [yong.gi] *n*, 용맹
 [yongmaeng] *n*
cover 덮다 [topda] *vt*
cow 소 [so] *n*
coward 비겁한자 [pigopanja] *n*
cradle 요람 [yoram] *n*
crawl 기다 [kida] *vi* [vt
create 창조하다 [changjohada] *vi*,
credentials 신임장 [sinimjang] *n*
cross 건너다 [konnuda] *vi, vt*
crossing 건너가는곳 [konnoganun
 .got] *n*
crossroad 십자로 [sipjaro] *n*
crosswalk 건널길 [konnumgil] *n*
cry 소리치다 [sorichida] *v with n*
cucumber 오이 [oi] *n*
cultural clubhouse 문화회관 [mun
 hwahoegwan] *n* [gungjon] *n*
cultural palace 문화궁전 [munhwa
cultural revolution 문화혁명 [mun
 hwahyongmyong] *n*
culture 문화 [munhwa] *n*
cup 잔 [chan] *n*
curio 골동품 [koldongpum] *n*
curio shop 골동품상점 [koldong
 pumsangjom] *n*

custom 풍습 [pungsup] *n*
customs 관세 [kwanse] *n*; 세관

dance 춤 [chum] *n*
dancer 무용가 [muyong.ga] *n*
danger 위험 [wihom] *n*
dark 어두운 [oduun] *a att fo*
date 날자 [nalja] *n*
date of birth 난날 [nannal] *n*
daughter 딸 [ddal] *n*
dawn 밝다 [pakda] *a*; 동 트다
[tong tuda] *phrase*
day 날 [nal] *n*, 일 [il] *n*
day train 낮차 [natcha] *n*
daytime 낮 [nat] *n* 「 *fo*
dazzling 눈부신 [nunbusin] *a att*
dear 친애하는 [chinaehanun] *v*
death 죽음 [chugum] *n* 「 *att fo*
debate 토론하다 [toronhada] *vi*,
vt, 논쟁하다 [ronjaenghada]
vt; 토론 [toron] *n*, 논쟁 [ron
jaeng] *n*
debater 토론자 [toronja] *n*
debt 빚 [pit] *n*
December 십이월 [sibiwol] *n*
decide 결정하다 [kyoljonghada]
vt
decisive 결정적 [kyoljongjok] *n*
declare 신고하다 [sin.gohada] *vt*
deep 깊은 [kipun] *a att fo*
deeply 깊이 [kipi] *ad*
defend 지키다 [chikida] *vt*; 옹호
하다 [onghohada] *vt*
delegate 사절 [sajol] *n*; 대표

[segwan] *n*
cut 자르다 [charuda] *vt*

D

[taepyo] *n*
delegation 대표단 [taepyodan] *n*
demand 요구하다 [yoguhada] *vt*
demarcation line 분계선 [pun.gye
son] *n*
democracy 민주주의 [minjujuui] *n*
democratic 민주주의적 [minjujuui
jok] *n*
demonstrate 떨치다 [ddolchida] *vt*
dentist 구강과 의사 [kugang.gwa
uisa] *n*
department 부 [pu] *n* 「 [jom] *n*
department store 백화점 [paekwa
departure 출발 [chulbal] *n*, 출국
[chulguk] *n*
depth 깊이 [kipi] *n*
deputy 대의원 [taeuiwon] *n*, 대리
인 [taeriin] *n*
dermatologist 피부과 의사 [pibugg
wauisa] *n*
desk 책상 [chaeksang] *n*
dessert 식후다과 [sikudagwa] *n*
destination 목적지 [mokjokji] *n*
destination of the journey 여행목
적지 [ryohaengmokjokji] *n*
destiny 운명 [unmyong] *n*
destroy 파괴하다 [pagoehada] *vt*
destruction 파괴 [pago] *n*
determine 결심하다 [kyolsimhada]
vi, vt
develop 발전시키다 [paljonsikida]
causat v; 현상하다 [hyonsangha
da] *vt*

development 발전 [paljon] *n*
devote 바치다 [pachida] *vt*
dew 이슬 [isul] *n*
diarrhoea 설사 [solsa] *n*
dictatorship 독재 [tokjae] *n*
dictionary 사전 [sajon] *n*
die 죽다 [chukda] *vi*
difference 차이 [chai] *n*
different 다른 [tarun] *a att fo*
differently 달리 [talli] *ad*
difficult 어려운 [oryoun] *a att fo*
dignity 위신 [wisin] *n*
diligent 부지런한 [pujironhan] *a att fo*
diligently 부지런히 [pujironi] *ad*,
 열심히 [yolsimi] *ad* 「dang」 *n*
dining car 렬차식당 [ryolchasik]
dining room 식당 [sikdang] *n*
dinner hour 점심시간 [chomsimsi
 gan] *n*
diplomacy 외교 [oegyo] *n*
diplomat 외교관 [oegyogwan] *n*
direction 방향 [panghyang] *n*
director 지배인 [chibaein] *n*
dirty 더러운 [toroun] *a att fo*,
 어지러운 [ojiroun] *a att fo*;
 더럽히다 [toropida] *vt*
disappear 사라지다 [sarajida] *vi*
discipline 규률 [kyuyul] *n*
discuss 토의하다 [touihada] *vt*

dish 요리 [ryori] *n* 「*vt*
distinguish 구별하다 [kubyolhada]
divide 나누다 [nanuda] *vt*; 갈라
 지다 [kallajida] *vi*
do 하다 [hada] *vt*
do not know 모르다 [moruda] *vt*
doctor 의사 [uisa] *n*
dog 개 [kae] *n*
dogmatism 교조주의 [kyojojuui] *n*
doll 인형 [inhyong] *n*
dollar 달러 [ddalla] *n*
domestic animal 집짐승 [chipjim
door 문 [mun] *n* 「sung」 *n*
door of the kitchen 부엌문 [pu
 ongmun] *n* 「*n*
drawing room 응접실 [ungjopsil]
dream 꿈 [ggum] *n*
drink 마시다 [masida] *vt*
drive out 몰아내다 [moranaeda]
vt, 내쫓다 [naejjotda] *vt*
driver 자동차운전수 [chadongchaun
 jonsu] *n*, 운전수 [unjonsu] *n*
drop behind 뒤떨어지다 [twiddor
 ojida] *vi*
drop in 들리다 [tullida] *vi*
dry 마른 [marun] *v att of*
duty 의무 [uimu] *n*
dwelling 살림집 [sallimjip] *n*, 주
 래 [chutaek] *n*

E

each other 서로 [soro] *ad*
ear 귀 [kwi] *n* 「jjigi」 *ad*
early 일찍 [iljjik] *ad*, 일찌기 [il
earth 땅 [ddang] *n*, 지구 [chigu] *n*

earthenware jar 독 [tok] *n*
east 동(쪽) [tong(jjok)] *n*; 동쪽
 의 [tongjjogui] *n gen*
easy 쉬운 [swiun] *a att fo*

eat 먹다 [mokda] vt, 잡수시다
[chapsusida] vt
economic 경제의 [kyongjeui] n
gen; 경제적 [kyongjejok] n
economy 경제 [kyongje] n
educate 교육하다 [kyoyukada] vt,
교양하다 [kyoyanghada] vt
education 교육 [kyoyuk] n, 교양
[kyoyang] n
educator 교양자 [kyoyangja] n
egg 닭알 [talgal] n [num
eight 여덟 [yodol] num, 팔 [pal]
eighth 여덟(번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]
num [[palsip] num
eighty 여든 [yodun] num, 팔십
elbow 팔꿈치 [palggumchi] n
elder brother 형 [hyong] n, 오빠
[obba] n
eldest sister 맏누이 [mannui] n
elect 선거하다 [son.gohada] vt
election 선거 [son.go] n
electric 전기의 [chon.giui] n gen
electric train 전기차 [chon.gich
a] n
electricity 전기 [chon.gi] n
elevate 높다 [nopida] vt
elevator 승강기 [sung.gang.gi] n
eleven 열하나 [yolhana] num, 열
한 [yolhan] num, 십일 [sib
il] num
eleventh 열한(번)째 [yolhan(bon)
jjae] num
embassy 대사관 [taesagwan] n
embrace 안다 [anda] vt
employee 종업원 [chong.obwon] n
encirclement 포위 [powi] n
end 끝 [ggut] n
enemy 적 [chok] n

engineer 기사 [kisa] n
England 영국 [yong.guk] n
English 영어 [yong.o] n; 영어의
[yong.oui] n gen [n
English edition 영어판 [yong.opan]
English-Korean dictionary 영조사
전 [yong.josajon] n
Englishman 영국사람 [yong-guk
saram] n
enjoy 누리다 [nurida] vt [att fo
enough 충분한 [chungbunhan] a
enterprise 기업소 [kiopso] n
entertain 대접하다 [taejopada] vt
entrance 들어가는곳 [turoganun.
got] n, 입구 [ipgu] n
entrée 찬음식 [chanumsik] n
entrust 맡기다 [matgida] causat v
entry 입국 [ipguk] n
envelope 봉투 [pongtu] n
equipment 장비 [changbi] n
era 기원 [kiwon] n; 시대 [sidae] n
escalator 계단식 승강기 [kyedansik
sung.gang.gi] n
especially 특히 [tuki] ad, 특별히
[tukbyori] ad [att fo
eternal 영원한 [yong.wonhan] a
Europe 구라파 [kurapa] n [gen
European 구라파의 [kurapau] n
European food 구라파음식 [kura
paumsik] n
even if 비록 [pirok] ad
evening 저녁 [chonyok] n
every 매 [mae] pre-n
every day 매일 [maeil] n
everywhere 어디에서나 [odiesona]
pron loc
exactly 꼭 [ggok] ad
examination 시험 [sihom] n

exceed 초과하다 [chogwahada] *vi, vt*
exchange 교환 [kyohwan] *n*; 바
 꾸다 [pagguda] *vt*, 교환하다 [kyo
 hwanhada] *vt*
exchange of notes 각서교환 [kak
 sogyohwan] *n* [with *n*
exert oneself 애쓰다 [aessuda] *v*
exhibition 전람회 [chollamhoe] *n*;
 전람관 [chollamgwang] *n*
existence 존재 [chonjae] *n*
exit 나가는곳 [naganun · got] *n*;
 출국 [chulguk] *n*

expensive 비싼 [pissan] *a att fo*
experience 경험 [kyong · hom] *n*,
 체험 [chehom] *n* [*vt*
exploit 착취하다 [chakchwihada]
export 수출 [suchul] *n*; 수출하다
 [suchulhada] *vt* [*n*
export goods 수출품 [suchulpum]
express 표현하다 [pyohyonhada]
vt; 급행열차 [kupaengryolcha] *n*
exterior 밖의 [paggui] *n gen*
eye 눈 [nun] *n*
eyebrow 눈썹 [nunsop] *n*

F

face 얼굴 [olgul] *n*
fact 사실 [sasil] *n*
factory 공장 [kongjang] *n*
faithful 충직한 [chungjikan] *a*
att fo
fall 떨어지다 [ddorojida] *vi*
fall asleep 잠들다 [chamdulda] *vi*
family 가족 [kajok] *n*
family name 성 [song] *n*
famous 유명한 [yumyong · han] *a*
att fo
famous spots 명승지 [myongsung
 ji] *n*
far 먼 [mon] *a att fo*
far away 멀리 [molli] *ad*
fare 표값 [pyoggap] *n*
farm 농장 [nongjang] *n*
farmer 농민 [nongmin] *n*
farmer's hut 농막집 [nongmakjip]
n, 농막 [nongmak] *n*

fascism 파시즘 [pasijum] *n*
father 아버지 [aboji] *n*
fatherland 조국 [choguk] *n*
favour 더 좋아하다 [to choahada]
v with con fo and ad
fear 공포 [kongpo] *n*; 두려워하
 다 [turyowohada] *vt*
February 이월 [iwol] *n*
feel 느끼다 [nuggida] *vt*
female 여자 [nyoja] *n*
fertilizer 비료 [piryo] *n*
festival 축전 [chukjon] *n*
festival day 명절 [myongjol] *n*
few 적은 [chogun] *a att fo*; 약간
 [yakgan] *ad*
fibre 섬유 [somyu] *n*
field 들 [tul] *n*, 밭 [pat] *n*
fifth 다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon) [jja
 e] *num* [*num*
fifty 쉰 [swin] *num*, 오십 [osip]

fight 싸움 [ssaum] *n*; 싸우다 [ssa
 uda] *vi*
fighter 투사 [tusa] *n*
figure 수자 [sujja] *n* [lim] *n*
film 영화 [yong.hwa] *n*, 필름 [pil
fine 훌륭한 [hullyung.han] *a att*
fo
finger 손가락 [son.garak] *n*
ingernail 손톱 [sontop] *n*
finish 끝내다 [ggunnaeda] *causat*
v; 끝나다 [ggunnada] *vi*
fire 불 [pul] *n*
firmly 굳게 [kutge] *a ad fo*, 억
 세게 [oksege] *a ad fo*
first 먼저 [monjo] *ad*, 처음 [cho
 um] *n*; 첫(번)째 [chot(bon)
 jjae] *num* [ri] *n*
fish foods 물고기요리 [mulgogiryo]
fish soup 생선국 [saengson.guk] *n*
fisherman 어부 [obu] *n*
fishing village 어촌 [ochon] *n*
fit 맞다 [matda] *vi*
five 다섯 [tasot] *num*, 오 [o] *num*
fizzy drink 사이다 [saida] *n*
flag 기발 [kitbal] *n*, 기치 [ki
 chi] *n*
flesh 살 [sal] *n*
flight number 항공번호 [hangro
 bonho] *n*
float 뜨다 [dduda] *vi* [*n*
floor 바닥 [padak] *n*, 층 [chung]
florist's shop 꽃방 [ggotbang] *n*
flow 흐르다 [huruda] *vi*
flower 꽃 [ggot] *n*
flower bud 꽃망울 [ggonmang.ul] *n*
fly 날다 [nalda] *vi*
fog 안개 [an.gae] *n* [yong] *n*
folk dance 민족무용 [minjongmu

folk song 민요 [minyoy] *n*
follow 따르다 [ddaruda] *vt*, 따라
 가다 [ddaragada] *vt*
food 음식 [umsik] *n*
foodstuff 식료품 [singryopum] *n*
foot 발 [pal] *n*
football 축구 [chukgu] *n*
football player 축구선수 [chukgu
 sonsu] *n* [*n*
football team 축구팀 [chukgutim]
for 위하여 [wihayo] *v con fo*, 대
 하여 [taehayo] *v con fo*
for a while 잠시 [chamsi] *ad*
for ever 영원히 [yong.woni] *ad*
for oneself 스스로 [susuro] *ad*
for the first time 비로소 [piro
 so] *ad*
fore 앞 [ap] *n*
forehead 이마 [ima] *n*
foreign 외국의 [oegugui] *n gen*,
 대외적 [taeoejok] *n*, 판 곳의
 [ddan kosui] *n gen with pre-n*
foreign country 외국 [oeguk] *n*
foreign language 외국어 [oegugo] *n*
foreign trade 대외무역 [taeoemu
 yok] *n*
foreigner 외국인 [oegugin] *n*
foreword 머리말 [morimal] *n*
forget 잊다 [itda] *vt*
forgive 용서하다 [yongsohada] *vt*
fork 포크 [poku] *n*
forked road 갈림길 [kallimgil] *n*
forty 마흔 [mahun] *num*; 사십
 [sasip] *num*
forward 앞으로 [apuro] *n inst*
foundation 기초 [kicho] *n*, 근본
 [kunbon] *n*
fountain 분수 [punsu] *n*

fountain-pen 만년필 [mannyonpil] *n*
four 넷 [net] *num*, 네 [ne] *num*,
 사 [sa] *num*
fourth 네번째 [nebonjjae] *num*, 넷
 째 [netjjae] *num*
fraternal 형제적 [hyongjejok] *n*
fraternal country 형제국가 [hyong
 jegukga] *n* 「dang」 *n*
fraternal party 형제당 [hyongje
 freeze 얼다 [olda] *vi* 「n
fresh egg 생닭알 [saengdalgal]
Friday 금요일 [kumyoil] *n* 「n
friend 벗 [pot] *n*, 친구 [chin.gu]
friendship 친선 [chinson] *n*

from 부터 [puto] *aux end*
from (the bottom of) one's heart
 충심으로 [chungsimuro] *n inst*
front 전선 [chonson] *n*
front desk 접수 [chopsu] *n*
front door 현관 [hyon.gwan] *n*
front gate 대문 [taemun] *n*;
 앞문 [ammun] *n*
fruit 과일 [kwail] *n*, 과실 [kwa
 sil] *n*
fruit juice 과일즙 [kwailjup] *n*
full 가득한 [kadukan] *a att fo*
function 기능 [kinung] *n* 「n
future 앞날 [amnal] *n*, 미래 [mirae]

G

gains 전취물 [chonchwimul] *n*
garden 마당 [madang] *n*
gate 문 [mun] *n*
gauze 가제 [kaje] *n*
general 장군 [chang.gun] *n*
general secretary 총비서 [chong
 biso] *n* 「n
generation 세대 [sedae] *n*, 대 [tae]
get acquainted with 알게 되다 [al
 ge toeda] *v with ad fo*
get down 내리다 [naerida] *vi*
get on 타다 [tada] *vt*
get tired 피곤하다 [pigonhada] *a*
giddy 어지러운 [ojiroun] *a att fo*
ginseng wine 인삼술 [insamsul] *n*
girl 소녀 [sonyo] *n*
give 주다 [juda] *vt*, 드리다 [tu
 rida] *vt* 「yonhada」 *vt*
give a performance 상연하다 [sang.
 give back 돌려주다 [tollyojuda] *vt*

glad 기쁜 [kibbun] *a att fo*; 반가
 운 [pan.gaun] *a att fo*
gladly 반가이 [pan.gai] *ad*
glass 유리 [yuri] *n*
glasses 안경 [an.gyong] *n*
glitter 번쩍거리다 [ponjjokgorida]
vi, vt
glorious 영광스러운 [yong.gwang
 suroun] *a att fo*
glory 영광 [yong.gwang] *n*
gloves 장갑 [chang.gap] *n*
go 가다 [kada] *vi*
go (by vehicles) 타고 가다 [tagoka
 da] *v with con fo*
go back 돌아가다 [toragada] *vi*,
vt
go out 나가다 [nagada] *vi*, 외출
 하다 [oechulhada] *vi*
go through the formalities 수속
 하다 [susokada] *vt*

go up 솟다 [sotda] *vi*
 goal 목표 [mokpyo] *n*
 gold 금 [kum] *n*
 good 좋은 [choun] *a att fo*
 goods 물건 [mulgon] *n*, 물품 [mulpum] *n*
 govern 지배하다 [chibaehada] *vt*
 graduate 졸업하다 [choropada] *vt*
 grain 알곡 [algok] *n*
 grammar 문법 [munbop] *n*
 grand 웅대한 [ungdaehan] *a att fo*, 웅장한 [ungjanghan] *a att fo*
 Grand People's Study House 인민대 학습당 [inmindahaksupdang] *n* [jang] *n*
 Grand Theatre 대극장 [taeguk] *n*
 grandfather 할아버지 [haraboji] *n*
 grandmother 할머니 [halmoni] *n*
 grape wine 포도술 [podosul] *n*
 grapes 포도 [podo] *n*
 grass 풀 [pul] *n*
 gratis 무상의 [musang.ui] *a gen*

gray 회색의 [hoesaegui] *n gen*
 great 위대한 [widaehan] *a att fo*, 거대한 [kodaehan] *a att fo*
 great nature 대자연 [taejayon] *n*
 greet 인사하다 [insahada] *vi*
 greeting 인사 [insa] *n*
 grocer's shop 식료품상점 [singnyo pumsangjom] *n*
 grow 자라다 [charada] *vi*
 grow old 늙다 [nukda] *vi*
 gruel 죽 [chuk] *n*
 guarantee 보증 [pojung] *n* [n
 guerrilla 유격대원 [yugyokdaewon] *n*
 guerrilla area 유격구 [yugyokgu] *n*
 guest 손님 [sonnim] *n*
 guide 안내원 [annaewon] *n*
 guide-book 안내서 [annaeso] *n*
 gun 총 [chong] *n*; 대포 [taepo] *n*
 gymnasium 체육관 [cheyukgwang] *n*
 gymnastics 체조 [chejo] *n*, 체육 [cheyuk] *n* [in.gwauisa] *n*
 gynaecologist 산부인과의사 [sanbu

H

hair 머리칼 [morikal] *n*
 ham 햄 [haem] *n*
 hammer 마치 [machi] *n*
 hand 손 [son] *n*
 hand baggage 손짐 [sonjim] *n*
 hand clapping 박수 [paksu] *n*
 hand over 넘겨주다 [nomgyojuda] *vt*
 handkerchief 손수건 [sonsugon] *n*
 handwriting 글씨 [kulssi] *n*
 hang 걸다 [kolda] *vt*
 happiness 행복 [haengbok] *n*
 happy 행복한 [haengbokan] *a att fo*
 harbour 항구 [hang.gu] *n* [fo

hard 된 [toen] *a att fo*, 굳은 [kudun] *a att fo*
 harden 다지다 [tajida] *vt*
 hasten 다그치다 [taguchida] *vt*
 hat 모자 [moja] *n*
 hate 증오하다 [chung.ohada] *vt*
 have 가지다 [kajida] *vt* [vi
 have a meal 식사하다 [siksahada] *vi*
 have one's hair cut 리발하다 [ribalhada] *vi* [v
 have sit 앉히다 [anchida] *causat*
 he 그 [ku] *pron*
 head of a delegation 대표단 단장

[taepyodandanjang] *n*
headache 머리아픔 [moriapum] *n*
health 건강 [kon·gang] *n*
healthy 건강한 [kon.ganghan] *a*
att fo
hear 듣다 [tutda] *vt* [um] *n*
heart 심장 [simjang] *n*; 마음 [ma
heat 열 [yol] *n*
heavy 무거운 [mugoun] *a att fo*
heavy industry 중공업 [chung.
gong·op] *n* [da] *vt*
help 방조 [pangjo] *n*; 돕다 [top
hen 닭 [tak] *n*
here 여기에 [yogie] *pron dat*; 여
기로 [yogiro] *pron inst*
hero 영웅 [yong.ung] *n*; 주인공
[chuin.gong] *n*
heroic 영용한 [yong.yong.han] *a*
att fo, 영웅적 [yong.ung.jok] *n*
high 높은 [nopun] *a att fo*; 높이

I 나 [na] *pron*, 내 [nae] *pron*,
저 [cho] *pron*, 제 [che] *pron*
ice 얼음 [orum] *n* [i] *n*
ice cream 얼음보숭이 [orumbosung.
Ice Rink 빙상관 [pingsang.gwan] *n*
idea 사상 [sasang] *n*
ideological 사상적 [sasangjok] *n*
ideological revolution 사상혁명 [sa
sanghyongmyong] *n*
if 만약 [manyak] *n*, 만일 [manil]
n, 가령 [karyong] *ad*
illness 병 [pyong] *n*
imagination 상상 [sangsang] *n*

[nopi] *ad*
hill 언덕 [ondok] *n* [n
historical places 사적지 [sajokji]
history 역사 [ryoksa] *n*
holiday 쉬는날 [swinunnal] *n*
honey 꿀 [ggul] *n*
honorary title 명예칭호 [myong.ye
chingho] *n*
honour 영예 [yongye] *n*
honourable 영예로운 [yongyeroun]
a att fo
hope 바라다 [parada] *vt*
horse 말 [mal] *n*
hospital 병원 [pyong.won] *n*
hotel 려관 [ryogwan] *n*, 호텔 [ho
tel] *n*
house 집 [chip] *n*
how 어떻게 [oddoke] *a ad fo*, 어
찌 [ojji] *ad*, 얼마나 [olmana] *ad*
hullo 애 [yae] *int*
husband and wife 부부 [pubu] *n*

I

imagine 상상하다 [sangsanghada]
immediately 곧 [kot] *ad* [vt
imperialism 제국주의 [chegukjuui] *n*
imperialist 제국주의자 [chegukju
uija] *n*
import 수입 [suip] *n*; 수입하다
[suipada] *vt* [att fo
important 중요한 [chung.yohan] *a*
impression 인상 [insang] *n*
in the afternoon 오후에 [ohue] *n*
dat [[ojone] *n dat*
in the beforenoon 오전에
in the evening 저녁에 [chonyoge]

n dat
inconvenient 불편한 [pulpyonhan]
a att fo
independence 독립 [tongrip] *n*;
 자주 [chaju] *n*
independent 자주적 [chajujok] *n*
individual 개인 [kaein] *n*
industrial state 공업국가 [kong.
 opgukga] *n*
industrialization 공업화 [kong.op
 industry] 공업 [kong.op] *n* [wa] *n*
inform 전하다 [chonhada] *vt*, 통지
 하다 [tongjihada] *vt* [kan] *n*
information office 물음칸 [morum
inhabitants 주민 [chumin] *n*
injection 주사 [chusa] *n*
ink 잉크 [ingku] *n*
innovation 혁신 [hyoksin] *n*
inquiring 물어보기 [murobogi] *n*
insam wine 인삼술 [insamsul] *n*
inside 속 [sok] *n*
inspection of passports 려권검열
 [ryoggongomyol] *n*
insurance 보험 [pohom] *n*
intellectual 인테리 [interi] *n*
interest 흥미 [hungmi] *n*, 재미
 [chaemi] *n*; 리익 [riik] *n*
international 국제적 [kukjejok] *n*

January 일월 [irwol] *n*
jaw 턱 [tok] *n*
joint 공동의 [kongdong.ui] *n gen*;
 마디 [madi] *n*
jon 전 [chon] *n* (unit of Korean
 coin)
journalist 기자 [kija] *n*
joy 기쁨 [kibbum] *n*

국제주의적 [kukjejuuijok] *n*
**International Friendship Exhibi-
 tion** 국제친선전람관 [kukjechin
 sonjollamgwan] *n*
International Post Office 국제우
 편국 [kukjeupyon.guk] *n*
internationalism 국제주의 [kukje
 juui] *n* [vi, vt
interpret 통역하다 [tong.yokada]
interpretation 통역 [tong.yok] *n*
interpreter 통역원 [tong.yogwon] *n*
interval 휴식 [hyusik] *n*
interview 회견 [hoegyong] *n*, 접견
 [chopgyon] *n*
introduce 소개하다 [sogaehada] *vt*
introduction 소개 [sogae] *n*
investigate 조사하다 [chosahada]
vi, vt
invitation card 초대장 [chodae
 jjang] *n*
invite 초대하다 [chodaehada] *vt*
iodine tincture 요드링크 [yoduting
 ku] *n*
iron 쇠 [soe] *n*, 철 [chol] *n*;
 다리다 [tarida] *vt*
irrigation 관개 [kwan.gae] *n*
it 그것 [kugot] *n with pron*

J

joyful 기쁜 [kibbum] *a att fo*, 반
 가운 [pan.gaun] *a att fo*
joyfully 반가이 [pan.gai] *ad*
Juche Idea 주체사상 [chuchesa
July 칠월 [chirwol] *n* [sang] *n*
June 류월 [ryuwol] *n*
just as 마치 [machi] *ad*

K

keep 간직하다 [kanjikada] *vi*
kerchief 머리수건 [morisugon] *n*
key 열쇠 [yolsoe] *n*
Kim Il Sung Stadium 김일성경
 기장 [Kim Il Sung gyong.gi
 jang] *n*
kindergarten 유치원 [yuchiwon] *n*
kitchen 부엌 [puok] *n*
kitchen work 부엌일 [puong.nil] *n*
knee 무릎 [murup] *n*
knife 칼 [kal] *n*
know 알다 [alda] *vt*
knowledge 지식 [chisik] *n*
Korea 조선 [choson] *n*
Korean 조선사람 [chosonsaram] *n*;
 조선말 [chosonmal] *n*, 조선어
 [chosono] *n*; 조선의 [chosonui]

n gen
Korean-English dictionary 조-영
 사전 [choyongsajon] *n*
Korean food 조선음식 [chosonum
 sik] *n*
Korean language 조선말 [choson
 mal] *n*, 조선어 [chosono] *n*
Korean Peninsula 조선반도 [cho
 sonbando] *n* [inmin] *n*
Korean people 조선인민 [choson
 inmin] *n*
Korean People's Army 조선인민군
 [chosoninmin.gun] *n*
Korean revolution 조선혁명 [cho
 sonhyongmyong] *n*
Korean Revolution Museum 조선
 혁명박물관 [chosonhyongmyong
 bangmulgwan] *n*

L

labour 로동 [rodong] *n*, 로력 [ro
 ryok] *n* [ung] *n*
labour hero 로력영웅 [roryog.yong.
 yong] *n*
labour safety 로동안전 [rodong.
 anjon] *n*
lake 호수 [hosu] *n*
landing 착륙 [changryuk] *n*
language 말 [mal] *n*, 언어 [ono] *n*
 [prefix
large 큰 [kun] *a att fo*, 대 [tae]
large-scale 대대적 [taedaejok] *n*
last year 지난해 [chinanhae] *n*
late 늦은 [nujun] *a att fo*
Latin America 라틴아메리카 [ra

tinamerika] *n*
laugh 웃다 [utda] *vi, vt*
laundry 빨래집 [bballaejip] *n*, 세
 락소 [setakso] *n* [n
law 법 [pop] *n*, 법령 [pomryong]
lay 눕히다 [nupida] *causat v*
lead 인도하다 [indohada] *vt*, 령도
 하다 [ryongdohada] *vt*
leader 지도자 [chidoja] *n*, 향도자
 [hyangdoja] *n*, 수령 [suryong] *n*
leadership 령도 [ryongdo] *n*
leading 지도 [chido] *n*
leaf 잎 [ip] *n*
learn 배우다 [paeuda] *vt*

learning 배우기 [paeugi] *n*
leave 떠나다 [ddonada] *vi, vt*, 출
 발하다 [chulbalhada] *vi, vt*
lecture 강연 [kang.yon] *n*
left 왼쪽의 [oenjjogui] *n gen*
leg 다리 [tari] *n*
lemonade 레몬수 [remonsu] *n*
length 길이 [kiri] *n*
less 덜 [tol] *ad* [*n*
lesson 과 [kwa] *n*; 교훈[kyohun]
lessons 수업 [suop] *n*
let eat 먹이다 [mogida] *causat v*
let fly 날리다 [nallida] *causat v*
let know 알리다 [allida] *causat v*
let see 보이다 [poida] *causat v*
letter 글자 [kulja] *n*, 글 [kul]
n; 편지 [pyonji] *n*
letter box 우편함 [upyonham] *n*
letter of recall 소환장 [sohwan
 jang] *n*
level 수준 [sujun] *n*
library 도서관 [tosogwan] *n*
liberate 해방하다 [haebanghada] *vt*
liberation 해방 [haebang] *n*
lie 눕다 [nupda] *vi*
life 생활 [saenghwal] *n*; 생명
 [saengmyong] *n*
lift 승강기 [sung.gang.gi] *n*
light 빛 [pit] *n*; 가벼운 [kaby
 oun] *a att fo* [gong.op] *n*
light industry 경공업 [kyong.
light music 경음악 [kyong.umak] *n*
lighthouse 등대 [tungdae] *n*

lighting 번개 [pon.gae] *n*
like 좋아하다 [choahada] *v with*
con fo, 즐기다 [chulgida] *vt*
limb 팔다리 [paldari] *n*
limit 한계 [han.gye] *n*
limitlessly 한없이 [hanopsi] *ad*
line 방침 [pangchim] *n*
lip 입술 [ipsul] *n*
literature 문학 [munhak] *n*
little 작은 [chagun] *a att fo*
live 살다 [salda] *vi*, 거주하다
 [kojuhada] *vt*, 지내다 [chinaeda] *vi*
lively 발랄한 [pallalhan] *a att fo*
load 짐을 싣다 [chimul sitda] *v*
with n
lofty 고상한 [kosang.han] *a att fo*
London 런던 [london] *n*
long 긴 [kin] *a att fo*
long-distance bus 시외버스 [sioe
 bbosu] *n*
long life and good health 만수무
 강 [mansumugang] *n* [ma] *n*
long (spell of) rain 장마 [chang
lose 지다 [chida] *vi*, 잃다 [ilt
 a] *vt*
lounge 휴게실 [hyugyesil] *n*
love 사랑 [sarang] *n*; 사랑하다
 [saranghada] *vt*
low 낮은 [najun] *a att fo*
loyalty 충성 [chungsong] *n*
lunch 점심밥 [chomsimbap] *n*, 점
 심식사 [chomsimsiksa] *n*, 점심
 [chomsim] *n*
lung 폐 [pe] *n*

M

- machine** 기계 [kigye] *n*
magazine 잡지 [chapji] *n*
magnificent 굉장한 [koengjanghan]
a att fo, 웅장한 [ungjanghan] *a att fo*
maize 강냉이 [kangnaeng.i] *n*
make 만들다 [mandulda] *vt*
make a revolution 혁명하다 [hyongmyonghada] *vi*
make clean 깨끗이 하다 [ggaeggu si hada] *v with ad* [*vi, vt*]
make friends with 사귀다 [sagwida]
male 남자 [namja] *n* [*n*]
man 사람 [saram] *n*; 남자 [namja]
management board 관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] *n*
manager 지배인 [chibaein] *n*
mangnolia blossom 목란꽃 [mongran.ggot] *n*
Mangyong Hill 만경봉 [man.gyongbong] *n* [*dae*] *n*
Mangyongdae 만경대 [mangyongdae]
Mansudae Art Theatre 만수대예술극장 [mansudaeyesulgukjang] *n*
many 많은 [manun] *a att fo* 여러 [yoro] *pre-n*
map 지도 [chido] *n*
marathon 마라손 [marason] *n*
marathon runner 마라손선수 [marasonsonsu] *n*
March 삼월 [samwol] *n*
march 행진하다 [haengjinhada] *vi*
mark 점수 [chomsu] *n*
market 시장 [sijang] *n*
mass gymnastic display 집단체조 [chipdanchejo] *n* [*daehoe*] *n*
mass meeting 군중대회 [kunjung

massage 안마 [anma] *n*
masses 군중 [kunjung] *n*, 대중 [taejung] *n*
masses of the people 인민대중 [inmindaejung] *n*
mast 돛대 [totdae] *n*
master 주인 [chuin] *n*
match 시합 [sihap] *n*; 성냥 [songnyang] *n*
material 자재 [chajae] *n*, 재료 [chaeryo] *n*
materials 자료 [charyo] *n*
maternity hospital 산원 [sanwon] *n*
May 오월 [owol] *n*
meal 식사 [siksa] *n*
means 수단 [sudan] *n*
measure 재다 [chaeda] *vt*
meat 고기 [kogi] *n* [*hada*] *vt*
mechanize 기계화하다 [kigyehwa]
medical treatment 치료 [chiryo] *n*
medicine 약 [yak] *n*
meet 만나다 [mannada] *vt*
meeting 모임 [moim] *n*, 회의 [hoeui] *n*, 상봉 [sangbong] *n*
melon 참외 [chamoe] *n*
melt 녹다 [nokda] *vi*
member 성원 [song.won] *n*
member of the Workers' Party of Korea 조선로동당원 [chosonrodongdangwon] *n*
member of troops 대원 [taewon] *n*
memorial house 기념관 [kinyomgwang] *n* [*pyo*] *n*
menu 식사안내표 [siksa.annae]
merry 즐거운 [chulgoun] *a att fo*
method 방법 [pangbop] *n*
middle school 중학교 [chunghak

gyo] *n*
militant 전투적 [chontujok] *n*
militarism 군국주의[kun.gukjuui] *n*
militarist 군국주의자 [kun.gukju
 uija] *n*
military 군사적 [kunsajok] *n*
(military) operations 작전 [chak
 jon] *n*
milk 소젖 [sojot] *n*
million 백만 [paengman] *num*
mine 광산 [kwangsan] *n*
miner 광부 [kwangbu] *n*
mineral water 약수 [yaksu] *n*
minister 부장 [pujang] *n*
ministry 부 [pu] *n*
minute 분 [pun] *n*
mission 사명 [samyong] *n*
model 모범 [mobom] *n*
modern 현대적 [hyondaejok] *n*
modest 겸손한 [kyomsonhan] *a*
att fo
moment 순간 [sun.gan] *n*
Monday 월요일 [woryoil] *n*
money 돈 [ton] *n*
money exchange 돈바꾸기 [tonba

month 달 [tal] *n* [ggugi] *n*
monument 기념비 [kinyombi] *n*
moral 도덕적 [dodokjok] *n*
morals 도덕 [todok] *n*
more 더 [to] *ad*, 더욱 [touk] *ad*
morning 아침 [achim] *n*
morning glow 아침노을 [achimno
 most 가장 [kajang] *ad* [ul] *n*
mother 어머니 [omoni] *n*
mottled 알락달락한 [allakdalla
 kan] *a att fo*
mountain 산 [san] *n*
mouth 입 [ip] *n*
move 움직이다 [umjigida] *vi, vt*
movement 운동 [undong] *n* [*n*
Mt. Kumgang 금강산 [kumgangsan]
Mt. Paekdu 백두산 [paekdusan] *n*
much 많이 [mani] *ad*
muscles 힘살 [himsal] *n*
museum 박물관 [pangmulgwan] *n*
musician 음악가 [umakga] *n*
music 음악 [umak] *n*
mutton 양고기 [yang.gogi] *n*
my 내 [nae] *pron*

N

name 이름 [irum] *n*
napkin 상수건 [sangsugon] *n*
narrow 좁은 [chobun] *a att fo*
nation 민족 [minjok] *n*
national 민족적 [minjokjok] *n*
national defence 국방 [kukbang] *n*
national economy 인민경제 [inmin.
 gyongje] *n*
national flag 국기 [kukgi] *n*
nationality 민족별 [minjokbyol] *n*
native place 고향 [kohyang] *n*

naturally 자연히 [chayoni] *ad*;
 응당 [ungdang] *ad*
nature 자연 [chayon] *n*
near 가까이 [kaggai] *ad*
necessary 필요한 [piryohan] *a*
att fo
neck 목 [mok] *n*
necktie 넥타이 [nektai] *n*
nest 둥지 [tungji] *n*; 보금자리
 [pogumjari] *n*
neurologist 신경과 의사 [sin.gyong
 .gwauisa] *n*

never 결코 [kyolko] *ad*
new 새로운 [saeroun] *a att fo*, 새
 [sae] *pre-n*
new year 새해 [saehae] *n*
New Year's Day 설날 [sollal] *n*
news 소식 [sosik] *n*
newspaper 신문 [sinmun] *n*
next 다음의 [taumui] *n gen*
next month 래달 [raedal] *n*
next year 명년 [myongnyon] *n*
night 밤 [pam] *n*
night train 밤차 [pamcha] *n*
nine 아홉 [ahop] *num*, 구 [ku] *num*
ninety 아흔 [ahun] *num*, 구십 [ku
 sip] *num* [*num*
ninth 아홉(번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]
noodle 국수 [kuksu] *n*

obligatory 의무적 [uimujok] *n*
observation study 견학 [kyonhak]
n [*vt*
observe 관찰하다 [kwanchalhada]
occupation 직업 [chigop] *n*
o'clock 시 [si] *n*
October 시월 [siwol] *n*
oculist 안과 의사 [an.gwauisa] *n*
of course 물론 [mullon] *ad*
off day 쉬는날 [swinunnal] *n*
office worker 사무원 [samuwon]
officer 군관 [kun.gwan] *n* [*n*
official 공식적 [kongsikjok] *n*
often 자주 [chaju] *ad*
oh! 오 [o] *int*, 아 [a] *int*
oil 기름 [kirum] *n*
one 하나 [hana] *num*, 한 [han]
num, 일 [il] *num* [*ad*
only 다만 [taman] *ad*, 오직 [ojik]

north 북(쪽) [puk(jjok)] *n*
north(ern) 북쪽의 [pukjjogui] *n gen*
nose 코 [ko] *n*
not 아니 [ani] *ad*, 안 [an] *ad*
note 각서 [kakso] *n*
notebook 학습장 [haksupjang] *n*
novelist 소설가 [sosolga] *n*
November 십일월 [sibirwol] *n*
now 이제 [ije] *n*, 지금 [chigum] *n*
nuclear weapons 핵무기 [haeng
 mug] *n*
nucleus free 비핵 [pihaek] *n*
number 수 [su] *n*, 번호 [ponho] *n*,
 호 [ho] *n*
nurse 간호원 [kanhowon] *n*
nursery 탁아소 [tagaso] *n*

O

open 열다 [yolda] *vt*; 공개적 [kong.
 gaejok] *n*
opera 가극 [kaguk] *n*
opinion 의견 [uigyon] *n*
oppose 반대하다 [pandaehada] *vt*
oppress 압박하다 [apbakada] *vt*
oppressed nation 피압박민족 [piap
 bakminjok] *n* [[ogap] *n*
oppression 압박 [apbak] *n*, 억압
or 혹은 [hogun] *ad*
orange 귤 [kyul] *n*
orchard 과수원 [kwasuwon] *n*
order 차례 [charye] *n*, 명령 [myong
 ryong] *n*, 질서 [chilso] *n*;
 주문하다 [chumunhada] *vt*
ordinary 보통의 [potong·ui] *n gen*
organ 기관 [kigwan] *n*
organization 조직 [chojik] *n*
organize 조직하다 [chojikada] *vt*

overcoat 외투 [oetu] *n*
overflow 넘치다 [nomchida] *vi*
overfulfil 넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyoo]

suhaenghada] *v with con fo*
overthrow 타도하다 [tadohada] *vt*
oyster 굴 [kul] *n*

P

paediatrician 소아과의사 [soaggwa
uisa] *n*
page 페이지 [peji] *n*
painful 아픈 [apun] *a att fo*
pair 쌍 [ssang] *n*, 짝 [jjak] *n*,
컬레 [kolle] *n*
palace 궁전 [kungjon] *n* [dak] *n*
palm (of the hand) 손바닥 [sonba
paper 종이 [chong.i] *n*
paradise 낙원 [ragwon] *n*
parcel 소포 [sopo] *n*
pare 깎다 [ggakda] *vt*
parents 부모 [pumo] *n*
park 공원 [kongwon] *n*
part 부분 [pubun] *n*
part from 헤어지다 [heyojida] *vi*
partisan 빨찌산 [bbaljjisan] *n*
partisan area 유격구 [yugyokgu] *n*
party 당 [tang] *n* [hoe] *n*
party congress 당대회 [tangdae
party member 당원 [tang.won] *n*
party policy 당정책 [tangjong
chaek] *n*
pass 합격하다 [hapgyokada] *vi, vt*
passport 려권 [ryoggwon] *n*
passport number 려권번호 [ryo
ggwonbonho] *n*
patriotism 애국주의 [aegukjuui] *n*
pay 물다 [mulda] *vt*, 치르다
[chiruda] *vt* [ada] *vi*
pay attention to 주의하다 [chuuhi
peace 평화 [pyonghwa] *n*

peace zone 평화시대 [pyonghwaji
dae] *n*
peaceful 평화로운 [pyonghwaro
un] *a att fo*, 평화적 [pyonghwajok]
peach 복숭아 [poksung.a] *n* [*n*
pear 배 [pae] *n*
pedagogy 교육학 [kyoyukak] *n*
pen 펜 [pen] *n*
pencil 연필 [yonpil] *n*
peninsula 반도 [pando] *n*
people 인민 [inmin] *n*
People's Army 인민군 [inmin.gun]
n, 인민군대 [inmin.gundae] *n*
People's Palace of Culture 인민
문화궁전 [inminmunhwagung.jo
on] *n* [jong.gwon] *n*
people's power 인민정권 [inmin
pepper 후추가루 [huchuggaru] *n*
perform 공연하다 [kong.yonhada] *vt*
performance 공연 [kong.yon] *n*,
연극 [yon.guk] *n* [sse] *ad*
perhaps 아마 [ama] *ad*, 글썽 [kul
permanent wave 파마 [pama] *n*
person 사람 [saram] *n*; 명 [myong]
incomp n
personal effects 개인용품 [kaein
yongpum] *n*
personally 몸소 [momso] *ad*
pharmacy 약국 [yakguk] *n*
photo 사진 [sajin] *n*
photographing 사진찍기 [sajinjjik
gi] *n*

physical culture 체육 [cheyuk] *n*
physician 내과 의사 [naeggwauisa] *n*
piano 피아노 [piano] *n*
pick (up) 집다 [chipda] *vt*
picture 그림 [kurim] *n*
picture book 그림책 [kurimchaek] *n*
picture postcard 그림엽서 [kurim yopso] *n*
piece 개 [kae] *incomp n*, 대 [tae] *incomp n*
pig 돼지 [twaeji] *n*
pile up 쌓다 [ssata] *vt*
pillow 베개 [pegae] *n*
pine 소나무 [sonamu] *n*
pine-nut tree 잣나무 [channamu] *n*
ping-pong 탁구 [takgu] *n*
place 자리 [chari] *n*, 곳 [kot] *n*
place of departure 떠난 곳 [ddo nan.got] *n*
plan 계획 [kyehoek] *n*
planet 행성 [haengsong] *n*
plant 식물 [singmul] *n*
plate 접시 [chopsi] *n*
platform 연단 [yondan] *n*, 플랫폼 [pullaetuhom] *n*
play 놀음 [norum] *n*; 놀다 [nolda] *vi*
play a person's accompaniment 반주하다 [panjuhada] *vi*
pleasant 유쾌한 [yukwaehan] *a*
please 어서 [oso] *ad att fo*
plunder 약탈하다 [ryaktalhada] *vt*
poet 시인 [siin] *n*
point 점 [chom] *n*
policy 정책 [chongchaek] *n* [*n*
political power 정권 [chong.gwon]
politics 정치 [chongchi] *n*
pork 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] *n*

porter 짐나르는 사람 [chimnarunun saram] *n with att fo*
portrait 초상화 [chosang.hwa] *n*
possibility 가능성 [kanungsong] *n*
post 초소 [chosso] *n*; 우편 [upyon] *n*
post office 우편국 [upyon.guk] *n*
postage 우편요금 [upyonryogum] *n*
postcard (우편)엽서 [(upyon)yopso] *n*
Potonggang Hotel 보통강려관 [potong.gang ryogwan] *n*
pound 파운드 [paundu] *n*
power 힘 [him] *n*
precious 귀중한 [kwijunghan] *a att fo*, 고귀한 [kogwihan] *a att fo*, 귀여운 [kwiyoun] *a att fo*
premier 총리 [chongri] *n*
preparation 준비 [chunbi] *n*
prepare 준비하다 [chunbihada] *vi,vt*
prescription 처방 [chobang] *n*
present 선물 [sonmul] *n*
president 주석 [chusok] *n*, 대통령 [taetongryong] *n*
pretty 꽤 [ggae] *ad*
price 값 [kap] *n*
primary school 인민학교 [inmin hakgyo] *n*
principal 교장 [kyojang] *n*
prize 상 [sang] *n*
problem 문제 [munje] *n*
produce 생산하다 [saengsanhada] *vi, vt*
production 생산 [saengsan] *n*
programme 강령 [kangryong] *n*; 공연순서 [kongyonsunso] *n*
proletarian 프롤레타리아 [puroretaria] *n*

promise 약속하다 [yaksokada] *vt*
promote 추동하다 [chudonghada] *vt*
property 재산 [chaesan] *n*
propose 제의하다 [cheuihada] *vt*,
제기하다 [chegihada] *vt*
prosper 번영하다 [ponyonghada] *vi*
prosperity 번영 [ponyong] *n*, 흥
성 [ryungsong] *n*
province 도 [to] *n* [sa] *n*
publishing house 출판사 [chulpan
pulsate 고동치다 [kodongchida] *vi*
pulse 맥박 [maekbak] *n*
pupil 학생 [haksaeng] *n*
puppet 괴뢰 [koeroe] *n*
puppet regime 괴뢰정권 [koeroe
jong.gwon] *n*
purchases 물건사기 [mulgonsagi] *n*

purpose 목적 [mogjok] *n*
put 놓다 [nota] *vt*
put on 입다 [ipda] *vt*, 신다 [sin
da] *vt*, 쓰다 [ssuda] *vt*, 끼
다 [ggida] *vt*
Pyongyang 평양 [pyongyang] *n*
Pyongyang Grand Theatre 평양대
극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang] *n*
Pyongyang Indoor Stadium 평양
체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgwang] *n*
**Pyongyang International House
of Culture** 평양국제문화회관 [pyong
yang.gukjemunhwahogwan] *n*
Pyongyang Maternity Hospital 평
양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] *n*
Pyongyang Metro 평양지하철도
[pyongyangjihacholdo] *n*

Q

quality 질 [chil] *n*
quantity 량 [ryang] *n*, 수량 [su
ryang] *n*
question 문제 [munje] *n*

quick 빠른 [bbarun] *a att fo*
quickly 빨리 [bballi] *ad*
quiet 조용한 [choyonghan] *a att*
quite 아주 [aju] *ad* lfo

R

radio 라디오 [rajio] *n*
railroad 철길 [cholgil] *n*
(rail way) station 정거장 [chong
gojang] *n*, 역 [yok] *n*
rain 비 [pi] *n*
rainbow 무지개 [mujigae] *n*
raincoat 비옷 [piot] *n*
raise 올리다 [ollida] *causat v*
rat 쥐 [chwi] *n*

razor 면도칼 [myondokal] *n*
reach 닿다 [tata] *vi*
read 읽다 [ikda] *vt*
real 실제적 [siljejok] *n*, 현실적
[hyonsiljok] *n*
realize 실현하다 [silhyonhada] *vt*
really 실로 [sillo] *ad*, 참으로
hamuro] *ad*, 실제적으로 [silche

joguro] *n inst*
receipt 영수증 [ryongsujjung] *n*
receive 받다 [patda] *vt*, 접수하다 [chopsuhada] *vt*, 맞이하다 [majihada] *vt*
receiver 받는 사람 [pannun saram] *n with att fo*
recite 읊다 [upda] *vt*
record 기록 [kirok] *n*
recover 낫다 [natda] *vi*, 회복하다 [hoebokada] *vt*
red 붉은 [pulgun] *a att fo*, 빨간 [bbalgan] *a att fo*
red flag 붉은기 [pulgun-gi] *n*
refuse 거절하다 [kojolphada] *vt*
regiment 연대 [ryondae] *n*
register 써넣다 [ssonota] *v with con fo*
registered letter 등기편지 [tung-gipyonji] *n*
relation 관계 [kwan.gye] *n*
relative 친척 [chinchok] *n*
reliable 믿음직한 [midumjikan] *a att fo*
remain 남다 [namda] *vi*
remarkable 현저한 [hyonjohan] *a att fo*
remorse 가책 [kachaek] *n*
repair 고치다 [kochida] *vt*, 수리하다 [surihada] *vt*
repatriation 귀국 [kwiguk] *n*
repeat 반복하다 [panbokada] *vt*
reply telegram 답전 [tapjon] *n*
report 보고하다 [pogohada] *vt*
republic 공화국 [konghwaguk] *n*
request 부탁하다 [putakada] *vt*, 신청하다 [sinchonghada] *vt*
respect 존경 [chon.gyong] *n*; 존

경하다 [chon.gyonghada] *vt*,
 경애하다 [kyong.aehada] *vi, vt*
rest from one's work 쉬다 [swida] *vi, vt*
restaurant 식당 [sikdang] *n*
result 결과 [kyolgwa] *n*
return salute 답례 [tamrye] *n*
return visit 답례방문 [tamryebangmun] *n*
revisionism 수정주의 [sujongjuui] *n*
revolution 혁명 [hyongmyong] *n*
revolutionary 혁명가 [hyongmyong-ga] *n*; 혁명적 [hyongmyongjok] *n*
revolutionary ideas 혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] *n*
revolutionary museum 혁명박물관 [hyongmyongbangmulgwan] *n*
revolutionization 혁명화 [hyongmyonghwa] *n*
rice 쌀 [ssal] *n*
rice-cake 떡 [ddok] *n*
rice-field 논 [non] *n*
rice plant 벼 [pyo] *n*
rich 풍부한 [pungbuhun] *a att fo*
rich harvest 대풍 [taepung] *n*
right 권리 [kwolli] *n*; 옳은 [orun] *a att fo*, 지당한 [chidanghan] *a att fo*
right side 오른쪽 [orunjok] *n*
ripen 익다 [ikda] *vi* [da] *vi*
rise 오르다 [oruda] *vi*, 일다 [il] *vi*
river 강 [kang] *n*
road 길 [kil] *n* [gi] *n*
roast duck 오리불고기 [oribulgo] *n*
rogue 놈 [nom] *n*
role 역할 [yokal] *n* [da] *vt*
roll 굴다 [kulda] *vi*, 말다 [mal] *vi*
room 방 [pang] *n*, 호실 [hosil] *n*
rose 장미꽃 [changmiggot] *n*

round 둥근 [tung.gun] *a att fo*
 round-trip ticket 왕복차표 [wang bokchapyo] *n*
 ruble 루블 [rubul] *n* 「llida」 *vi*
 run 달리기 [talligi] *n*; 달리다 [ta run against 부닥치다 [pudakchi

da] *vi*
 runner 달리기선수 [talligisonsu] *n*
 rules 규정 [kyujong] *n*
 rural economy 농촌경리 [nongchon-gyongri] *n*
 rush 돌진하다 [toljinhada] *vi*

S

sacred 성스러운 [songsuroun] *a att fo*
 sad 슬픈 [sulpun] *a att fo*
 salad 생채 [saengchae] *n*
 salt 소금 [sogum] *n*
 same 같은 [katun] *a att fo*
 same time 동시 [tongsi] *n*
 sand 모래 [morae] *n*
 Saturday 토요일 [toyoil] *n*
 sausage 순대 [sundae] *n*
 saw 톱 [top] *n*
 say 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt*, 말씀하다 [malssumhada] *vt*
 scenery 경치 [kyongchi] *n*
 school 학교 [hakgyo] *n*
 school boy 남학생 [namhaksaeng] *n*
 school girl 여학생 [nyohaksaeng] *n*
 scientist 과학자 [kwahakja] *n*
 sea 바다 [pada] *n*
 season 계절 [kyejol] *n*
 seat 자리 [chari] *n* 「ho」 *n*
 seat number 자리번호 [charibon second 두번째 [tubonjjae] *num*, 둘째 [tuljjae] *num*; 초 [cho] *n*
 secret camp 밀영 [miryong] *n*
 secretary 서기 [sogi] *n*, 비서 [pi so] *n*
 see 보다 [poda] *vt*, 구경하다 [kugyonghada] *vt*

see (a person) off 보내다 [parae da] *vt*
 seek 찾다 [chatda] *vt* 「fo
 seldom 드물게 [tumulge] *a ad*
 selection 선택 [sontaek] *n*
 self 자신 [chasin] *n*, 자기 [chagi] *pron*
 self-defence 자위 [chawi] *n*
 self-sustenance 자립 [charip] *n*
 sell 팔다 [palda] *vt*
 seller 판매원 [panmaewon] *n*
 send 보내다 [ponaeda] *vt*, 부치다 [puchida] *vt*
 send a telegram 전보를 치다 [chon borul chida] *v with n*
 sender 보내는 사람 [ponaenun sam] *n with att fo*, 발신인 [palsinin] *n*
 sending 발송 [palsong] *n*
 September 구월 [kuwol] *n* 「fo
 serious 심각한 [simgakan] *a att*
 serve 복무하다 [pongmuhada] *vi*
 set 앓히다 [anchida] *causat v*; 조 [cho] *n*, 일식 [ilsik] *n*
 seven 일곱 [ilgop] *num*, 칠 [chil] *num* 「jjae」 *num*
 seventh 일곱(번)째 [ilgop(bon) seventy 일흔 [ilhun] *num*, 칠십 sex 성 [song] *n* 「chilsip」 *num*

sex distinction 성별 [songbyol] *n*
shallow 얕은 [yatun] *a att fo*
shave 깎다 [ggakda] *vt*
shaving 면도 [myondo] *n* [*pron*
she 그 여자 [ku nyoja] *n with*
shear 깎다 [ggakda] *vt*
sheet 장 [chang] *n*
sherbet 과일청량음료 [kwailchong
 ryang.umryo] *n*
shine 비치다 [pichida] *vi*, 빛나다
 [pinnada] *vi*
ship 배 [pae] *n* [jom] *n*
shoe store 신발상점 [sinbalsang
shoes 신 [sin] *n*, 신발 [sinbal] *n*
shop 상점 [sangjom] *n*
short 짧은 [jjalbun] *a att fo*
short time 잠깐 [chamgan] *n*
shoulder 어깨 [oggae] *n*; 떠메다
 [ddomeda] *vt*
shovel 삽 [sap] *n*
show 보여주다 [poyojuda] *v with*
con fo, 안내하다 [annaehada]
vt, 대주다 [taejuda] *vt*
shut 닫다 [tatda] *vt*
sign 간판 [kanpan] *n*; 수표하다
 [supyohada] *vi*
sign one's name 서명하다 [so
 myonghada] *vi*
signature 수표 [supyo] *n*
significance 의의 [uiui] *n*
silk 비단 [pidan] *n*
silver 은 [un] *n*
singer 가수 [kasu] *n* [bang] *n*
single room 1인용 방 [irinyong
sister 누이 [nui] *n*
sit 앉다 [anda] *vi*
six 여섯 [yosot] *num*, 륝 [ryuk] *num*
sixth 여섯(번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]
num

sixty 예순 [yèsun] *num*, 륝십
 [ryuksip] *num*
skin 살가죽 [salgajuk] *n*, 피부
 [pibu] *n*
sky 하늘 [hanul] *n*
sleep 잠 [cham] *n*; 자다 [chada]
vi, 잠자다 [chamjada] *vi*,
 주무시다 [chumusida] *vi*
sleeping carriage 침대차 [chimdae
 cha] *n*
slogan 구호 [kuho] *n*
slowly 천천히 [chonchoni] *ad*
small 작은 [chagun] *a att fo*
small change 잔돈 [chandon] *n*
smoke 담배를 피우다 [tambaerul
 piuda] *v with n*
snack bar 간이식당 [kanisikdang] *n*
snow 눈 [nun] *n*; 눈이 오다 [nuni
 oda] *phrase*
snowstorm 눈보라 [nunbora] *n*
so 그러한 [kurohan] *a con fo*; 그
 령계 [kuroke] *a ad fo*, 이렇계
 [iroke] *a ad fo*, 이리 [iri] *ad*
so to speak 말하자면 [malhaja
 myon] *v con fo*
soap 비누 [pinu] *n*
social 사회의 [sahoeui] *n gen*,
 사회적 [sahoejok] *n*
socialism 사회주의 [sahoejuui] *n*
socialist 사회주의적 [sahoejuui
society 사회 [sahoe] *n* [jok] *n*
socks 짧은 양말 [jjalbun yangmal]
n with att fo
soda water 탄산물 [tansanmul] *n*
soft 부드러운 [puduroun] *a att fo*
soft boiled egg 반숙한 닭알 [pan
 sukan talgal] *n with att fo*
soft sugar 사탕가루 [satang.garu] *n*
soil 더럽히다 [toropida] *vt*

soldier 병사 [pyongsa] *n*, 전사 [chonsa] *n*
sole 발바닥 [palbadak] *n*
solicitude 배려 [paeryo] *n*
solidarity 단결 [tan.gyol] *n*, 연대성 [ryondaessong] *n*
solo 독창 [tokchang] *n*
son 아들 [adul] *n*
song 노래 [nora] *n*
sorry 미안한 [mianhan] *a att fo*
sound 소리 [sori] *n*; 울리다 [ulida] *vi*
soup 국 [kuk] *n*
sour 신 [sin] *a att fo*
south 남(쪽) [nam(jjok)] *n*

southern 남쪽의 [namjjogui] *n gen*
souvenir 기념품 [kinyompum] *n*
souvenir shop 선물상점 [sonmul sangjom] *n*
sovereignty 주권 [chuggwon] *n*
soy 간장 [kanjang] *n*
spade 삽 [sap] *n*
spare 아끼다 [aggida] *vt*
speak 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt*
special 특별한 [tukbyolhan] *a att fo*
spectator 관람자 [kwallamja] *n*
speech 연설 [yonsol] *n*
speed 속도 [sokdo] *n*
sphere 영역 [ryong.yok] *n*
spirit 정신 [chongsin] *n*
spoon 숟가락 [sutgarak] *n*
spread 퍼지다 [pojida] *vi*
spring 봄 [pom] *n*
spring breeze 봄바람 [pombaram] *n*
spring day 봄날 [pomnal] *n*
squad 분대 [pundae] *n*
stadium 경기장 [kyong.gijang] *n*

stage 단계 [tan.gye] *n*; 무대 [mu dae] *n*
stairs 계단 [kyedan] *n*, 층대 [chung dae] *n*
stamp 우표 [upyo] *n*
stand 서다 [soda] *vi*
stand-point 입장 [ripjang] *n*
star 별 [pyol] *n*
start 출발하다 [chulbalhada] *vi, vt*
state 국가 [kukga] *n*
statement 성명 [songmyong] *n*
statue 동상 [tongsang] *n*
stay 체류 [cheryu] *n*
steam 김 [kim] *n*, 증기 [chung.gi] *n*
steel 강철 [kangchol] *n*
step in 들어서다 [turossoda] *vi*
step on 밟다 [papda] *vt*
steward 접대원 [chopdaewon] *n*
stewardess 여자접대원 [nyojajop daewon] *n*
still 교묘한 [koyohan] *a att fo*; 조용히 [choyong.i] *ad*, 아직 [ajik] *ad*
stockings 긴양말 [kinyangmal] *n*
stomach 위 [wi] *n*
stop 정지 [chongji] *n*, 정류소 [chongryuso] *n*; 중지하다 [chung jihada] *vt*, 멎다 [motda] *vi*
stop 섯! [sot] *imp fo*
story 이야기 [iyagi] *n*
straight 곧은 [kodun] *a att fo*; 곧바로 [kotbaro] *ad*, 바로 [paro] *ad*
strawberry 딸기 [ddalgi] *n*
street 거리 [kori] *n*
streetcar 전차 [choncha] *n*
strike in 박다 [pakda] *vt*
strong 센 [sen] *a att fo*

struggle 투쟁 [tujaeng] *n*
student 대학생 [taehaksaeng] *n*
student at a university-level factory college 공장대학생 [kongjangdaehaksaeng] *n*
students and children's palace 학생소년궁전 [haksaengsonyongung.jon] *n*
study 공부 [kongbu] *n*, 학습 [haksup] *n*; 공부하다 [kongbuhada] *vt*, 학습하다 [haksupada] *vt*
Study House 학습당 [haksupdang] *n*
submit 굴하다 [kulhada] *vi*, 굴복하다 [kulbokada] *vi*
subway 지하철도 [chihacholdo] *n*
succeed 성공하다 [song.gonghada] *vt*
success 성과 [song.gwa] *n* [*vt*]
successor 계승자 [kyesung.ja] *n*, 후계자 [hugyeja] *n*
such 이러한 [irohan] *a* *att fo*

suckling child 젖먹이 [chonmogi]
suffer 당하다 [tanghada] *vt* [*n*]
sugar 사랑 [satang] *n*
suit (of clothes) 벌 [pol] *incomp n*
sultry 무더운 [mudoun] *a att fo*
summer 여름 [yorum] *n*
sun 해 [hae] *n*, 태양 [taeyang] *n*
Sunday 일요일 [iryoil] *n*
sunrise 해돋이 [haedoji] *n*
sunshine 햇빛 [haetbit] *n*
supper 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] *n*, 저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] *n*
support 지지하다 [chijihada] *vt*
surgeon 외과의사 [oeggwauisa] *n*
sweat 땀 [ddam] *n*
sweep 쓸다 [ssulda] *vt*
sweet 단 [tan] *a att fo*
sworn enemy 철천지원수 [cholchonjiwonssu] *n* [[chedo] *n*]
system 체제 [chegye] *n*, 제도

T

table d'hôte 정식 [chongsik] *n*
Taedong Gate 대동문 [taedongmun] *n*
Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery 대성산혁명렬사릉 [taesongsanhyongmyongryolsanung] *n*
tailor shop 양복점 [yangbokjom] *n*
take 들다 [tulda] *vt*; 걸리다 [kolida] *vi*
take a photograph 사진을 찍다 [sajinul jjikda] *v with n* [*vi*]
take a walk 산보하다 [sanbohada]
take in 태우다 [taeuda] *causat v*
take into consideration 타산하다

[tasanhada] *vt*
take off 벗다 [potda] *vt*
take-off 리륙 [riryuk] *n*
take part in 참가하다 [chamgahada] *vi*
take place 일어나다 [ironada] *vi*
take trouble 수고하다 [sugohada] *vi*
talk 담화 [tamhwa] *n*, 회담 [hoedam] *n*
target 목표 [mokpyo] *n*
task 과업 [kwaop] *n*, 임무 [immu] *n*
taste 맛 [mat] *n*; 맛보다 [matboda] *v with n*
tax 세금 [segum] *n*
taxi 택시 [taeksi] *n*

taxi stand 택시정류소 [taeksijong ryuso] *n*
 tea 차 [cha] *n*
 teach 가르치다 [karuchida] *vt*
 teacher 선생 [sonsaeng] *n*, 교원 [kyowon] *n* [교사[kyosi] *n*
 teaching 가르침 [karuchim] *n*,
 tear¹ 눈물 [nunmul] *n*
 tear² 찢다 [jjitda] *vt*
 technical 기술의 [kisurui] *n gen*
 technical revolution 기술혁명 [ki sulhyongmyong] *n*
 technician 기술자 [kisulja] *n*
 technique 기술 [kisul] *n*
 telegram 전보 [chonbo] *n*
 telegram form 전보용지 [chonbo yongji] *n*
 telephone 전화 [chonhwa] *n*
 telephone operator 교환수 [kyohwan su] *n*
 television 텔레비전 [telebijyon] *n*
 tell 말하다 [malhada] *vi, vt*
 temporary 일시적 [ilsijok] *n*
 ten 열 [yol] *num*, 십 [sip] *num*
 ten thousands 만 [man] *num*
 tenth 열(번)째 [yol(bon)jjae] *num*
 territory 령토 [ryongto] *n*, 강토 [kangto] *n*
 textbook 교과서 [kyogwaso] *n*
 thank 감사를 드리다 [kamsarul durida] *v with n* [fo
 thankful 고마운 [komaun] *a att*
 that 그 [ku] *pron*, 저 [cho] *pron*
 that place 거기 [kogi] *pron*, 저기 [chogi] *pron* [re] *n*
 the day after tomorrow 모레 [mo
 the day before yesterday 그저께 [kujogge] *n*
 the Democratic People's Repub-

lic of Korea, the DPRK 조선 민주주의인민공화국 [chosonmin jujuuinmin-gonghwaguk] *n*
 the highest 최고의 [choegoui] *n gen*
 the Worker's Party of Korea 조 선로동당 [chosonrodongdang] *n*
 theatre 극장 [kukjang] *n*
 theory 이론 [riron] *n*
 there 거기에 [kogie] *pron dat*, 저기에 [chogie] *pron dat*
 there be 있다 [itda] *vi*, 계시다 [kyesida] *vi*
 there is no ... 없다 [opda] *a*
 therefore 그러니까 [kuronigga] *a*
 thesis 테제 [teje] *n* [con fo
 they 그들 [kudul] *pron*
 thick 굵은 [kulgun] *a att fo*, 뻐 [paen] *a att fo*, 자욱한 [chau kan] *a att fo*
 thigh 넓적다리 [nopjokdari] *n*
 thin 얇은 [yolbun] *a att fo*, 가는 [kanun] *a att fo* [vt
 think 생각하다 [saeng.gakada] *vi*,
 third 세번째 [sebonjjae] *num*, 셋째 [setjjae] *num*
 thirty 서른 [sorun] *num*, 삼십 [sam
 this 이 [i] *pron* [sip] *num*
 this place 여기 [yogi] *pron*
 this year 올해 [olhae] *n*
 thought 생각 [saeng.gak] *n*
 thousand 천 [chon] *num*
 three 셋 [set] *num*, 세 [se] *num*, 삼 [sam] *num*
 thunder 우뢰 [uroe] *n*
 Thursday 목요일 [mogyoil] *n*
 ticket 표 [pyo] *n*, 차표 [chapyo] *n*
 ticket office 표파는곳 [pyopanun. got] *n*

tiger 범 [pom] *n*
 till¹ 까지 [ggaji] *aux end*
 till² 갈다 [kalda] *vt*
 time 시간 [sigan] *n*, 때 [ddae] *n*
 times 배 [pae] *n*
 timetable 시간표 [siganpyo] *n*
 tinned goods 통졸임 [tongjorim] *n*
 to one's regret 유감스럽게 [yugam
 suropge] *a ad fo*
 toast 군빵 [kunbbang] *n*; 축배
 [chukbae] *n*
 today 오늘 [onul] *n*
 toe 발가락 [palgarak] *n*
 together 함께 [hamgge] *ad*
 toilet 위생실 [wisaengsil] *n*, 변
 소 [pyonso] *n*
 tomato 도마도 [tomado] *n*
 tomorrow 래일 [raeil] *n*
 tongue 혀 [hyo] *n*
 too 또한 [ddohan] *ad*
 tooth 이빨 [ibbal] *n*
 toothbrush 치솔 [chisol] *n*
 toothpaste 치약 [chiyak] *n*
 totally 총체로 [chongchero] *n inst*
 tourist 관광객 [kwan.gwang.gaek] *n*
 tourist information office 관광안
 내소 [kwan.gwang.annaeso] *n*
 tourist resort 관광지 [kwan.gwangji]
 tower 탑 [tap] *n* [*n*
 Tower of Juche Idea 주체사상탑
 [chuchesasangtap] *n*
 toy 놀이감 [noriggam] *n*
 trade 무역 [muyok] *n*
 trade agreement 무역협정 [muyok
 .hyopjong] *n*
 tradition 전통 [chontong] *n*
 train 기차 [kicha] *n*, 열차 [ryol

cha] *n*
 traitor (to one's country) 매국노
 maegungno] *n*
 tram car 전차 [chencha] *n*
 transit visa 통과사증 [tong.gwa
 sajjung] *n*
 translate 번역하다 [ponyokada] *vt*
 translation 번역 [ponyok] *n*
 translator 번역원 [ponyogwon] *n*
 transport 수송 [susong] *n*
 travel 여행 [ryohaeng] *n*
 travel bureau 여행사 [ryohaengsa]
n
 treat 취급하다 [chwigupada] *vi*,
vt; 치료하다 [chiryohada] *vt*
 tree 나무 [namu] *n*
 tremble 떨다 [ddolda] *vi*
 trial 시련 [siryon] *n* [cha] *n*
 trolley 무궤도전차 [mugwedojon
 trousers 바지 [paji] *n*
 truck 짐차 [chimcha] *n*
 truly 정말 [chongmal] *ad*
 trumpet 나팔 [napal] *n*
 trunk 트렁크 [turongku] *n*
 truth 진리 [chilli] *n*
 Tuesday 화요일 [hwayoil] *n*
 turn 돌다 [tolda] *vi*
 twelfth 열두(번)째 [yoldu(bon)
 jjae] *num*
 twelve 열둘 [yoldul] *num*, 열두
 [yoldu] *num*, 십이 [sibi] *num*
 twenty 스물 [sumul] *num*, 이십 [i
 sip] *num*
 twin-bedded room 2인용 방 [iin
 yong bang] *n*
 two 둘 [tul] *num*, 두 [tu] *num*,
 이 [i] *num*
 typewriter 타자기 [tajagi] *n*

U

umbrella 우산 [usan] *n*
 unanimately 한결같이 [hangyolga
 chi] *ad*
 uncle 아저씨 [ajossi] *n* [n
 unconditionally 무조건 [mujoggon]
 underground (railway) 지하철도
 [chihacholdo] *n* [vt
 understand 이해하다 [rihaehada]
 understanding 이해 [rihae] *n*
 underwear 속내의 [songnaeui] *n*
 undivided 유일적 [yuiljok] *n*
 unification 통일 [tong.il] *n*
 unify 통일하다 [tong.ilhada] *vt*
 unite 뭉치다 [mungchida] *vi*

united front 통일전선 [tong.iljon
 son] *n* [hak] *n*
 university 종합대학 [chonghapdae
 university-level factory college
 공장대학 [kon gjangdaehak] *n*
 urgent telegram 지급전보 [chigup
 jonbo] *n*
 US imperialism 미제국주의 [mije
 gukjuui] *n*
 US imperialist 미제국주의자 [mi
 jegukjuuija] *n*
 use 쓰다 [ssuda] *vt*, 사용하다
 [sayonghada] *vt*, 리용하다 [ri
 yonghada] *vt*

V

vacant 빈 [pin] *a att fo*
 vacillation 동요 [tong.yo] *n*
 valley 골짜기 [koljjagi] *n*, 골
 [kol] *n*
 vegetables 남새 [namsae] *n*.
 very 대단히 [taedani] *ad*, 매우
 [maeu] *ad*, 몹시 [mopsi] *ad*,
 아주 [aju] *ad*
 victory 승리 [sungri] *n*
 view 견해 [kyonhae] *n*
 village 마을 [maul] *n*, 농촌 [nong
 chon] *n*

vinalon 비날론 [pinallon] *n*
 vinegar 식초 [sikcho] *n*
 violence 폭력 [pongryok] *n*
 visa 사증 [sajjung] *n*
 visa number 사증번호 [sajjung
 bonho] *n*
 visit 방문 [pangmun] *n*, 참관 [cham
 gwan] *n*; 방문하다 [pangmun
 hada] *vt*, 참관하다 [cham
 gwanhada] *vt*
 volleyball 배구 [paegu] *n* [n
 voting rights 선거권 [songoggwon]

W

waist 허리 [hori] *n*
 wait 기다리다 [kidarida] *vt*

waiter 접대원 [chopdaewon] *n*
 waiting room 기다림칸 [kidarim

kan] *n*
 waitress 여자접대원 [nyojajopdae
 won] *n*.
 wake 깨우다 [ggaesda] *causat v*
 walk 걸다 [kotda] *vi*
 wall 벽 [pyok] *n*
 war 전쟁 [chonjaeng] *n*
 warm 따뜻한 [ddaddutan] *a att*
 fo, 따사로운 [ddasaroun] *a att*
 fo
 wash 씻다 [ssitda] *vt*
 watch 시계 [sigye] *n*
 watch shop 시계상점 [sigyesang
 jom] *n*
 water 물 [mul] *n*
 water of river 강물 [kangmul] *n*
 water-works 수도 [sudo] *n*
 wave 물결 [mulgyol] *n*, 파도 [p
 ado] *n*
 we 우리 [uri] *pron*, 저희 [chohui]
pron
 weak 약한 [yakan] *a att fo*
 weapon 무기 [mugi] *n*
 weather 날씨 [nalssi] *n*
 weave 짜다 [jjada] *vt*
 Wednesday 수요일 [suyoil] *n*
 week 주 [chu] *n*
 weekday 주일 [chuil] *n*, 요일
 [yoil] *n*
 weep 울다 [ulda] *vi*
 weight 무게 [muge] *n*
 welcome 환영 [hwanyong] *n*; 환영
 하다 [hwanyonghada] *vt*
 well¹ 잘 [chal] *ad*; 안녕한 [an
 nyonghan] *a att fo*
 well² 자 [cha] *int*
 well-being 안녕 [annyong] *n*
 west 서(쪽) [so(jjok)] *n*

West Sea Barrage 서해감문 [so
 haegammun] *n*
 west(ern) 서쪽의 [sojjogui] *n gen*
 what 무엇 [muot] *pron*, 무슨
 [musun] *pron*
 what place 어디 [odi] *pron*
 wheat 밀 [mil] *n*
 wheat flour 밀가루 [milgaru] *n*
 wheel 바퀴 [pakwi] *n*
 when 언제 [onje] *pron*
 where 어디에 [odie] *pron dat*
 which 어느 [onu] *pron*
 white 흰 [huin] *a att fo*
 who 누구 [nugu] *pron*
 whole 전체 [chonche] *n*, 온 [on]
pre-n
 wide 넓은 [nolbun] *a att fo*
 widely 넓게 [nolge] *a ad fo*, 널리
 [nolli] *ad*, 활짝 [hwaljjak] *ad*
 wife 안해 [anhae] *n*
 win 이기다 [igida] *vt*
 wind¹ 바람 [param] *n*
 wind² 감다 [kamda] *vt*
 window 창문 [changmun] *n*
 wine 술 [sul] *n*
 winter 겨울 [kyoul] *n*
 wipe 닦다 [takda] *vt* [vt
 wipe out 소멸하다 [somyolhada]
 wise 현명한 [hyonmyonghan] *a*
att fo, 슬기로운 [sulgiroun] *a*
att fo
 wish 바라다 [parada] *vt*, 축원하
 다 [chugwonhada] *vt*, 념원하다
 [nyomwonhada] *vt*
 with all one's strength 힘껏 [him
 ggot] *ad*
 with pleasure 기꺼이 [kiggoi] *ad*
 without 없이 [opsi] *ad*

wolf 승냥이 [sungnyang.i] *n*
 woman 여자 [nyoja] *n*, 여성 [nyo-
 song] *n*
 woman musician 여자음악가 [nyoja
 umakga] *n*
 won 원 [won] *n* (*unit of Ko-
 rean currency*)
 wonder 기적 [kijok] *n*
 word 말 [mal] *n*, 단어 [tano] *n*
 work 일 [il] *n*, 작업 [chagop] *n*,
 사업 [saop] *n*; 일하다 [ilhada] *vi*
 work-team 작업반 [chagopban] *n*
 worker 로동자 [rodongja] *n*

Workers' Party 로동당 [rodong
 dang] *n* [gyegup] *n*
 working class 로동계급 [rodong-
 working people 근로자 [kulloja] *n*
 workshop 직장 [chikjang] *n*
 world 세계 [segye] *n*, 세상 [se-
 sang] *n*
 world-wide 세계적 [segyejok] *n*
 wrap 싸다 [ssada] *vt*
 wreath 화환 [hwahwan] *n*
 write 쓰다 [ssuda] *vt*
 writer 작가 [chakga] *n*

X

X-ray x선 [eksuson] *n*, 렌트겐선

[rentugenson] *n*

Y

yard 마당 [madang] *n*
 year 해 [hae] *n*, 년 [nyon] *n*
 yellow 노란 [noran] *a att fo*, 누
 른 [nurun] *a att fo*
 yes 예 [ye] *int*, 응 [ung] *int*
 yesterday 어제 [oje] *n*
 you 너 [no] *pron*, 네 [ne] *pron*,

자네 [chane] *pron*, 당신
 [tangsin] *n*, 그대 [kudae] *pro-
 n*; 너희 [nohui] *pron*
 young 젊은 [cholmun] *a att fo*, 어
 린 [orin] *a att fo*
 your 너의 [nou] *pron*
 youth 청년 [chongnyon] *n*

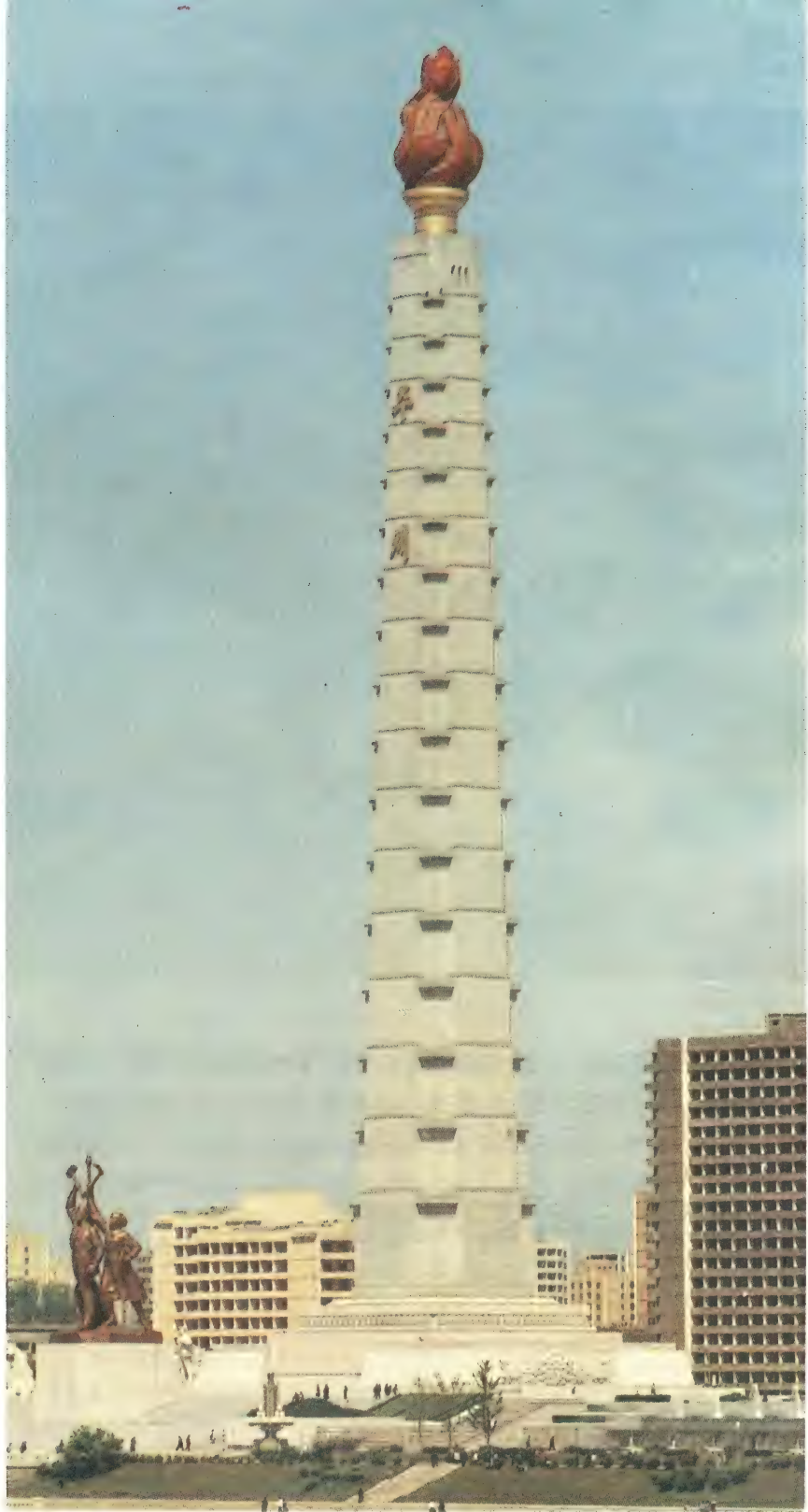
Z

zone 지대 [chidae] *n*

zoo 동물원 [tongmurwon] *n*



위대한 수령 김일성동지께서 탄생하시어 어린시절을
보내시고 혁명의 큰뜻을 품으신 만경대고향집
The old home at Mangyongdae where the great
leader Comrade Kim Il Sung was born and
spent his childhood, nursing his lofty
revolutionary aims



주체사상탑 Tower of Juche Idea



개선문 Arch of Triumph



국제친선전람관

International Friendship Exhibition



평양시의 일부 A Part of Pyongyang



5월1일경기장 (15만석)
May Day Stadium
with 150,000 seats



만수대 예술극장
Mansudae
Art Theatre
←

청춘거리 종합기관
The Combative Sports
Gymnasium
in Chongchun Street
→



청류관
Chongryu Restaurant





만경대물놀이장 The Mangyongdae Pool



청춘거리 송구관 The Handball Gymnasium in Chongchun Street

평양체육관
Pyongyang

빙상관

Indoor Stadium

Ice Rink





인민대학습당 Grand People's Study House

인민문화궁전 People's Palace of Culture





백두산천지 Lake Chon on Mt. Paekdu



대성산혁명렬사릉 Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery



평양산원 Pyongyang Maternity Hospital



천리마동상 Chollima Statue



평양지하철도 황금벌역
Hwanggumbol Station, Pyongyang Metro



서해감문 West Sea Barrage



공장의 조종실 Control Room of a Factory

만경대유회장 Mangyongdae Fun Fair





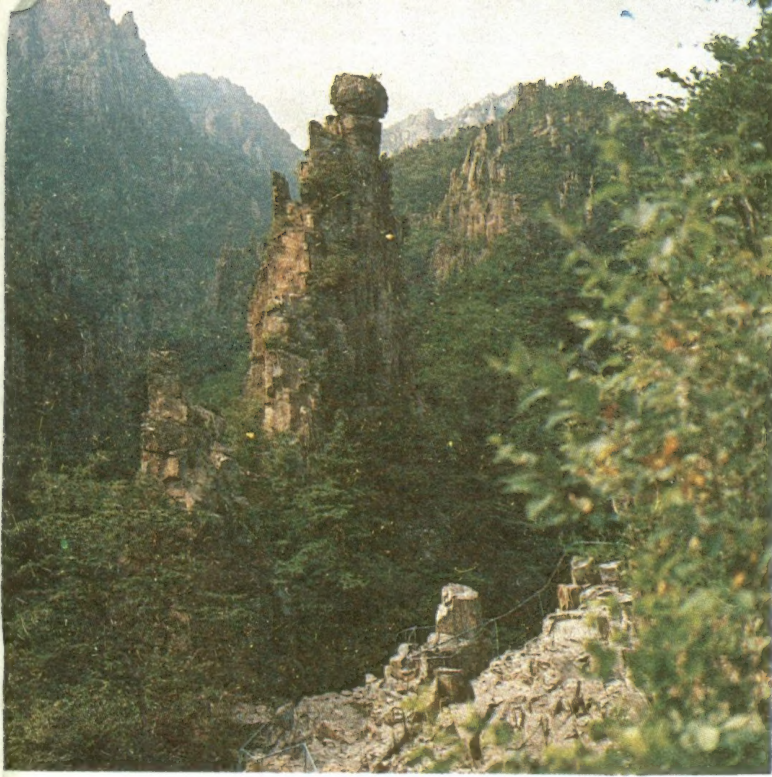
민속놀이 Folk Stunt



농장의 가을걷이 Harvesting on a Farm

문화유적 Historical Remains





금강산의 일부
A View of
Mt. Kumgang

묘향산의 일부 A View of Mt. Myohyang



조선말 배우는 책
(영 어)

집필	공 익 현	심사	부교수 준박사 박종문 준박사 안송호 외 4명
편집	정 경 선	사진	조동소, 정승영
장정	조 동 소	교정	박수련, 김지순
낸곳	외국문도서출판사	인쇄소	평양종합인쇄공장
인쇄	1989년 5월 18일	발행	1989년 5월 29일

7-90813

1,500 부

값 3원 50전